



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

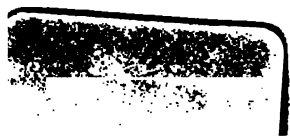
About Google Book Search

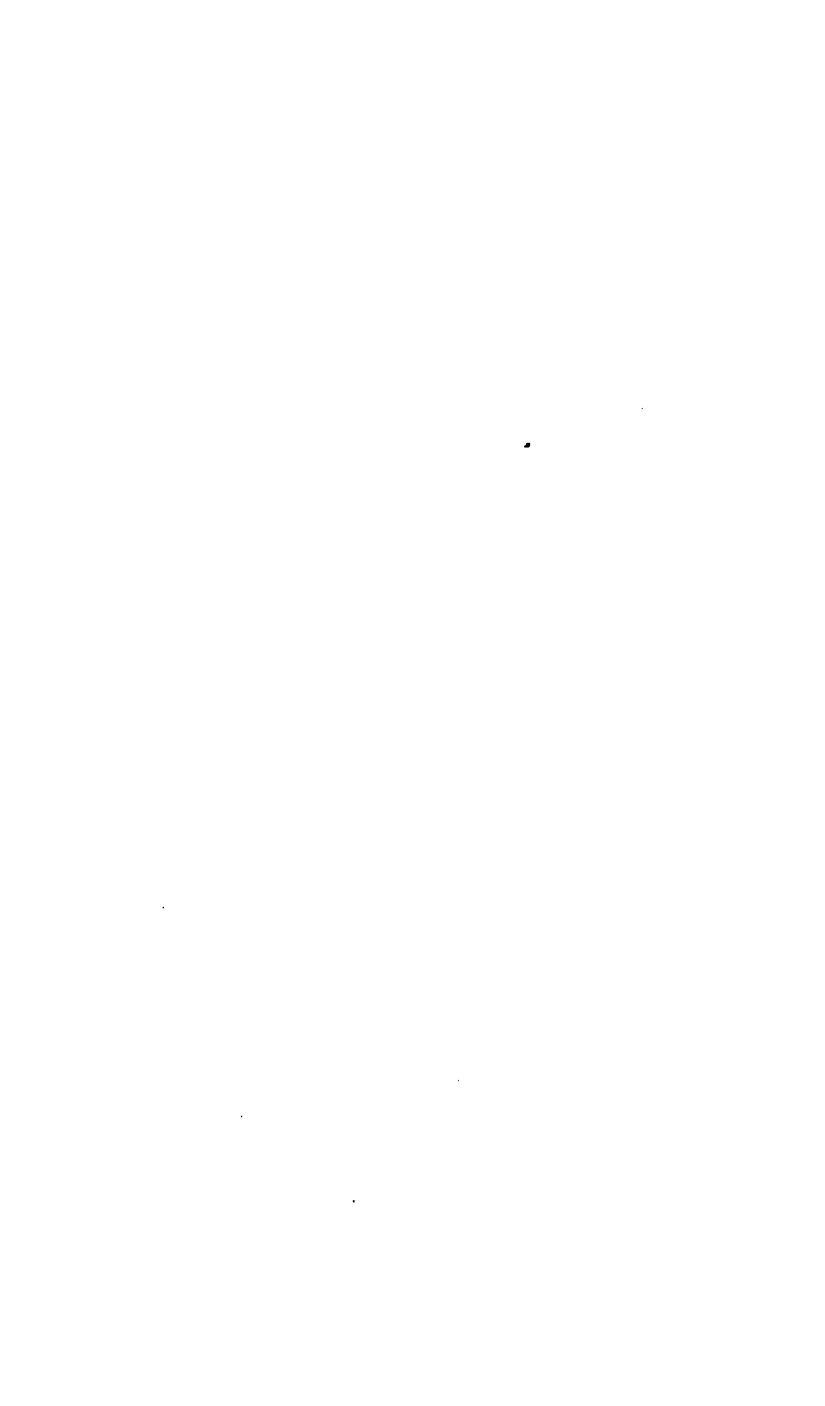
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



46.

1700.





A
SCHOOL-GRAMMAR
OF THE
LATIN LANGUAGE.

BY
C. G. ZUMPT,

PROFESSOR IN THE UNIVERSITY, AND MEMBER OF THE ROYAL ACADEMY
OF SCIENCES, OF BERLIN.

TRANSLATED, AND ADAPTED TO THE USE OF
THE HIGH SCHOOL OF EDINBURGH,

BY
LEONHARD SCHMITZ, PH.D., F.R.S.E.,
RECTOR OF THE HIGH SCHOOL OF EDINBURGH.



LONDON:
PRINTED FOR
LONGMAN, BROWN, GREEN, AND LONGMANS,
PATERNOSTER-BOW.
1846.

LONDON:
Printed by A. SPOTTISWOODE,
New-Street-Square.

AUTHOR'S PREFACE.

IN my larger Grammar I have endeavoured methodically to put together everything which relates to the Latin language in its best period, and serves to explain the language of the Roman classics. Although I have abstained from accumulating examples which only confirm the rules, and which the pupil, with much more pleasure and profit, may collect for himself, still the size of the work has become larger than is commonly thought desirable for schools. Youthful beginners are easily frightened by the sight of voluminous school-books, although the intention may be that the pupils should go through only part of them : the eye and mind of beginners are often attracted by those parts which, for the time, should not engage their attention, and fill them with unnecessary alarm. The price of a school-book, too, is a matter of some consideration ; for only a small number of those who learn the elements of Latin continue the study of it with a view to acquire a perfect knowledge of it.

For these reasons it was found necessary in Germany, after the publication of the third edition of the larger Grammar, to prepare an abridgment for the use of schools ; and I have ever since been endeavouring to

comprise in each of the two works, in agreement with each other, the matter which appeared to me necessary for the acquisition of the Latin language, in the different stages of the beginner and of the reader of classical authors. The sixth edition of this abridgment, corresponding with the ninth of the larger work, has recently appeared in Germany, and is now presented to the English public. I take this opportunity of making a few observations respecting the principles on which the abridgment is made, and the manner in which it should be used.

Intelligent teachers have always been of opinion, that it is desirable for a beginner, in learning a language or a science, to adhere to one and the same book, that he may gradually become acquainted with the whole and all its parts, and thus make it, as it were, his own. In laying down such a rule, it is, of course, assumed that the book is based upon a profound and correct knowledge of the subject it treats of, and that it is methodically arranged; and if such is the case, the habit acquired by the learner, of referring for all the particulars he meets with to certain parts of his manual, is the best assistance for his memory, and insures an easy, regular, and continuous progress: the unavoidable difficulties connected with the subject itself or the terminology of the rules are removed, by frequent recurrence to and consideration of them; and the knowledge, once acquired, thus takes firm root and becomes easy in its application. Different books on the same science for each particular stage of the pupil, produce confusion. Setting aside the fact that different authors entertain different views on the same subject, the mere difference of expression is quite enough to puzzle the youthful mind; and no-

thing is worse than to compel a pupil to learn the same thing twice or three times in different ways.

Knowledge is acquired step by step: in every science the elements must be set forth first, and be impressed upon the memory; and in Grammar in particular the pupil has first to learn the paradigms of the declensions and conjugations, the rules about gender and the irregular conjugation, next the formation of derivative and compound words; then the regular syntax; and lastly, the special peculiarities of syntax and their rhetorical application, or the *syntaxis ornata*. These different stages are distinguished in every grammar by different sections or chapters; and, in mine, in particular, the division is carried on further by the system of text and notes, printed in larger and smaller types, by which means the more important parts are separated from those of less importance. If, therefore, the study of a beginner is directed by an intelligent teacher, there can be no danger of a pupil being overwhelmed by the quantity of the materials contained in the grammar. But if, nevertheless, a smaller book is to be put into his hands, it is evident from the foregoing remarks, that the main difference between it and the larger work must consist in omissions. For this reason the division into chapters and the paragraphs are the same in the Grammar and in the present Abridgment; so that the two books may be used by the side of each other, and the pupil who has commenced his studies in the School Grammar, will at once find himself at home in the larger work; and by recognising that which he has already learned, he will be inspired with confidence that he can acquire the rest also, and without much difficulty. The parts omitted in the School Grammar

are the *Syntaxis Ornata*, all specialities and peculiarities in the idioms of particular authors, and everything that is poetical and unclassical, which is noticed, even in the larger Grammar, for the most part only in notes. By this means the Syntax is reduced to the simplest fundamental rules concerning the use of cases, tenses, and moods. The part containing the *Accidence* may, perhaps, still appear to be rather full; but I believe that the vague manner in which many persons are acquainted with Latin is, for the most part, owing to the neglect of this very portion in Latin grammars. That which actually exists in the classical language must be stated with proper minuteness and systematically; the rest may be left to the teacher, who has to select what is necessary in every particular instance.

The list of the Irregular Verbs contains the very essence of the language, but has been very much abridged in regard to particulars and to compound verbs. The section on Etymology can be clear and instructive only when the pupil is in possession of a sufficient number of analogies.

It may, perhaps, be said that the style of the syntactical rules is not sufficiently easy and concise for boys; and though it may be admitted that it is perfectly appropriate for the larger Grammar, some persons perhaps may still demand for the School Grammar a different mode of expression *ad captum puerorum*, even if it should be at the expense of correctness and accuracy. But on this point I am of a different opinion. A grammatical rule must be simple and concise, but accurate, and ought not to contain either one word too much or too little; and in this respect there should be no difference between a larger and a smaller grammar;

a puerile plainness and a superficiality which is half true and half false, are in direct opposition to the objects of grammatical instruction. A grammar is not a thing to be put into the hands of helpless children, but a school of training for the understanding: it requires a teacher who explains and illustrates by examples that which, from its nature, is difficult; and, after such illustrations, the pupil himself will see that the rule could not have been expressed more plainly and concisely. I have not neglected to give such illustrations in some of the notes. For this purpose the examples of the larger Grammar have, on the whole, not been curtailed, for they are intended to give the teacher an opportunity of showing the application of the rules, and they are, at the same time, a treasure for the memory of the pupil, from which he may derive pleasure even in the latest years of his life. With regard to Latin Metres, I have added an Appendix, containing the most necessary elements, the metrical feet, the structure of the iambic senarius and of the dactylic hexameter and pentameter; and this will, I think, be sufficient for those who read Phaedrus, Ovid, or Virgil, provided it is combined with the rules about the length and shortness of syllables, which form an indispensable part of grammar.

In conclusion, I may be permitted to express my wish that this work also may contribute towards a prosperous and successful study of language, the influence of which on the cultivation of the understanding, and, if properly directed, also on the cultivation of the feelings, is universally acknowledged.

C. G. ZUMPT.

Berlin, July, 1846.

CONTENTS.

ELEMENTARY PART.

	Page
INTRODUCTION - - - -	1
Chap. I. Of the Vowels and Consonants - -	2
II. Of Syllables - - - -	5
III. Of the Length and Shortness of Syllables -	6
IV. Of the Accent of Words - - - -	13

THE ACCIDENCE.

V. Division of Words according to their Signification -	15
VI. Nouns Substantive. — General Rules of Gender -	16
VII. Number, Case, and Declension - - -	19
VIII. First Declension - - - - -	20
IX. Greek Words in <i>ē</i> , <i>ās</i> , and <i>ēs</i> - - -	21
X. Gender of the Nouns of the First Declension -	21
XI. Second Declension - - - - -	22
XII. Greek Words of the Second Declension -	24
XIII. Gender of the Nouns of the Second Declension -	24
XIV. Third Declension. — Genitive - - -	25
XV. The remaining Cases of the Third Declension -	31
Appendix - - - - -	37
XVI. Greek Words of the Third Declension -	39
XVII. Gender of Words of the Third Declension. —	
Masculines - - - - -	40
XVIII. Feminines - - - - -	41
XIX. Neuters - - - - -	43
XX. Fourth Declension - - - - -	44
XXI. Fifth Declension - - - - -	45
XXII. Irregular Declension. — Indeclinables. — Defectives -	46
XXIII. Heteroclita. — Heterogenea -	50
XXIV. Nouns Adjective. — Terminations. — Declension -	53
Appendix - - - - -	54
XXV. Comparison of Adjectives - - - - -	58
XXVI. Comparison of Adverbs and increased Comparison -	59
XXVII. Irregular and defective Comparison - - -	60

Chap.		Page
XXVIII.	Numerals. — I. Cardinal Numerals - - -	62
XXIX.	II. Ordinal Numerals - - -	65
XXX.	III. Distributive Numerals - - -	67
XXXI.	IV. Multiplicative Numerals - - -	68
XXXII.	V. Proportional Numerals - - -	68
XXXIII.	VI. Numeral Adverbs - - -	69
XXXIV.	Pronouns and Adjective Pronouns - - -	70
XXXV.	Declension of Pronouns - - -	72
XXXVI.	Declension of the Possessive Pronouns and of Pro- nominals - - -	75
XXXVII.	The Verb - - -	76
XXXVIII.	Moods. — Tenses - - -	78
XXXIX.	Numbers. — Persons - - -	79
XL.	Formation of the Tenses - - -	80
XLI.	The Verb <i>esse</i> - - -	84
XLII.	The four Conjugations - - -	86
XLIII.	Remarks on the Conjugations - - -	101

**LIST OF VERBS WHICH ARE IRREGULAR IN THE FORMATION OF
THEIR PERFECT AND SUPINE.**

XLIV.	First Conjugation - - -	104
XLV.	Second Conjugation - - -	106
XLVI.	Third Conjugation. — 1. Verbs which have a Vowel before <i>o</i> including those in <i>vo</i> - - -	113
XLVII.	2. Verbs in <i>do</i> and <i>to</i> - - -	116
XLVIII.	3. Verbs in <i>bo</i> and <i>po</i> - - -	120
XLIX.	4. Verbs with a Palatal Letter, <i>g, c, ct, h, qu,</i> and <i>gu</i> (in which <i>u</i> is not considered as a vowel) before <i>o</i> - - -	121
L.	5. Verbs which have <i>l, m, n, r</i> before <i>o</i> - - -	124
LI.	6. Verbs in <i>so</i> and <i>zo</i> - - -	127
LII.	Inchoatives - - -	129
LIII.	Fourth Conjugation - - -	131
LIV.	List of Deponent Verbs of the First Conjugation - - -	132
LV.	Deponents of the Second Conjugation - - -	135
LVI.	Deponents of the Third Conjugation - - -	135
LVII.	Deponents of the Fourth Conjugation - - -	137
LVIII.	Irregular Verbs - - -	138
LIX.	Defective Verbs - - -	145
LX.	Impersonal Verbs - - -	148
LXI.	Etymology of Nouns and Verbs - - -	150
LXII.	Etymology of Particles - - -	165
LXIII.	Primitive Adverbs - - -	168
LXIV.	Comparison of Adverbs - - -	172
LXV.	Prepositions - - -	172
LXVI.	Prepositions in Compound Words - - -	175
LXVII.	Conjunctions - - -	178
LXVIII.	Interjections - - -	181

SYNTAX.

I. CONNECTION OF SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

Chap.					Page
LXIX.	Subject and Predicate	-	-	-	- 182

II. ON THE USE OF CASES.

LXX.	Nominative Case	-	-	-	- 186
LXXI.	Accusative Case	-	-	-	- 186
LXXII.	Dative Case	-	-	-	- 191
LXXIII.	Genitive Case	-	-	-	- 196
LXXIV.	Ablative Case	-	-	-	- 203
LXXV.	Vocative Case	-	-	-	- 212

III. USE OF THE TENSES.

LXXVI.	The Tenses	-	-	-	- 212
--------	------------	---	---	---	-------

IV. OF THE MOODS.

LXXVII.	Indicative Mood	-	-	-	- 220
LXXVIII.	Subjunctive Mood	-	-	-	- 221
LXXIX.	Imperative Mood	-	-	-	- 235
LXXX.	Infinitive Mood	-	-	-	- 237
LXXXI.	Use of the Participles	-	-	-	- 248
LXXXII.	Use of the Gerund	-	-	-	- 253
LXXXIII.	Use of the Supine	-	-	-	- 256

APPENDIX	-	-	-	-	- 258
----------	---	---	---	---	-------

L A T I N G R A M M A R.

ELEMENTARY PART.

INTRODUCTION.

THE Latin language was once spoken by the Romans, at first only in a part of Middle Italy, but subsequently in all Italy and in other countries subject to the Romans. At present it can be learnt only from books and the monumental inscriptions of that people.

The earliest Latin writings that we possess, were composed about 200 years before the birth of Christ, and in the sixth century after Christ Latin, as a spoken language, died entirely away. It had then become quite corrupted through the influence of the foreign nations which had settled in the Roman dominions, and it became so mixed up with the languages of the invaders that a number of new languages (Italian, French, Spanish, Portuguese,) were gradually formed out of it. All persons who wrote Latin in later times had learnt it as a dead language.

During the long period in which the Latin language was spoken, it underwent various changes, not only in the number of its words and their meanings, in their forms and combinations, but, to some extent, in its pronunciation also. We shall in this Grammar describe the language, though not exclusively, such as it was spoken and written during the most important period of Roman literature, that is, about the time of Julius Caesar and Cicero, till shortly after the birth of Christ. That period is commonly called the golden

age, and the subsequent one, till about A. D. 120, the *silver age* of the Latin language.

The Latin language in its origin is nearest akin to the Greek, and at the time when the Romans became acquainted with the literature, arts, and institutions of Greece, they adopted a great many single words, as well as constructions, from the Greek. Both languages, moreover, belong to the same family from which the English, German, northern, and many other languages have sprung.

CHAPTER I.

OF THE VOWELS AND CONSONANTS.

[§ 1.] 1. THE Vowels of the Language are *A, a; E, e; I, i; O, o; U, u* (*Y, y*): and the diphthongs, *AE, ae; OE, oe; AU, au; EU, eu*. Their ancient pronunciation did not differ in any essential point from that of the modern Italian or German; but the modern pronunciation varies in the different countries of Europe, though the length and shortness of the vowels are and ought to be observed everywhere. (See Chap. III.) The Latin language has no signs to distinguish a long from a short vowel.

Note. The vowel *y* (called *y psilon*) occurs only in words which were introduced into the Latin language from or through the Greek, at a time when the former was already developed, such as *syllaba, pyramis, Cyrus*; whereas other words, the Greek origin of which leads us back to more ancient times, or has been obscured by changes of sound, have lost their original *y*; such as *mus* (from the Greek *μῦς*), *silva* (from *βλη*), and *lacrima* (from *δάκρυον*). The word *stilus*, too, is better written with *i*, since practice did not acknowledge its identity with the Greek *στῦλος*. The diphthong *eu*, if we except Greek words, occurs only in *heu, heus, seu, neu*, and in *neuter* and *neutiquam*. The diphthongs *ei, oi, ui*, occur only in interjections, such as *hei, eia, oiei*, and *hui*, and in cases where *dein, proin, huic, or cui*, are contracted into one syllable, as is commonly done in poetry.

[§ 3.] 2. The Consonants are, *B, b; C, c; D, d; F, f; G, g; H, h; (K, k;) L, l; M, m; N, n; P, p; Q, q; R, r; S, s; T, t; X, x; (Z, z)*. With regard to their

classification, it is only necessary here to observe that *l, m, n, r*, are called liquids (*liquidæ*), and the rest mutes (*mutæ*), with the exception of *s*, which, being a sibilant (*littera sibilans*), is of a peculiar nature. The mutes may again be classified, with reference to the *organ* by which they are pronounced, into labials (*v, b, p, f*), palatals (*g, c, k, qu*), and linguals (*d, t*). *X* and *z* (called *zeta*) are double consonants.

Note. *Z* occurs only in words borrowed from the Greek; *j* and *v* were expressed by the Latins by the same signs as the vowels *i* and *u*; but in pronunciation they were distinguished; but we who have two distinct signs, ought to distinguish them also in writing. But in Greek words, we must every where write *i* and *u*: *Iambus, Iones, Laius, Agave*, and not *Jonia, Agave*, for the Greeks had neither a *j* nor a *v*.

K became a superfluous letter in Latin, as its place was generally supplied by *c*; *v* can be used only when modern words are introduced into the Latin language without undergoing any change in their orthography. *H* is only an aspiration, whence it does not make position. [§ 50.]

[§ 6.] 3. Respecting the *pronunciation* of the consonants, it must be observed, that the rule with the Latins was to pronounce them just as they were written. Every modern nation has its own peculiar way of pronouncing them; and among the many corruptions of the genuine pronunciation there are two which have become firmly rooted, and which it is, perhaps, impossible to banish from the language. We pronounce *c*, when followed by *e, i, y, æ*, or *œ*, both in Latin and Greek words, like our *s*, and when followed by other vowels or by consonants like a *k*. The Romans on the other hand, as far as we can ascertain, always pronounced *c* like *k*; and the Greeks, in their intercourse with the Romans, did not hear any other pronunciation. A similar corruption is observed in the pronunciation of *ti* like *shi*, when followed by a vowel, as in *justitia, otium*. It would, however, be quite wrong to pronounce the *ti* in *totius* in the same manner, since the *i* in this word is long. But there are some cases in which the short *ti*, even in our common pronunciation, retains its proper sound: 1) in Greek words, such as *Miltiades, Boeotia, Aegyptius*; 2) when the *t* is preceded by another *t*, by *s* or *x*, e. g. *Bruttii, ostium, mixtio*; and 3) when it is followed by the termination of the infinitive passive *er*, as in *nitier, quater*.

Note 1. The conjunction *cum* (when, as) is commonly written *quum*, to distinguish it from the preposition *cum* (with), although *quum* is always pronounced like *cum*, and not like *quum*.

[§ 8.] *Note 2.* The meeting of two vowels, one of which forms the ending and the other the beginning of a word, causes an *hiatus* or yawning which is usually avoided in verse by the former of the vowels being thrown out (*elision*). As the *m* at the end of a word was not audibly uttered when the next word began with a vowel, the vowel preceding the *m* is likewise passed over in reading verse. The verse *multum ille et terris jactatus et alto*, is therefore read *mult' ill' et terris*, &c.

[§ 12.] 4. There is no necessity for giving any special rules about the *orthography* in Latin, since there is absolutely nothing arbitrary in the spelling of words that requires to be learned: but there are a great many separate words, of which neither the pronunciation nor the spelling is established, and with regard to which the ancients themselves were uncertain, as we see from the monuments still extant. We spell and pronounce, e. g. *anulus*, *belua*, *litus*, *paulus*, better with one consonant than with two; whereas *immo*, *nummus*, *sollemnis*, *sollers*, *sollicitus*, *Juppiter*, and *quattuor* are more correctly spelled with two consonants than one. It is not certain whether we ought to write *litera* or *littera*. The words *saeculum*, *saepire* are better with the diphthong than with the simple vowel *e*; whereas in *heres*, *fetus*, and *fenus*, the simple vowel is better than the diphthong. In general it may be said, that the mode of spelling now adopted in the best editions of Latin writers is the correct one.

[§ 13.] 5. The Romans had no other point than the full stop, and our whole artificial system of punctuation was unknown to them: but, to facilitate the understanding of their works, we now use in Latin the same signs which have become established in our own language: viz. the comma (,), colon (:), semicolon (;), sign of exclamation (!), sign of interrogation (?), and the parenthesis ().

6. With regard to the use of *capital* and *small letters*, it must be observed, that the Romans, generally speaking, wrote only in capital letters (*litterae unciales*), until in the latest period of antiquity, the small letters came into use, which are now employed in writing Latin. Capital initials are at present used: *a*) at the beginning of a verse or at least of a strophe; *b*) at the beginning of a new sentence, both in prose and in verse, after a full stop, and after a colon when a person's own words are quoted; *c*) in proper names, and in adjectives and adverbs which are derived from them, e. g., *Latium*, *ermos Latinus*, *Latine loqui*; *d*) in words which express a title or office, such as *Consul*, *Tribunus*, and *Senatus*, but not in their derivatives.

7. The *diaeresis* (*puncta diaereseos*) is a sign to facilitate reading; it is put upon a vowel which is to be pronounced separately, and which is not to be combined with the preceding one into a diphthong, as in *aër*, *aëris*, *poëta*. The signs to indicate the length or shortness of a vowel or syllable (— and ∪) were sometimes used by the ancients themselves.

CHAP. II.

OF SYLLABLES.

[§ 14.] 1. A VOWEL or a diphthong may by itself form a syllable, as in *u-va*, *me-o*; all other syllables arise from a combination of consonants and vowels. The Latin language allows only two consonants to stand at the end of a syllable, and three only in those cases where the last is *s*. At the beginning of a syllable, also, there can be no more than two consonants, except when the first is a *c*, *p*, or *s*, followed by *muta cum liquida*; and at the beginning of a word there never are three consonants, except in the case of *sc*, *sp*, and *st* being followed by an *r* or *l*: for example, *do-ctrina*, *corru-ptrix*.

2. It often appears doubtful as to how a word is to be divided into syllables, and where the division is to be made at the end of a line, when the space does not suffice. The following rules, however, which are founded on the structure of the language, should be observed:—1) A consonant which stands between two vowels belongs to the latter, as in *ma-ter*. 2) Those consonants which, in Latin or Greek, may together begin a word, go together in the division of syllables; e.g., *pa-tris*, and not *pat-ris*, as *tr* occurs at the beginning of *tres*. In like manner, *li-bri* (*brevis*), *i-gnis* (*gnomon*), *o-mnis*, *da-mnum* (μνάομαι), *a-ctus*, *pun-ctum* (κρήμα), *ra-ptus*, *scri-ptus*, *pro-pter* (*Ptolemaeus*), *Ca-dmus* (δμῶες), *re-gnum* (γρούς), *va-fre* (*fretus*), *a-thleta* (Ἀθλητής), *i-pse*, *scri-psi* (ψάω), *Le-sbos* (σβέννυμι), *e-sca*, *po-sco* (*scando*), *a-sper*, *ho-spes* (*spes*), *pa-stor*, *fau-stus*, *i-ste* (*stare*). 3) In compound words, the division must be made so as to

keep the parts distinct, as *inter-eram* (not *inte-reram*), because the word is composed of *inter* and *eram*. So also *ab-utor*, *ab-rado*, *abs-condo*, *dis-qui-ro*, *et-iam*, *ob-latum*; and *red-eo*, *red-undo*, *prod-eo*, and *sed-itio*, for the *d*, here inserted to prevent hiatus, must go with the preceding vowel. But when the component parts of a word are doubtful, or when the first word has dropped its termination to prevent hiatus, the syllables are divided as if the word were not a compound; e. g., *po-tes* (from *pote* or *potis es*), *anim-adverto* and not *anim-adverto*, *ve-neo* (from *venum eo*), *ma-gnanimus*, *am-bages*.

CHAP. III.

OF THE LENGTH AND SHORTNESS OF SYLLABLES.

[§ 15.] SYLLABLES are long or short, either by the nature of the vowel they contain, or they become long by their short vowel being followed by two or more consonants, that is, by their *position*. We shall first speak of the natural length and shortness of vowels.

1. All Diphthongs are long, and also all those single vowels which have arisen from the contraction of two into one, such as *cōgo* (from *coāgo*), *mālo* (from *māvōlo*), *tibicen* (from *tibiicen* and *tibia*, but *tubicen* from *tuba*), *bīgae* (from *bījū-gae*), *būbus* and *bōbus* (from *bōvibus*), and so also *dīs* for *dūs*, *grātis* for *gratīs*, and *nīl* for *nihil*.

[§ 16.] 2. A Vowel is short, when it is followed by another vowel (*Vocalis ante vocalem brevis est*), as in *dēus*, *filīus*, *pīus*, *rūo*, *corrūo*; and, as *h* is not considered as a consonant, also in such words as *trāho*, *contrāho*, *vēho*, and *advēho*.

Note. Exceptions. 1) The vowel *e* in *cheu* is always long, and the *o* in *ohe* is frequently long. 2) The *e* in the termination of the genitive and dative of the fifth declension is long when it is preceded by a vowel, as in *dīēi*, *speciēi*. 3) *a* and *e* are long in the vocative terminations *āi* and *ēi* of words ending in *ajus* and *ejus*; e. g., *Gāi*, *Vultēi*. (See Chap. XI. note 3.) 4) All the genitives in *ius*, except *alterius*, have the *i* commonly long; the poets however use the *i* in *illius*, *istius*, *ipsius*, *unius*, *totius*, *ullius*, and *utrius*, sometimes as a long and sometimes as a short vowel; but *alius*, being a contraction for *aliius*, can never

be made short. *Alterius* on the other hand, is sometimes made long. 5) The verb *fiō* has the *i* long, except when an *r* occurs in it, as in Ovid: *Omnia jam fient, fieriquae posse negabam*. 6) Greek words retain their own original quantity, and we therefore say *āēr*, *ēos*, (*ἥος*), *Amphion*, *Agēsilaus*, and *Menelāus*. The *e* and *i* in the terminations *ea* and *eus*, or *ia* and *ius*, therefore, are long when they represent the Greek *eia* and *eios* (the Romans, not having the diphthong *ei* in their language, represent the Greek *ei* sometimes by *e* and sometimes by *i*, but these vowels, of course, are always long); e. g., *Galatēa*, *Medēa*, *Āenēas*, *Darēus*, or *Darius*, *Iphigenia Alexandria*, *Antiochia*, *Nicomedia*, *Samaria*, *Seleucia*, *Thalia*, *Arius*, *Basillus*, *crocodilus*, and the adjectives *Epicurēus*, *Pythagorēus*, *spondēus*: but when the Greek is *ea* or *ia* the *e* and *i* are short, as in *idēa*, *philosophia*, *theologia*. The same is the case with the patronymic words in *ides*, since the Greek may be *idēs*, as in *Priamides* and *Ēacides*; or *eidēs*, as in *Atrides*, *Pelides*, which are derived from *Atrēus* and *Peleus*.

[§ 17.] 3. Usage (*auctoritas*) alone makes the vowel in the first syllable of *mater*, *frater*, *prāvus*, *manō* (I flow), *dico*, *duco*, *miror*, *nitor*, *scribo*, *donō*, *pono*, *utor*, *muto*, *sumo*, *cura*, &c. long; and short in *pater*, *cadō*, *rego*, *tego*, *bibo*, *minor*, *colo*, *moror*, *probo*, *domus*, *soror*, and others. It must be presumed that the student makes himself acquainted with the quantity of such words as these by practice, for rules can here be given only with regard to derivatives. It must further be observed, that the *i* in the following words is long: *formīca*, *lectīca*, *lorica*, *vesica*, *urtica*, *salīva*, *castīgo*, and *formīdo*.

a) *Derivative* words retain the quantity of their root, as is the case also in declension and conjugation: thus the *a* in *āmor* and *āmo* is short, and therefore also in *āmoris*, *āmat*, *āmabam*, *āmavi*, &c.; except when the consonants after the vowel of the root produce a difference. New words formed from roots likewise retain the quantity; as from *āmo* — *āmor*, *āmicus*, *āmabilis*; from *lux*, *lūcis* — *lūceo*, *lūcidus*; from *māter* — *māternus*, *mātertera*; and from *pāter* — *pātrius*, *pāternus*.

[§ 18.] With regard to Conjugation, however, the following rules also must be observed.

1. The perfect and supine, when they consist of two syllables, and the tenses formed from them, have the first syllable long, even when in the present tense it is short, e. g., *videō*, *vidi*; *fūgio*, *fūgi*; *lēgo*, *lēgi*, *lēgissee*, *lēgeram*, &c.; *videō*, *visum*; *mōveo*, *mōtum*, *mōtus*, *mōturus* (except, however, when one vowel stands before another, in which case the general rule remains in force, as in *rāō*, *rūi*, *dirūi*). Seven dissyllabic perfects, however, and nine dissyllabic supines together with their compounds make their penultima short; viz. *bībī*, *dēdī*, *fīdī* (from *findo*), *sētī*, *sētī*, *tūlī*,

and *scīdi* (from *scindo*), and *dātum*, *rātum*, *sātum*, *ītum*, *lītum*, *cītum*, *gītum*, *sītum*, and *rūtum*. *Sisto* makes its supine *stātum*, whence *stātus*, *a*, *um*, and the compounds *adstītum*, *destītum*, *restītum*.

2. Perfects which are formed by reduplication, as *tundo*, *tūtūdi*; *cano*, *cēcīni*; *pello*, *pēpūli*, have the first two syllables short: but the second sometimes becomes long by position, as in *mordeo*, *mōmordi*; *tendo*, *tētēdi*. *Pedo* and *caedo* are the only two words which retain the long vowel in the syllable which forms the root, *pepēdi*, *cecīdi*; whereas *cādo*, in accordance with the rule, has *cēcīdi*.

3. The perfect *posui* and the supine *positum* have the *o* short, although in *pono* it is long.

With regard to Declension, we must notice the exception that the words *lār*, *pār*, *sāl*, and *pēs* shorten their vowel throughout their declension: *sālīs*, *pēdis*, &c.

[§ 19.] In the formation of new words by Derivation, there are several exceptions to the above rule. The following words make the short vowel long: *mācer*, *mācero*; *lēgo*, *lex* *lēgis*, *lēgare*; *rēgo*, *rex*, *rēgis*, *rēgula*; *tēgo*, *tēgula*; *sēdeo*, *sēdes*; *sēro*, *sēmen*, *sēmentis*; *suspīcor*, *suspicio*; *persōno*, *persōna*; *vōco*, *vox*, *vōcis*; *hōmo*, *hūmanus*, and a few others. The following words have a short vowel, although it is long in the root: *lābare* from *lābi*; *nātare* from *nāre*; *pāciscor* from *pax*, *pācis*; *ambītus* and *ambītio* from *ambire*, *ambītum*; *dīcax* from *dīcere*; *fīdes* and *perfidus* from *fīdo* and *fīdus* (but we regularly find *infīdus*); *mōlestus* from *mōles*; *nōta* and *nōtare* from *nōtus*; *ōdium* from *ōdi*; *sōpor* from *sōpire*; *dux*, *dūcis*, and *redux*, *redūcis*, from *dūco*; *lūcerna* from *lūceo*.

[§ 20.] The Terminations or final syllables, by means of which adjectives are formed from substantives, are of a different kind. Among these *alis*, *aris*, *anus*, *ivus* and *osus*, have a long vowel; but *idus* and *icus*, a short one; e. g., *letālis*, *vulgāris*, *montānus*, *aestīvus*, *vinōsus*; *arīdus*, *avidus*, *cupīdus*, *modīcus*, *publicus*, *rustīcus*, *bellicus*. A long *i*, however, occurs in *amicus*, *apricus*, *pudīcus*, and *postīcus*, and in the substantives *mendīcus* and *umbilīcus*. The terminations *ilis* and *bilis* have the *i* short when they make derivatives from verbs, but long when from substantives; e. g., *facīlis* and *amabīlis*, from *facio* and *amo*; but *civilis*, *puerilis*, from *civis* and *puer*. The only exceptions are *humīlis* and *parīlis*, from *humus* and *par*. The *i* in the termination *inus* may be long or short: it is long in adjectives derived from names of animals and places, as *asinīnus*, *canīnus*, *Latīnus*, and a few others, such as *divīnus*, *genuīnus*, *clandestīnus*, *intestīnus*, *marīnus*, and *vīcīnus*; it is short in most adjectives which express time, as *crastīnus*, *diutīnus*, *pristīnus*, and in those which indicate a material or substance, as *crys-tallīnus*, *elephantīnus*, *cedrīnus*, *oleagīnus*. Some adjectives expressive of time, however, have the *i* long, viz. *matutīnus*, *vespertīnus*, and *repentīnus*.

[§ 21.] *b*) Compound words retain the quantity of the vowels of their elements: thus from *āvus* and *nēpos* we make *abāvus* and *abnēpos*, from *prōbus* *imprōbus*, from *jūs* (*jūris*) *perjūrus*, from *lēgo* (I read) *perlēgo*, and from *lēgo* (I despatch), *ablēgo*, *delēgo*, *collēga*. Even when the vowel is changed, its quantity remains the same: e. g., *laedo*, *illīdo*; *caedo*, *incīdo*; *aequus*, *inīquus*; *fauces*, *suffōco*; *claudio*,

reclūdo ; *fācio*, *effīcio* ; *cādo*, *incīdo* ; *rātus*, *irritus* ; *rēgo*, *erigo* ; *lēgo*, *eligo*. We may therefore infer from compound words the quantity of those of which they consist ; e. g., from *admiror* and *abūtor* we conclude that *miror* and *utor* have the first syllable long ; and from *commōror* and *desūper*, that the first syllable in *moror* and *super* is short, which is not always accurately distinguished in pronunciation, because these syllables have the accent. (See Chap. IV.)

But there are some exceptions, and the following compound words change the long vowel into a short one: *dejēro* and *pejēro* from *jūro* ; *causidicus*, *fatidicus*, *maledicus*, *veridicus*, from *dicere* ; *agnitus* and *cognitus* from *nōtus* ; *innūb(us)*, -a, and *pronūb(us)*, -a, from *nūbo*. The case is reversed in *imbēcillus* from *bēculus*.

[§ 22.] In respect to Composition with Prepositions, it is to be remarked, that prepositions of one syllable which end in a vowel are long, and those which end in a consonant are short: *dēduco*, *āboleo*, *pērīmo*. *Trā* (formed from *trans*), as in *trādo*, is long ; but the *o* (for *ob*) in *ōmitto* and *ōperior* is short. *Pro*, in Greek words, is short, as in *prōpheta*, but in Latin words it is long ; e. g. *prōdo*, *prōmitto* : in many however it is short ; *prōfugus*, *prōfiteor*, *prōfanus*, *prōfiscor*, *prōfundus*, and a few others. *Se* and *dī* (for *dīs*) are long ; the only exceptions are *dīrimo* and *dīsertus*. *Re* is short ; it is long only in the impersonal verb *rēfert*, being compounded of *rem* and *fert* : in all other cases where it appears long, the consonant which follows it must be doubled (in verse), as in *reppuli*, *repperi*, *rettuli*, *reccido*, *redduco*, *relligio*. The termination *a* in prepositions of two syllables is long, as in *contrādīco* ; all the others are short, as *antēfero*, *praetēreo*.

[§ 23.] When the first part of a compound is not a preposition, it is necessary to determine the quantity of the final vowel (*a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, *y*) of the first word. 1) *a* is long, as in *quāre* and *quāpropter*, except in *quāsi*. 2) *e* is mostly short, as in *calēfacio* (notice especially *nēque*, *nēqueo*, *nēfas*, *nēfastus*, *nēfarius*, *nēfandus*), but long in *nēquam*, *nēquidquam*, *nēquaquam* and *nēmo* (which is contracted from *ne* and *homo*) ; also in *sēdecim* and the pronouns *mēmet*, *mēcum*, *tēcum*, and *sēcum* ; in *venēficus*, *vidēlicet*, *vēcors*, and *vēsanus*. 3) *i* is short, e. g. *signīfico*, *sacrīlegus*, *cornīcen*, *tubīcen*, *omnipotens*, *undīque* ; but long in compound pronouns, as *quīlibet*, *utīque*, in *ibidem*, *ubīque*, *utrobīque*, *īlicet* and *scīlicet* ; also in the compounds of *dies*, as *bīduum*, *trīduum*, *merīdies* ; and lastly, in all those compounds of which the parts may be separated, such as *lucrīfacio*, *agricultūra*, *siquis*, because the *i* at the end of the first word is naturally long, and remains so. 4) *o* is short, *hōdie*, *duōdecim*, *sacrōsanctus* ; but long in compounds with *contro*, *intro*, *retro*, and *quando* (*quandōquidem* alone forms an exception) ; it is long in *alīdquī*, *ceterōquī*, *utrōque*, and in those Greek words in which the *o* represents the Greek *ω*, as in *geōmetria*. 5) *u* and *y* are short, as in *quadrūpes*, *Polīphēmus*.

4. In regard to the quantity of Final Syllables, the following special rules must be observed : —

A. MONOSYLLABIC WORDS.

[§ 24.] 1) All monosyllables ending in a vowel are long; except the particles which are attached to other words: *quē*, *vē*, *cē*, *nē*, *tē* (*tutē*), *psē* (*reapsē*), and *ptē* (*suoptē*).

2) Of the monosyllables ending in a consonant, the substantives are long, as *sōl*, *vēr*, *fūr*, *jūs*; and all those are short which are not substantives, as *ūt*, *ēt*, *in*, *ān*, *ād*, *quīd*, *sēd*, *quīs*, *quōt*. The following substantives however are short: *cōr*, *fēl*, *mēl*, *vīr*, and *ōs* (gen. *ossis*), and probably also *mas*, a male being, and *vas*, a surety, since they have the *a* short in the genitive: *māris*, *vādīs*. Some words, on the other hand, are long, although they are not substantives; as *ēn*, *nōn*, *quīn*, *sīn*, *crās*, *plūs*, *cūr*, and *pār* with its compounds, and also the adverbs in *ic* or *uc*, as *sic*, *hic*, *hūc*. The monosyllabic forms of declension and conjugation follow the general rules about the quantity of final syllables, and *dās*, *fēs*, and *scīs* accordingly are long, while *dāt*, *fēt*, and *scīt* are short; *hīs*, *hōs*, *quōs*, *quās* are long, like the terminations *is*, *ōs*, and *ās* in declension. So also the ablatives singular *hōc* and *hāc*. The nominative *hic* and the neuter *hoc*, on the other hand, although the vowel is naturally short, are commonly used as long, because the ancient form was *hice*, *hoce*. The abridged imperatives retain the quantity of the root, so that *dīc* and *dūc* are long, while *fāc* and *fēr* are short.

Note. *Ne*, the interrogative particle, is always short, being attached to other words as an enclitic, as in *videne*. The conjunction *ne* (lest, that not) is long. (See § 24. 1.)

B. FINAL SYLLABLES IN WORDS OF TWO OR MORE SYLLABLES.

[§ 25.] 1) *Such as terminate in a Vowel.*

A is *short* in nouns, except in the ablative singular of the first declension and in the vocative of Greek proper names in *as*, e. g. *Āneā*, *Pallā*. *A* is *long* in verbs and indeclinable words, such as *amā*, *frustrā*, *ergā*, *anteā*, and *postēā* (unless it be separated into *post ea*), except *itā*, *quīā*, *ejā*. In the indeclinable numerals, as *trīginta* and *quadraginta*, the *a* is sometimes long and sometimes short.

E is *short*, as in *patrē*, *currē*, *nempē*; but *long* in the ablative of the fifth declension and in the imperative of the

second conjugation. Adverbs in *e* formed from adjectives of the second declension are likewise long, as *doctē*, *rectē*; also *ferē*, *fermē*, and *ohē* (but *benē* and *malē* are always short), and Greek words of the first declension terminating in *e*, as *Circē*, *Tempē*.

[§ 26.] *I* is long. It is short only in the vocative of Greek words in *is*, e. g. *Alexī*, and in *nīsī*, *quāsī*, and *cuī*, when it is used as a dissyllable. The *i* is common or doubtful in *mihi*, *tibi*, *sibi*, *ibi* and *ubi*; in compounds we commonly find *ibidem* and *ubique*, whereas in *ubivis* and *ubinam* the *i* is always short. In *uti* for *ut* the *i* is long, but short in the compounds *utinam* and *utique*.

O is common in the present tense, as *rogō*, *canō*, *audiō*, and in the nominative of the third declension, as in *sermo*, *virgo*; the Greek words in *o* (ω, Gen. ος) however remain long in Latin, as *Iō*, *Didō*. But *o* is long in the second declension, as in *lectō*, and in adverbs formed from nouns and pronouns by means of this termination, e. g. *falsō*, *meritō*, *paulō*, *eō*, *quō*, and also *ergō*, *iccircō*, *quandō* and *retrō*. The adverbs *mōdō* (with all its compounds), *cūtō*, *illicō*, and *immō*, and also *cedō* (in the sense of *dīc* or *da*), *egō*, *duō*, and *octō* are always short, whereas *ambō* is generally long.

U is always long, as in *diū*, *vultū*, *cornū*.

Y in Greek words is always short.

2) Such as terminate in a Consonant.

[§ 27.] All final syllables ending in a consonant are short, and special rules are required only for those ending in the sibilant *s*.

Note. Greek words retain their original quantity in their final syllables, except those in *or*, as *Hector*, *Nestor*, which are short in Latin, although in Greek they end in *ωρ*.

[§ 28.] *As* is long in Latin words, with the exception of *anās*, *anātis*; but the Greek nominatives in *as*, which make their genitives in *adoς* and in Latin in *adis*, such as *Ilias*, *Pallas*, and the Greek accusatives plural of the third declension, are always short, as in *heroās*.

Es is long, e. g. *amēs*, *legēs*, *audiēs*, *patrēs*. But Latin nominatives in *es*, which increase in the genitive, and have their penultima short, are themselves short: e. g. *milēs*, *milītis*; except *abiēs*, *ariēs*, *pariēs*, *Cerēs*, and the compounds

of *pēs*. The preposition *penēs* and the second person of the verb *sum*, *ēs*, have the *es* short; but the *ēs* (for *edis*) from *edo* is long.

[§ 29.] *Is* is generally *short*, but long in all the cases of the plural, as *armis*, *vobis*; and also in the second person singular of verbs whose second plural is *itis*, that is, in the fourth conjugation, and in *possis*, *velis*, *nolis*, *malis*, and *vis* (thou wilt), with its compounds, *mavis*, *quivis*, *quamvis*.

Os is *long*, as in *nepōs*, *honōs*, *virōs*, *nōs*; it is short only in *compōs* and *impōs*, and in Greek words in *os*, e. g. *Delōs*.

Us is *short* in verbs and nouns except monosyllables, but long in the genitive singular, in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural of the fourth declension, and in the nominatives of the third, which have *ū* in the genitive, as *virtūs*, *ūtis*; *palūs*, *ūdis*.

Ys in Greek words is *short*, as *Halys*, *chlamys*.

[§ 30.] 5. Syllables (as was remarked in the beginning of this Chapter) may become long by their vowel being followed by two or more consonants, that is, by their *position*: *x* and *z* are accounted as two consonants. A *position* may be formed in three ways:—1. When a syllable ends in two or three consonants, as in *est*, *vult*, *mens*, *rex*.—2. When the first syllable ends in a consonant and the second begins with one, as in *vel-le*, *ar-ma*, *vul-tis*, or in two distinct words, as *in silvis*, *et populus*.—By these two kinds of position, a syllable is always lengthened, although its vowel may be naturally short.—3. When the first syllable ends in a vowel, and the one following begins with two consonants, or a double consonant (*x* and *z*), we must distinguish as to whether the position occurs within a word or between two words. Within a word a syllable ending in a short vowel is regularly made long, as in *a-ptus*, *fa-ctus*, *a-xis*; when, however, the first consonant is a mute and the second a liquid (which is called *positio debilis*), they make the vowel, for poetical purposes, only common. Thus, we may pronounce either *cerēbrum*, *volūcris*, *lugūbris*, *mediōcris*, *intēgri*, or *cerēbrum*, *volūcris*, *lugūbris*, *mediōcris*, *intēgri*. But between two words the short vowel before a *muta cum liquida* is rarely lengthened.

Qu is not accounted as two consonants, for *u* is not a true consonant, though we usually pronounce it as such. But *j* alone is sufficient to make position within a word; e. g., *mājor*, *ējus*, *Trōja*.

CHAP. IV.

OF THE ACCENT OF WORDS.

[§ 32.] 1. It is a general rule that every word has an accent on one particular syllable. This accent is twofold, either the *circumflex* (^), or the *acute* (´), for what is called the *grave* in Greek means only the absence of either accent. Some words, however, have no accent, viz., the enclitics *ne*, *que*, *ve*, *ce*, which never appear by themselves, but are attached to other words. Prepositions lose their accent when they precede the cases which they govern.

[§ 33.] 2. Monosyllables are pronounced with the circumflex, when their vowel is long by nature and not merely by position, as in *dôs*, *môs*, *flôs*, *jûs*, *lûx*, *spês*, *fôns* and *môn*s ; but when the vowel is naturally short, they are pronounced with the acute, although the syllable may be long by position ; e. g. *ârs*, *fâx*, *dûx*.

3. Words of two syllables have the accent on the first, either as circumflex, when the vowel of that syllable is naturally long, and that of the second one short ; or as acute, when the vowel of the first syllable is short, and that of the second long ; or when the vowel of the first as well as that of the second is long ; e. g. *Rômă*, *mûsă*, *lûce*, *jûris* ; but *hómo* because both syllables are short ; *déos*, because the first is short and the second long ; *ârte*, because the first is long only by position ; *dóti*, for although the vowel of the first is naturally long, yet that of the second is likewise long ; and *árti*, because both syllables are long.

4. Words of three syllables may have the accent either on the antepenultima or penultima ; the acute on the antepenultima, when the penultima is short, as in *caédere*, *pérgere*, *hómínes* ; the accented syllable itself may be long or short. The circumflex is placed on the penultima on the conditions before-mentioned, as in *amâsse*, *Românus* ; and the acute when those conditions do not exist, and yet the penultima is long, as in *Românis*, *Metéllûs*. No word can have the accent further back than the antepenultima, so that we must pronounce *Constantinópolis*, *solicitudínibus*.

[§ 34.] 5. Words of two or more syllables never have the accent on the last.

[§ 35.] 6. These rules concerning accentuation ought to lead us to accustom ourselves to distinguish accent from quantity ; to read, for example, *hóminēs* and not *hōminēs*, and to distinguish in our pronunciation *lēgo* (I read) from *lēgo* (I despatch) and in like manner *mālus* (bad) from *mālus* (an apple tree), *pālūs, ūdis* (a marsh), from *pālus, i* (a post), and *pō'pulus* (the people) from *pō'pulus* (a poplar). In our own language accent and quantity coincide, but it is very wrong to apply this peculiarity to a language to which it is foreign.

THE ACCIDENCE.

CHAP. V.

DIVISION OF WORDS ACCORDING TO THEIR SIGNIFICATION.

[§ 36.] THE words of every language are either nouns, verbs, or particles.

A *noun* serves to denote an object or a quality of an object, and may accordingly be either a *substantive*, as *domus* (a house), a *pronoun*, as *ego* (I), or an *adjective*, as *parvus* (small). Nouns are declined to indicate different relations.

A *verb* expresses an action or condition which is ascribed to a person or a thing, as *scribo*, *ire*, *dormire*, *amari*. A verb is conjugated in order to indicate the different modes in which an action or condition is ascribed to a person or a thing.

Particles are those parts of speech, which are neither declined nor conjugated, and which are neither nouns nor verbs. They are divided into the following classes. 1) *Adverbs* express the circumstances of an action or condition, as *scribit bene*, he writes well; *diu dormit*, he sleeps long. 2) *Prepositions* express, either directly or indirectly, the relations of persons or things to one another or to actions and conditions; as, *amor meus erga te*, my love towards thee; *eo ad te*, I go to thee. 3) *Conjunctions* express the connexion between things, actions, or propositions; as *ego et tu*; *clamavit, sed pater non audivit*. 4) *Interjections* are the expressions of emotion by a single word; as *ah*, *oh*, *vae*.

These are the eight *parts of speech* in Latin; all of them occur in the following hexameter: —

Vae tibi ridenti, quia mox post gaudia flebis.

CHAP. VI.

NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE.—GENERAL RULES OF GENDER.

[§ 37.] NOUNS substantive are either *proper*, i. e. the names of one particular man or thing, or *common*, i. e. such as denote a class of objects.

All nouns have one of three genders : *masculine*, *feminine*, or *neuter*.

The gender of substantives is determined partly by their termination, and partly by their signification. In reference to the latter point the following general rules must be observed.

1. The names of men and of male beings, of rivers, winds, and months, are of the *masculine* gender.

[§ 39.] 2. The names of women, female beings, and most trees, towns, countries, and islands, are *feminine*.

Exceptions. The names of trees and shrubs in *er*, of the third declension, are neuter ; as *siler*, *cicer*, *papaver*. Masculine are *oleaster* and *pinaster*, which belong to the second, and *styrax* which belongs to the third declension : also many shrubs and smaller plants in *us*, genit. *i* ; e. g. *amarantus*, *asparagus*, *calamus*, *dumus*, *hellebōrus*, *intūbus*, *rhamnus*, and *spinus*.

Of the names of towns, the following are masculine : 1) All plurals in *i*, as *Argi*, *Delphi*, *Veji* ; 2) Five in *o* : *Hippo* (with the surname *regius*), *Narbo Marcius*, *Frusino*, *Sulmo* and *Croto*. 3) *Tunes*, *ētis*, and *Canopus*. The following are neuter : 1) Those ending in *um*, and the Greek names in *on*, as *Tusculum*, *Ilion* ; 2) The plurals in *a*, genit. *orum*, e. g. *Susa*, *Ecbatana*, *Leuctra*. 3) Those ending in *e* and *ur*, which follow the third declension, as *Caere*, *Tergeste*, *Anxur*, and *Tibur* ; *Tuder* is likewise neuter ; 4) The indeclinable names in *i* and *y*, as *Illiturgi*, *Asty*, and some barbarous names, the declension of which is defective. *Argos*, as a neuter, occurs only in the nominative and accusative, otherwise *Argi*, *orum*, is used. The poets occasionally use some of these names, according to the general rule, as feminines, the word *urbs* being understood ; this is the case especially with *Praeneste*.

Names of countries in *um* and plurals in *a* are neuter, as *Latium*, *Bactra* ; the names *Bospōrus*, *Pontus*, and *Hellespontus*, are masculine. The names of islands ending in *um* and the Egyptian *Delta* are neuter.

Most names of *precious stones* are feminine as in Greek ; but *beryllus*, *carbunculus*, *opālus* and *smaragdus* are masculine.

[§ 40.] 3. There are many names of persons, which are common to both sexes, as they denote an occupation or quality which may belong either to a man or a woman. Such words are called *common* (*communia*). Those found in Latin

with two genders are contained in the following hexameter lines :—

*Antistes, vates, adolescens, auctor et augur,
Dux, judex, index, testis, cum cive sacerdos,
Municipi adde parens, patrueli affinis et heres,
Artifici conjux atque incola, miles et hostis,
Par juvenis, martyr, comes, infans, obses et hospes,
Interpres, praesul, custos, vindexque, satelles.*

<i>Antistes</i> , president.	<i>Heres, ēdis</i> , heir.
<i>Vates</i> , seer, prophet.	<i>Artifex</i> , artist.
<i>Adolescens</i> , a youth.	<i>Conjux</i> , husband or wife.
<i>Auctor</i> , author.	<i>Incola</i> , inhabitant.
<i>Augur</i> , augur.	<i>Miles</i> , soldier.
<i>Dux</i> , leader, commander.	<i>Hostis</i> , enemy.
<i>Judex</i> , judge.	<i>Par</i> , colleague, partner.
<i>Index</i> , indicator, denouncer.	<i>Juvenis</i> , a young man or woman.
<i>Testis</i> , witness.	<i>Martyr</i> , martyr.
<i>Civis</i> , citizen.	<i>Comes</i> , companion.
<i>Sacerdos</i> , priest, priestess.	<i>Infans</i> , infant, child.
<i>Municeps</i> , a citizen of a municipal town.	<i>Obses</i> , hostage.
<i>Parens</i> , parent; in the plural, however, it is only masculine.	<i>Interpres</i> , interpreter.
<i>Patruelis</i> , aunt or uncle.	<i>Praesul</i> , president.
<i>Affinis</i> , relation.	<i>Custos</i> , guard.
	<i>Vindex</i> , avenger.
	<i>Satelles</i> , satellite.

[§ 41.] 4. *Substantiva mobilia* are those substantives which receive different terminations for the masculine and feminine genders. The termination for the feminine is always *a* or *trix*, and the latter occurs in those cases in which the masculine ends in *tor*, as in *victor*, *victrix*; *praeceptor*, *praeceprix*; *inventor*, *inventrix*. (See § 236.) The feminine is indicated by *a* when the masculine ends in *us* or *er*, or any other termination, e. g. *coquus*, *coqua*; *puer*, *puera*; *magister*, *magistra*; *rex*, *regina*; *caupo*, *copa*; *tibicen*, *tibicina*.

[§ 42.] 5. Some names of animals have special terminations to distinguish the two sexes: *cervus*, *cerva*; *equus*, *equa*; *gallus*, *gallina*; *juvencus*, *juvenca*; *lupus*, *lupa*; *leo*, *lea* and *leaena*; *vitulus*, *vitula*; *ursus*, *ursa*. In some cases the words are altogether different, as in *taurus*, *vacca*, a bull and cow; *aries*, *ovis*, ram and sheep; *hoedus*, *capella*.

Most other names of animals are common (*epicoena*); that is, they have only one grammatical gender which comprises both sexes, e. g. *passer*, *anser*, *corvus*, *canis* are masculine; and *aquila*, *felis*, *anas*, *vulpes* are feminine, though they may denote animals of either sex. If the sex of the particular animal is to be stated, the word *mas* or *femina* are added to the name; as, *anas mas*, *anas femina*, *femina piscis*. Instead of *mas* we may also use *masculus* or *mascula*, e. g. *vulpes mascula*, a male fox; *pavo masculus*, a male peacock. Some of these nouns however, in which the difference of sex is more frequently noticed, are used as real common nouns (§ 40.), so that they are masculine when the male animal, and feminine when the female animal, is to be particularly specified. Of this kind are *bos*, *canis*, *elephantus*, *lepus*, *mus*, which are masculine when the difference of sex is not noticed; but feminine when the female is designated. Thus we generally find, e. g., *elephanti prudentissimi habentur*, *lepores timidi sunt*; but at the same time *elephantus gravis*, *lepus secunda*.

The following nouns are sometimes masculine and sometimes feminine, without regard to difference of sex: *anguis* and *serpens*, a serpent; *dama*, fallow-deer; *talpa*, a mole; also *sus*, a pig; and *tigris*, tiger; but *sus* is commonly feminine, while *tigris* is commonly masculine. Others are of uncertain gender, in as far as they have both a masculine and a feminine form, which, however, are used indiscriminately and without regard to sex. Thus we have the feminine forms *colubra*, *lacerta*, *lusciniæ*, and *simia* along with the masculines *coluber*, *lacertus*, *luscinius*, and *simius*, without *simia*, for instance, having any reference whatever to a female monkey.

[§ 43.] 6. The following are *neuter*. All indeclinable substantives, as *gummi*, *pascha*, *sināpi*, and *pondo* which is used as an indeclinable noun in the sense of "pound;" the names of the letters of the alphabet, as *c triste*, *o longum*, &c., and all words and expressions which, without being substantives, are conceived and used as such, or quoted merely as words; e. g. *ultimum vale*, *scire tuum nihil est*, *hoc ipsum diu mihi molestum est*, *lacrimas hoc mihi paene movet*, where the words *diu* and *paene* are quoted from the sayings of another person, and it is said that the very word *diu* or *paene* is painful.

CHAP. VII.

NUMBER, CASE, AND DECLENSION.

[§ 44.] THE Latin language distinguishes, in nouns and verbs, the *singular* and *plural* (*numerus singularis* and *pluralis*) by particular forms; it has also different forms to distinguish six different *cases* (*casus*) in the relations and connections of nouns. The ordinary names of these cases are *nominative*, *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, *vocative*, and *ablative*. The different forms of these cases are seen in the terminations which are annexed to the crude form of a word. *Declension* is the deriving of these different forms, both in the singular and plural, from one another, the nominative forming the starting point. The nominative and vocative are called *casus recti*, and the others *casus obliqui*.

There are five declensions distinguished by the termination of the genitive singular, which ends:—

1	2	3	4	5
<i>ae</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>ūs</i>	<i>eī</i>

All declensions have the following points in common:—

1. In the second, third, and fourth declensions there are neuters which have three cases alike, viz. nominative, accusative, and vocative.

2. The vocative is like the nominative, except in the singular of the second declension and in some Greek words in the first and third.

3. Where no exception arises from neuters, the accusative singular ends in *m*.

1	2	3	4	5
<i>am</i>	<i>um</i>	<i>em</i>	<i>um</i>	<i>em</i>

4. The genitive plural ends in *um*.

1	2	3	4	5
<i>ārum</i>	<i>ōrum</i>	<i>um</i>	<i>ūrum</i>	<i>ērum</i>

5. The dative plural is in all declensions like the ablative plural.

1	2	3	4	5
<i>is</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>ibus</i>	<i>ibus</i> (<i>ūbus</i>)	<i>ēbus</i>

The following table contains the terminations of all the five declensions:—

SINGULAR.					
	neut.		neut.		
Nom. <i>a</i> (<i>e</i> , <i>as</i> , <i>es</i>)	<i>us, er, um</i>	<i>a, e, o, c, l, n, r, s, t, x</i>	<i>us, u</i>	<i>es.</i>	
Gen. <i>ae</i> (<i>es</i>)	<i>i</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>us</i>	<i>eī</i>	
Dat. <i>ae</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>ui</i>	<i>eī</i>	
Acc. <i>am</i> (<i>en</i>)	<i>um</i>	<i>em (im)</i>	<i>um, u</i>	<i>em.</i>	
Voc. like nom.	<i>e, er, um</i>	like nom.	like nom.	like nom.	
Abl. <i>a</i> (<i>e</i>)	<i>o</i>	<i>e (i)</i>	<i>u</i>	<i>e.</i>	
PLURAL.					
	neut.	neut.	neut.		
Nom. <i>ae</i>	<i>i, a</i>	<i>es, a (ia)</i>	<i>us, ua</i>	<i>es.</i>	
Gen. <i>arum</i>	<i>orum</i>	<i>um (ium)</i>	<i>uum</i>	<i>erum.</i>	
Dat. <i>is</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>ibus</i>	<i>ibus (ubus)</i>	<i>ebus.</i>	
Acc. <i>as</i>	<i>os, a</i>	<i>es, a (ia)</i>	<i>us, ua</i>	<i>es.</i>	
Voc. <i>ae</i>	<i>i, a</i>	<i>es, a (ia)</i>	<i>us, ua</i>	<i>es.</i>	
Abl. <i>is</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>ibus</i>	<i>ibus (ubus)</i>	<i>ebus.</i>	

CHAP. VIII.

FIRST DECLENSION.

[§ 45.] THE first declension comprises all nouns which form the genitive singular in *ae*. The nominative of genuine Latin words of this kind ends in *ā*. Greek words in *a*, as *musa*, *Medusa*, *Thalia*, follow the example of the Latin ones. Some Greek words in *ē*, *ās*, and *ēs* have peculiar terminations in some of their cases. (See Chap. IX.)

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. <i>vi-ā</i> , the way.	Nom. <i>vi-ae</i> , the ways.
Gen. <i>vi-ae</i> , of the way.	Gen. <i>vi-arum</i> , of the ways.
Dat. <i>vi-ae</i> , to the way.	Dat. <i>vi-īs</i> , to the ways.
Acc. <i>vi-am</i> , the way.	Acc. <i>vi-ās</i> , the ways.
Voc. <i>vi-ā</i> , O way!	Voc. <i>vi-ae</i> , O ways!
Abl. <i>vi-ā</i> , from the way.	Abl. <i>vi-īs</i> , from the ways.

In like manner are declined, for example, the substantives *barba*, beard; *causa*, cause; *cura*, care; *epistola*, letter; *fossa*, ditch; *hora*, hour; *mensa*, table; *noverca*, step-mother; *penna*, feather; *porta*, gate; *poena*, compensation; *sagitta*, arrow; *silva*, wood; *stella*, star; *uva*, grape; *victoria*, victory.

CHAP. IX.

GREEK WORDS IN *ē*, *ās*, AND *ēs*.

[§ 46.] 1. In the dative singular and throughout the plural, Greek words in *e*, *as*, and *es* do not differ from the regular declension. In the other cases of the singular they are declined in the following manner:—

Nom.	<i>ē</i>	<i>ās</i>	<i>ēs</i> .
Gen.	<i>ēs</i>	<i>ae</i>	<i>ae</i> .
Acc.	<i>ēn</i>	<i>am</i> (sometimes <i>ān</i>)	<i>ēn</i> .
Voc.	<i>ē</i>	<i>ā</i>	<i>ē</i> and <i>ā</i> .
Abl.	<i>ē</i>	<i>ā</i>	<i>ē</i>

Note. Words of this kind in *ē* are : *aloē*, *crambe*, *epitome*, *Circe*, *Danaē*; in *as* : *Aeneas*, *Boreas*, *Gorgias*, *Midas*, *Messias*, *Satanas*; in *es* : *anagnostes*, *comētes*, *dynastes*, *pyrites*, *sophistes*, *Anchises*, *Thersites*, and patronymics, (i. e. names of persons derived from their parents or ancestors, see § 245); e. g. *Aeneades*, *Alcides*, *Pelides*, *Priamides*, *Tyrides*.

Generally speaking, however, the patronymics in *ης*, genit. *ou*, are the only Greek words that follow the second declension; and the majority of proper names ending in *es* follow the third declension, as *Alcibiades*, *Miltiades*, *Xerxes*. But many of them form the accusative singular in *ēn*, after the first declension.

CHAP. X.

GENDER OF THE NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

[§ 47.] NOUNS in *a* and *e* are feminine, and those in *as* and *es* (being chiefly names of men) are masculine.

Note. Nouns denoting male beings are of course masculine, though they end in *a*, as *auriga*, coachman; *collēga*, colleague; *nauta*, sailor; *parricida*, parricide; *poēta*, poet; *scriba*, scribe. Names of rivers in *a*, such as *Garumna*, *Trebia*, *Sequana*, *Himera*, and *Hadria* (the Adriatic) are masculine, according to the general rule. (See Chap. VI.) The three rivers *Allia*, *Albula*, and *Matrōna*, however, are feminine.

CHAP. XI.

SECOND DECLENSION.

[§ 48.] ALL nouns which form the genitive singular in *i*, belong to the second declension. The greater part of them end in the nominative in *us*, the neuters in *um*; some end in *er*, and only one in *ir*, viz. *vir* with its compounds, to which we must add the proper name, *Trevir*. There is only one word ending in *ur*, viz. the adjective *satur*, *satūra*, *satūrum*.

The genitive of those in *us* and *um* is formed by changing these terminations into *i*. The vocative of words in *us* ends in *ē*; in all other cases the vocative is like the nominative.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Nom.	<i>gladi-ūs</i> , the sword.	Nom.	<i>gladi-ī</i> , the swords.
Gen.	<i>gladi-i</i> , of the sword.	Gen.	<i>gladi-ōrum</i> , of the swords.
Dat.	<i>gladi-ō</i> , to the sword.	Dat.	<i>gladi-īs</i> , to the swords.
Acc.	<i>gladi-um</i> , the sword.	Acc.	<i>gladi-ōs</i> , the swords.
Voc.	<i>gladi-ē</i> , O sword!	Voc.	<i>gladi-ī</i> , O swords!
Abl.	<i>gladi-ō</i> , from the sword.	Abl.	<i>gladi-īs</i> , from the swords.

The neuters in *um* are declined in the same way; but in the plural they have the termination *a*, and the nominative, accusative, and vocative are alike in the singular as well as in the plural.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Nom.	<i>scamn-um</i> , the bench.	Nom.	<i>scamn-ā</i> , the benches.
Gen.	<i>scamn-i</i> , of the bench.	Gen.	<i>scamn-ōrum</i> , of the benches.
Dat.	<i>scamn-ō</i> , to the bench.	Dat.	<i>scamn-īs</i> , to the benches.
Acc.	<i>scamn-um</i> , the bench.	Acc.	<i>scamn-ā</i> , the benches.
Voc.	<i>scamn-um</i> , O bench!	Voc.	<i>scamn-ā</i> , O benches!
Abl.	<i>scamn-ō</i> , from the bench.	Abl.	<i>scamn-īs</i> , from the benches.

Vir and its compounds, as well as *satur*, simply add the terminations of the different cases to the nominative.

Some of the words in *er* are likewise declined by merely adding the terminations to the nominative, as *puer*, *puēr-i*, *puēr-ō*, *puēr-um*, *puēr-orum*, *puēr-is*, *puēr-os*; others reject

the short *e* in the oblique cases, as *liber* (a book), *libr-i*, *libr-o*, *libr-um*, &c. Those which retain the *e* are not very numerous, viz. *adulter*, *gener*, *puer*, *socer*, *vesper*, *Liber* (the god Bacchus), and *liberi* (the children, only in the plural); the adjectives *asper*, *lacer*, *liber* (free), *miser*, *prosper*, and *tener*. To these we must add the compounds of *ferre* and *gerere*, as *Lucifer*, *armiger*, and the words *presbyter*, *Ibēr*, and *Celtibēr* (plural *Celtibēri*). The adjective *dexter* has both forms, *dextera* and *dextra*, *dexterum* and *dextrum*.

[§ 49.] 1. The genitive of nouns in *ius* and *ium*, in the best age of the Latin language, was not *ii*, but *i*, as *fili*, *Tulli*, *mancipi*.

2. The following nine adjectives or adjective pronouns, *unus*, *solus*, *totus*, *ullus*, *uter*, *neuter*, *alter*, *nullus*, and *alius*, together with their compounds, *uterque*, *utervis*, *uterlibet*, *utercunque*, and *alteruter*, form the genitive in all their three genders in *ius*, and the dative in *i*; in addition to which *uter* and *neuter* eject the *e* preceding the *r*. The *i* of this genitive is long in prose, but in verse it is sometimes made short. *Alterius* alone has the *i* short both in prose and generally also in verse. Hence *unus*, Gen. *unius*, Dat. *uni*; *alius*, Gen. *alius*, Dat. *alii*; *uter*, Gen. *utrius*, Dat. *utri*.

[§ 50.] 3. The vocative of proper names in *ius* ends in *i* instead of *ie*, e.g. *Antōni*, *Mercūri*, *Terenti*, *Tulli*, *Virgili*. In like manner the proper names in *jus*, being sometimes softened down into *ius*, make the vocative in a simple *i*, as *Gāi*, *Pompēi*. But all common nouns and adjectives regularly form their vocative in *ie*, as *fluvie*, *gladie*, *pie*, even when such adjectives have become proper names, as *Pius*. *Filius* and *genius*, however, make their vocative *fili*, *geni*, and *meus* (though not *mea* or *meum*) makes *mi*. *Deus* in the vocative is like the nominative, as *O deus!* *mi deus!*

[§ 51.] 4. The genitive plural of some words, especially those which denote money, measure, and weight, is commonly *um* instead of *orum*, particularly *nummum*, *sestertium*, *denarium*, *medimnum*, *modium*, *jugerum*, *talentum*. So also *deum* and *liberum*, instead of *deorum* and *liberorum*.

5. *Deus* has three forms in the nom. dat. and ablat. plur., viz. *dei*, *dii*, and *di*, and *deis*, *diis*, and *dis*.

The following words may serve as exercises of declension: — *Annus*, year; *corvus*, raven; *hortus*, garden; *lectus*, bed; *medicus*, physician; *morbus*, illness; *nuntius*, messenger; *populus*, people; *rivus*, brook; *taurus*, bull; *ventus*, wind. Neuters in *um*: — *Astrum*, star; *bellum*, war.

collum, neck ; *dolium*, cask ; *donum*, present ; *membrum*, limb ; *negotium*, business ; *ovum*, egg ; *poculum*, cup ; *proelium*, battle ; *sepulcrum*, sepulchre ; *signum*, sign ; *tergum*, back ; *vinculum*, fetter. Those in *er*, genit. *eri*, have been mentioned above. The following are the most common among those which reject the *e* before the *r* : *Ager*, field ; *aper*, boar ; *arbiter*, arbitrator ; *auster*, south wind ; *cancer*, cancer or crab ; *columber*, snake ; *culter*, knife ; *faber*, workman ; *liber*, book ; *magister*, teacher ; *minister*, servant. To these must be added the proper names in *er*, e. g. *Alexander*, gen. *Alexandri*. The adjectives which reject the *e* are *aeger*, *ater*, *creber*, *glaber*, *macer*, *niger*, *piger*, *impiger*, *pulcher*, *ruber*, *sacer*, *scaber*, *sinister*, *tacter*, *vafēr*.

CHAP. XII.

GREEK WORDS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION

[§ 52.] GREEK words in *os* and neuters in *ov*, which make *ov* in the genitive, are commonly Latinized in the nominative by the terminations *us* and *um*, such as the common nouns *taurus*, *antrum*, *theatrum*, and the proper names *Homerus*, *Pyrrhus*, *Codrus* ; or by the termination *er*, e. g. *Alexander*, *Maeander*, *Teucer*. Others admit of both terminations in the nominative, as *Delos*, *Paros*, and *Delus*, *Parus* ; *Ilion* and *Ilium*. The genitive plural in *ōn* instead of *orum* occurs in the titles of books, such as *Bucolicon*, *Georgicon*.

Greek words in *eus* such as *Orpheus*, *Idomeneus*, *Phalereus*, were pronounced in Latin sometimes *ēus* as one syllable, and sometimes *ēus*. The best way is to make them follow entirely the second Latin Declension, as *Orphei*, *Orpheo*, *Orpheum*, with the exception of the vocative, which (according to the Greek third declension) ends in *ἦν*.

CHAP. XIII.

GENDER OF THE NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION.

[§ 53.] 1. NOUNS in *us*, *er*, and *ir* are masculine ; those in *um* and the Greek nouns in *ōn* are neuter.

2. Of those in *us* however the following are feminine : the names of plants and precious stones, as well as those of towns, countries, and islands, with a few exceptions. (See above, § 39.) It must be observed, that in many cases

where the name of a tree ends in *us* fem., there is a form in *um* denoting the fruit of the tree, e. g. *cerasus*, a cherry tree; *cerasum*, a cherry; *malus*, *malum*; *morus*, *morum*; *pirus*, *pirum*; *prunus*, *prunum*; *pomus*, *pomum*; but *ficus* signifies both the tree and the fruit. There are only four other genuine Latin words in *us* which are feminine, viz. *alvus*, *humus*, *vannus*, and *colus*, which however is sometimes declined after the fourth declension, gen. *ūs*. *Pampinus*, a branch of a vine, is rarely feminine, but commonly masculine. *Virus* (juice or poison) and *pelagus* (τὸ πέλαγος, the sea) are neuter. *Vulgus* (the people) is sometimes masculine, but more frequently neuter.

[§ 54.] *Note.* With regard to the numerous Greek feminines in *us* (or *os*), which have been adopted into the Latin language, we notice especially the compounds of ἡ ὁδος: *exodus*, *methodus*, *periodus*, and *synodus*, and the words *bibulus*, *papyrus*, *dialectus*, *diphthongus*, *paragráphus*, *diamētrus* and *perimētrus*.

CHAP. XIV.

THIRD DECLENSION. — GENITIVE.

[§ 55.] NOUNS of the third declension form their genitive in *is*.

The nominative has a great variety of terminations, for sometimes there is no particular ending, and the nominative itself is the crude form, such as it usually appears after the separation of the termination of the genitive; frequently however the nominative has a special ending. 1.) The former is, generally speaking, the case with those words the crude form of which ends in *l* or *r*, so that the nominative ends in the same consonants, and the genitive is formed by simply adding *is*; e. g. *sol*, *consul*, *calcar*, *agger*, *auctor*, *dolor*, *murmur*. Words like *pater* and *imber*, the crude form of which appears in the genitive and ends in *r* with a consonant before it, as *patr-is*, *imbr-is*, admit of a double explanation: either the nominative was increased for the purpose of facilitating the pronunciation, or the genitive rejected the short *e* (*patris* for *pateris*); the former however is the more probable supposition. In some words the nominative has *s* instead of *r*, as *flos*, gen. *flor-is*; *tellus*, *tellur-is*; in addition to which the vowel sometimes undergoes a change, as in *corpus*, *corpor-is*; *onus*, *oner-is*. When the crude form ends in *n* with a vowel before it, the formation of the nominative is likewise accompanied by changes: *ñ* throws off the *n*, and *in* becomes *ēn* or is changed into *o*. Thus *leo* is made from *leon* (*leon-is*), *carmen* from *carmin* (*carmin-is*), and *virgo* from *virgin* (*virgin-is*). Only when the genitive ends in *ēnis*, the nominative retains *ēn*, as in *liēn-is*, *liēn*. 2) The particular termination which the nominative receives in other cases is *ē* for neuters, as *mar-ia*, *mar-e*, and *s* or *x* which arises out of *s*, for masculines and feminines.

This *s* is sometimes added to the final consonant of the crude form without any change, as in *urb-is*, *urb-s*; *duc-is*, *dux* (*ducs*); *leg-is*, *lex* (*legs*); when the crude form ends in *d* or *t*, these consonants are dropped before the *s*; e. g. *frond-is*, *frons*; *mont-is*, *mons*; *aetāt-is*, *aetās*; *seget-is*, *segetēs*; in addition to this the vowel *i* also is sometimes changed into *ē*, as in *milit-is*, *mīlē*s; *iudic-is*, *iudex*. In all these cases where the nominative is formed by the addition of an *s* to the final consonant of the crude form, the nominative has one syllable less than the genitive, or in other words, the *s* assumes an *ē* or *i* before it, and then the nominative has the same number of syllables as the genitive, or in case the nominative assumes *i*, both cases are quite the same; e. g. *nub-es*, *civ-is*, *pan-is*.

These are the most essential points in the formation of the nominative in the third declension.

We shall take the nominative, as is the usual practice, as the case given, and shall point out in what way the genitive is formed from it.

[§ 56.] 1. The nouns in *a*, which are neuters of Greek origin, make their genitive in *ātis*, as *poëma*, *poëmātis*.

2. Those in *e* change *e* into *is*, as *mare*, *maris*.

3. The nouns in *i* and *y* are Greek neuters. Some of them are indeclinable, as *gummi*, and others have the regular genitive in *is*, as *sināpi*, *sināpis*; *misy*, *misyis* and *misyis* or *misyos*. The compounds of *meli* (honey) alone make their genitive according to the Greek in *ītis*, as *melomēli*, *melomēlītis*; *oxymēli*, *oxymēlītis*.

4. Those in *o* (common) add *nis* to form the genitive, sometimes only lengthening the *o*, and sometimes changing it into *ī*. Of the former kind (genit. *ōnis*) are *carbo*, *latro*, *leo*, *ligo*, *pavo*, *praedo*, *sermo*; and all those ending in *io*, as *actio*, *dictio*, *pugio*. Of the latter kind (genit. *īnis*) are all abstract nouns in *do*, as *consuetudo*, *īnis*; most nouns in *go*, as *imago*, *virgo*, *origo*; and a few others, as *cardo*, *hirundo*, *turbo*, *homo*, *nemo*. *Caro* has *carnis*. The names of nations in *o* have this vowel mostly short, as *Macedōnes*, *Senōnes*, *Saxōnes*; it is long in *Lacōnes* and a few others.

5. The only nouns ending in *c* are *alec*, gen. *alēcis*; and *lac*, gen. *lactis*.

6. Nouns ending in *l* form the genitive by merely adding *is*, such as *sol*, *sal*, *consul*, *pugil*, *animal*. *Mel* has *mellis*, and plur. *mella*; *fel* has *fellis*, but has no plural.

7. Those in *ēn* (which are all neuters, with the exception of *pecten*, a comb,) make *īnis*, as *carmen*, *flumen*, *lumen*, *nomen*. Those in *ēn* retain the long *e* and have *ēnis*; but there are only two genuine Latin words of this kind, *rēn* and *liēn*; for *lichen*, *splen*, and *attagen* are of Greek origin.

Greek words in *ān*, *ēn*, *in*, *ŷn*, and *ōn* follow the Greek rules in regard to the length or shortness of the vowel and also in regard to the insertion of a *t*: *Cimon*, *Cimōnis*; *Xenophon*, *Xenophontis*. It is, however, to be observed that most Greek words in *ov*, *ovoc* have in Latin the nominative *o*; e. g. *Laco*, *Plato*, *Zeno*. The name *Apollo* is completely Latinized, and makes the genitive *Apollīnis*.

[§ 57.] 8. Those ending in *r* must be distinguished according to the vowel which precedes it: they may end in *ar*, *er*, *yr*, *or*, or *ur*.

a) Those in *ar* have sometimes *āris*, as in *calcar*, *pulvinar*, *torcular*; and sometimes *āris*, as *jubar*, *nectar*, *lār* (plur. *lāres*), *pār* and its compounds (e. g. *impar*, *impāris*), and the proper names *Caesar*, *Hamilcar*. But *far* makes *farris*, and *hepar*, *hepātis*.

b) Latin words in *ēr* sometimes make *ēris*, as *mulier*, *mulieris*, *carcer*, *vomer*; and sometimes they drop the short *e*, as, for instance, all those ending in *ter* (e. g. *venter*, *uter*, *pater*), with the exception of *later*, and the words *imber*, *September*, *October*, *November*, *December*. *Iter* makes its genit. (from a different nominat.) *itinēris*. *Juppiter* (*Jōvi* 'pater') makes the genitive *Jōvis*. Greek words in *er* follow the rules of the Greek language, whence we say *cratēr*, *ēris*; *aēr*, *aēris*. *Vēr* (the spring), gen. *vēris*, originally belonged to the same class.

c) Nouns ending in *yr* are Greek, and follow the rules of the Greek grammar: *martȳr*, *martȳris*.

d) Those in *or* have *ōris*, as *amor*, *error*, *soror*, *uxor*; but *arbor*, the three neuters *ador*, *aequor*, *marmor*, and the adjective *memor*, have *ōris*. *Cor* has *cordis*, and so also in the compound adjectives *concoris*, *discoris*, *misericoris*. Greek proper names, such as *Hector*, *Nestor*, and others, have *ōris*, as in Greek.

e) Those in *ur* have *ūris*, e. g. *fulgur*, *murmur*, *sulphur*, *vultur*, and the adj. *cicur*. *Fūr* (a thief) alone has *fūris*; and the four neuters, *ebur*, *femur*, *jecur*, and *robur* have *ōris*, as *ebōris*, *robōris*. *Jecur* has, besides *jecoris*, also the forms *jecinōris*, *jocinoris*, and *jocineris*.

[§ 58.] 9. Nouns ending in *s* are very numerous; they may terminate in *as*, *es*, *is*, *os*, *us*, *aus*, or in *s* with a consonant preceding it.

a) Those in *as* form their genitive in *ātis*, as *aetas*, *aetātis*. *Anas* alone has *anātis*; *mas* has *māris*; *vas* (a surety),

vādis; *vās* (a vessel), *vāsis*, and *as*, *assis*. The Greek words vary according to their gender; the masculines make *antis*, the feminines *adis*, and the neuters *ātis*.

b) Those ending in *es* must be divided into two classes. Those belonging to the first increase in the genitive, the letters *d* or *t*, which were dropped in the nominative, being restored to their place, and their genit. termination is either *itis*, *ētis*, *ētis*, or *idis*, *ēdis*, *ēdis*.

The genitive in *itis* occurs in most of them, as in *antistes*, *comes*, *eques*, *hospes*, *miles*, *pedes*, *satelles*, *caespes*, *fomes*, *gurgēs*, *limes*, *merges*, *palmes*, *stipes*, and *trames*, together with the adjectives *ales*, *cocles*, *dives*, *sospes*, and *superstes*.

The following make their genitive in *ētis*: *abies*, *aries*, *paries*, *interpres*, *seges*, *teges*, and the adjectives *hebes*, *indiges*, *praepes*, and *teres*.

The genit. in *ētis* occurs in the Greek words *lebes*, *tapes*, *Magnes*; in the words *quies*, *inquies*, *requies*, and the adjective *locuples*.

Those which make *idis* are *obses*, *praeses*, and the adjective *deses* and *reses*.

The genitive in *ēdis* occurs in *pēs*, *pēdis*, and its compounds, e. g. the plural *compēdes*. *Heres* and *merces*, lastly, make their genitive in *ēdis*.

The following words must be remembered separately: *bes*, *bessis*; *Ceres*, *Cerēris*; *pubes*, and *impubes*, *puberis* and *im-puberis*.

The second class of words in *es* change the *es* of the nominative into *is*, without increase, such as *caedes*, *clades*, *fames*, *nubes*, *rupes*; it must also be observed, that several words belonging to this class vary in the termination of the nominative between *ēs* and *is*, so that along with *feles*, *vulpes*, *vehes*, *aedes*, we also have *vulpis*, *vehis*, *aedis*.

c) Most words in *is* form their genitive in *is*, without any increase, as *avis*, *civis*, *panis*, *piscis*, and a great many others, together with the adjectives in *is*, neut. *e*. Others increase by one syllable, and make their genitive in *idis*, *itis* or *ēris*: *idis* occurs in *cassis*, *cuspis*, *lapis*, and in the Greek words *aegis* and *pyramis*: *itis* occurs only in *lis*, *Quiris*, and *Samnis*, plur. *Quirites*, *Samnites*; and *ēris* only in *cinis*, *cucumis*, and *pulvis*, gen. *pulvēris*, *cucumēris*, and *cinēris*. *Glis* has *gliris*; and *sanguis* has *sanguinis* (but the compound *exsanguis* remains in the genit. *exsanguis*); *semis*, being a compound of *as*, makes *semissis*.

Greek words which have the genit. in *ως* or *εως* form their genit. in Latin in *is*, without increase; but if their genit. is *ιδος*, they increase in Latin and have *idis*. (See § 62.)

[§ 53.] *d*) Nouns in *os* sometimes have *ōtis*, as *cos*, *dos*, *nepos*, *sacerdos*, and sometimes *ōris*, like *ōs* (the mouth), *flos*, *glos*, *mos*, *ros*, and in like manner *honōs*, and *lepōs*, the more common forms for *honōr* and *lepōr*. *Custos* makes *custōdis*; *ōs* (bone), *ossis*; *bos*, *bovis*. The adjectives *compōs* and *impōs* have *pōtis*.

e) Of the words in *us*, the feminines in *ūs* make their genitive in *ūtis*, as *virtus*, *virtūtis*; or *ūdis*, as the three words *incus*, *palus*, and *subscus*. *Tellus* alone has *tellūris*, and *Venus*, *Venēris*. The neuters in *ūs* have sometimes *ēris*, viz. *foedus*, *funus*, *genus*, *latus*, *munus*, *olus*, *onus*, *opus*, *pondus*, *scelus*, *sidus*, *ulcus*, *vulnus*; and sometimes *ōris*, as *corpus*, *decus*, *dedecus*, *facinus*, *fenus*, *frigus*, *litus*, *nemus*, *pectus*, *pecus* (which in another sense has *pecūdis*), *pignus*, *stercus*, *tempus*, and the common noun *lepus*, *lepōris*, a hare. All monosyllables which have a long *u*, form their genitive in *ūris*, as *crus*, *jus*, *pus*, *rus*, *tus*, and *mus*. *Grus* and *sus* have *gruis*, *suis*; the adjective *vetus* has *veteris*, and *intercus*, *intercūtis*.

f) Greek words in *ys* make the genitive *yis*, contracted *ȳs*, or altogether in the Greek form *yos*. Some few, as *chlamys*, have *ȳdis*.

g) The only nouns ending in *aes* are *aes*, *aeris*, and *praes*, *praedis*.

h) There are only two words in *aus*, viz. *laus* and *fraus*, of which the genitives are *laudis*, *fraudis*.

i) Among the nouns ending in *s* preceded by a consonant, those in *ls* (except *puls*), *ns* (consequently all participles in *ns*), and *rs* change the *s* into *tis*, e. g. *fons*, *mons*, *pons*, *ars*, *pars*, *Mars*—*fontis*, *partis*, &c. There are only a few, such as *frons* (a branch), *glans*, *juglans*, and some others, which make *dis*—*frondis*; but *frons* (the forehead) makes *frontis*. The other words in *s* with a consonant before it, that is, those in *bs*, *ps*, and *ms*, form their genitive in *bis*, *pis*, *mis*, e. g. *urbs*, *urbis*; *plebs*, *plebis*; *stirps*, *stirpis*; *hiems*, *hiēmis*, which is the only word of this termination. *Caelebs* has *caelībis*; the compounds of *capiō* ending in *ceps* have *īpis*, as *princeps*, *particeps*—*principis*, *participis*. The compounds

of *caput*, which likewise end in *ceps*, such as *anceps*, make their genitive in *cipitis*, like *cāput*, *capitis*.

10. The termination *t* occurs only in *caput* and its compounds, gen. *capitis*.

[§ 60.] 11. The genitive of words in *x* varies between *cis* and *gis*, according as the *x* has arisen from *cs* or *gs*, which may be ascertained by the root of the word. The former is more common, and thus the following monosyllables with a consonant before the *x* make their genit. in *cis*: *arx*, *calx*, *falx*, *lanx*, *merx*; *gis* occurs only in the Greek words *phalanx*, *sphinx*, and *syrinx*.

But when the *x* is preceded by a vowel, it must be ascertained whether this vowel remains unchanged, and whether it is long or short. The Latin words in *ax* have *ācis*, as *pax*, *fornax*, and the adjectives, e. g. *audax*, *efficax*. *Fax* alone has a short *a*, *fācis*. Greek words too have mostly *ācis*, as *thorax*, *Ajax*, and only a few have *ācis*, as *corax*, *climax*, while the names of men in *nax* have *nactis*, such as *Astyanax*, *Demonax*. Words in *ex* generally make their genitive in *icis*, as *judex*, *artifex*, *supplex*: but *ēgis* occurs in *rex* and *lex*, and *ēgis* in *aquilex*, *grex*; *ēcis* in *nex*, *foenisex*, and in *prēcis* (from *prex* which is not used); *ēcis* in *vervex*, *Myrmex*. *Remex* has *remīgis*; *senex*, *senis*; and *supellex*, *supellectilis*. The words in *ix* sometimes make their genitive in *icis* and sometimes in *icis*. Of the former kind are *cervix*, *cicatrix*, *cornix*, *coturnix*, *lodix*, *perdix*, *phoenix*, *radix*, *vibix*, and all the words in *trix* denoting women, such as *nutrix*, *victrix*, and the adjectives *felix*, and *pernix*, and probably also *appendix*; *icis* occurs in *calix*, *choenix*, *coxendix*, *filix*, *fornix*, *fulix*, *hystrix*, *larix*, *natrix*, *pix*, *salix*, *varix*, and *Cilix*. *Nix* has *nīvis*, and *strix*, *strīgis*. The words ending in *ox* have *ōcis*, e. g. *vox*, *vōcis*; *ferox*, *ferōcis*; but two words have *ōcis*, viz. *Cappadox* and the adjective *praecox*. *Nox* has *noctis*; *Allobrox*, *Allobrōgis*. The following words in *ux* form the genitive in *ūcis*: *crux*, *dux*, *nux*, and the adjective *trux*; the *u* is long only in two words, viz. *lux* and *Pollux*, genit. *lūcis*, *Pollūcis*. *Conjux* (or *conjunx*) has *conjūgis*, and *frux* (which, however, does not occur), *frūgis*. There is only one word ending in *aex*, viz. *faex*, gen. *faecis*, and in *aux* only *fauz*, gen. *faucis*. The words in *yx* are Greek, and vary very much in the formation of their genitive: it may be *ycis* (*Eryx*), *ycis* (*bombyx*), *ygis* (*Japyx*, *Phryx*, *Styx*), *ygis* (*coecyx*), and *ychis* (*onyx*).

CHAP. XV.

THE REMAINING CASES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

[§ 61.] ALL the remaining cases follow the genitive in regard to the above mentioned changes. It should be remarked that any other of the oblique cases might have been chosen, instead of the genitive, for the purpose of showing the changes in which all participate; but we have followed the common practice. The following is a tabular view of the terminations.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. —	Nom. <i>ēs</i> , neut. <i>ă</i> (some <i>ia</i>).
Gen. <i>īs</i>	Gen. <i>um</i> (some <i>ium</i>).
Dat. <i>ī</i>	Dat. <i>ibus</i> .
Acc. <i>em</i> (neut. like nom.).	Acc. like nom.
Voc. like nom.	Voc. like nom.
Abl. <i>ē</i> (some <i>ī</i>).	Abl. <i>ibus</i> .

We subjoin some examples of the complete declension, in which it will be seen how the nominative either remains unchanged before the terminations, or undergoes a modification. Many more examples may be taken from the preceding Chapter.

SINGULAR.

Nom. <i>agger</i> , the mound.	Nom. <i>pater</i> , the father.
Gen. <i>agger-is</i> , of the mound.	Gen. <i>patr-is</i> , of the father.
Dat. <i>agger-i</i> , to the mound.	Dat. <i>patr-i</i> , to the father.
Acc. <i>agger-em</i> , the mound.	Acc. <i>patr-em</i> , the father.
Voc. <i>agger</i> , O mound!	Voc. <i>pater</i> , O father!
Abl. <i>agger-e</i> , from the mound.	Abl. <i>patr-e</i> , from the father.

PLURAL.

Nom. <i>agger-es</i> , the mounds.	Nom. <i>patr-es</i> , the fathers.
Gen. <i>agger-um</i> , of the mounds.	Gen. <i>patr-um</i> , of the fathers.
Dat. <i>agger-ibus</i> , to the mounds.	Dat. <i>patr-ibus</i> , to the fathers.
Acc. <i>agger-es</i> , the mounds.	Acc. <i>patr-es</i> , the fathers.
Voc. <i>agger-es</i> , O mounds!	Voc. <i>patr-es</i> , O fathers!
A. <i>agger-ibus</i> , from the mounds.	A. <i>patr-ibus</i> , from the fathers.

SINGULAR.

Nom. *leo*, the lion.
 Gen. *leon-is*.
 Dat. *leon-i*.
 Acc. *leon-em*.
 Voc. *leo*.
 Abl. *leon-e*.

Nom. *homo*, the man.
 Gen. *homin-is*.
 Dat. *homin-i*.
 Acc. *homin-em*.
 Voc. *homo*.
 Abl. *homin-e*.

PLURAL.

Nom. *leon-es*, the lions.
 Gen. *leon-um*.
 Dat. *leon-ibus*.
 Acc. *leon-es*.
 Voc. *leon-es*.
 Abl. *leon-ibus*.

Nom. *homin-es*, the men.
 Gen. *homin-um*.
 Dat. *homin-ibus*.
 Acc. *homin-es*.
 Voc. *homin-es*.
 Abl. *homin-ibus*.

SINGULAR.

Nom. *miles*, the soldier.
 Gen. *milit-is*.
 Dat. *milit-i*.
 Acc. *milit-em*.
 Voc. *miles*.
 Abl. *milit-e*.

Nom. *flos*, the flower.
 Gen. *flor-is*.
 Dat. *flor-i*.
 Acc. *flor-em*.
 Voc. *flos*.
 Abl. *flor-e*.

PLURAL.

Nom. *milit-es*, the soldiers.
 Gen. *milit-um*.
 Dat. *milit-ibus*.
 Acc. *milit-es*.
 Voc. *milit-es*.
 Abl. *milit-ibus*.

Nom. *flor-es*, the flowers.
 Gen. *flor-um*.
 Dat. *flor-ibus*.
 Acc. *flor-es*.
 Voc. *flor-es*.
 Abl. *flor-ibus*.

SINGULAR.

Nom. *lex*, the law.
 Gen. *leg-is*.
 Dat. *leg-i*.
 Acc. *leg-em*.
 Voc. *lex*.
 Abl. *leg-e*.

Nom. *dux*, the commander.
 Gen. *duc-is*.
 Dat. *duc-i*.
 Acc. *duc-em*.
 Voc. *dux*.
 Abl. *duc-e*.

PLURAL.

Nom. <i>leg-es</i> , the laws.	Nom. <i>duc-es</i> , the commanders.
Gen. <i>leg-um</i> .	Gen. <i>duc-um</i> .
Dat. <i>leg-ibus</i> .	Dat. <i>duc-ibus</i> .
Acc. <i>leg-es</i> .	Acc. <i>duc-es</i> .
Voc. <i>leg-es</i> .	Voc. <i>duc-es</i> .
Abl. <i>leg-ibus</i> .	Abl. <i>duc-ibus</i> .

NEUTERS.

SINGULAR.

Nom. <i>fulgur</i> , lightning.	Nom. <i>opus</i> , the work.
Gen. <i>fulgur-is</i> .	Gen. <i>oper-is</i> .
Dat. <i>fulgur-i</i> .	Dat. <i>oper-i</i> .
Acc. <i>fulgur</i> .	Acc. <i>opus</i> .
Voc. <i>fulgur</i> .	Voc. <i>opus</i> .
Abl. <i>fulgur-e</i> .	Abl. <i>oper-e</i> .

PLURAL.

Nom. <i>fulgur-a</i> , lightnings.	Nom. <i>oper-a</i> , the works.
Gen. <i>fulgur-um</i> .	Gen. <i>oper-um</i> .
Dat. <i>fulgur-ibus</i> .	Dat. <i>oper-ibus</i> .
Acc. <i>fulgur-a</i> .	Acc. <i>oper-a</i> .
Voc. <i>fulgur-a</i> .	Voc. <i>oper-a</i> .
Abl. <i>fulgur-ibus</i> .	Abl. <i>oper-ibus</i> .

Remarks on the separate Cases.

1. The genitive of some Greek proper names in *es* is *i* instead of *is*; e. g. *Themistocles Neocli filius*, instead of *Neoclis*.

[§ 62.] 2. Many words in *is* make the accusative singular *im* instead of *em*, viz. —

a) All Greek nouns which form the accusative in that language in *ι*: *basim*, *poësim*, *paraphrasim*, *Charybdim*, *Neopolim*, *Persepolim*, *Tanaim*; those which have in Greek both terminations *ι* and *ιδα* (i. e. the barytons in *ις*, gen. *ιδος*) prefer in Latin the accusative in *im*, e. g. *Memphim*, *Osirim*, *Phalarim*, *Serapim*, *Zeuxim*. But those which in Greek end in *ις*, gen. *ιδος* (oxytona), have in Greek only *ιδα*, and in Latin only *idem*: e. g. *aegis*, *pyramis*, *tyrannis*, *Aeneis*.

b) Many proper names (not Greek) of rivers and towns in *is* which do not increase in the genitive, make, according to the analogy of the Greek, the accusative in *im* instead of *em*, e. g. *Albim*, *Athesim*, *Baetim*, *Tiberim*, *Bilbilim*, *Hispalim*.

c) The following Latin common nouns: *amussis*, *ravis*, *sitis*, *tussis*, and *vis*. In the following the termination *em* is less common than *im*: *febris*, *pelvis*, *puppis*, *restis*, *turris*, and especially *securis*.

[§ 63.] 3. The ablative singular terminates in *i* instead of *e*:

a) In all words which form their accusative in *im* instead of *em*, with the exception of those Greek words which make the genitive in *idis*. Thus we have *poësi*, *Neapoli*, *Tiberi*, and among Latin common nouns not only *ravi*, *tussi*, and *vi*, but *febri*, *pelvi*, *puppi*, *turri*, and *securi*. But *restim* has more commonly *reste*, and *navem* on the contrary more usually *navi* than *nave*. *Clave* and *clavi*, and *semente* and *sementi*, are equally in use.

b) In neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*, e. g. *mari*, *vectigāli*, *calcāri*, &c; but *far*, *farris*, and *baccar*, *jubar*, *hepar*, *nectar*, and *sal*, which have a short *a* in the genitive, form the ablative in *e*. Names of towns in *e* always make their ablative in *e*, as *Praeneste*.

c) In adjectives and names of months ending in *is* and *er*; hence *facili*, *celebri*, *celeri*, *Aprili*, *Septembri*, and generally also in those substantives in *is* which are properly adjectives, e. g. *aequalis*, *affinis*, *annalis*, *bipennis*, *canalis*, *familiaris*, *gentilis*, *popularis*, *sodalis*, *vocalis*, *triremis*, and *quadriremis*. But *juvenis* always makes *juvene*, and *aedilis* commonly *aedile*.

[§ 64.] 4. The ablative singular in *i* or *e* indiscriminately occurs, generally speaking, in adjectives of one termination and in comparatives, as *prudens* *prudente*, and *prudenti*; *elegans*, *elegante* and *eleganti*; *vetus*, *vetere* and *veteri*; *locuples*, *locuplete* and *locupleti*; *dives*, *divite* and *diviti*; *felix*, *felice* and *felici*; *major*, *maiore* and *majori*. But *i* is preferable in adjectives of one termination, and *e* in comparatives.

Note. It should however be observed that the majority of adjectives in *es*, viz. *hospes*, *sospes*, *deses*, *pubes*, *impubes*, and *superstes*, *pauper*, *senex*, and *princeps*, form the ablative exclusively in *e*. It must further be observed, that the words in *ans* and *ens*, when used substantively, as *infans*, *sapiens*,

and when they are real participles, always have *e*. Hence we regularly find it in the ablative absolute, e. g. *Tarquinio regnante*.

[§ 65] 5. The nominative, accusative, and vocative plural of neuters end in *a*; but neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*, which also form the ablative singular in *i*, and all participles and adjectives which make the ablative singular either in *i* alone, or vary between *e* and *i*, have *ia* instead of *a*, except the adjective *vetus* and all comparatives; e. g. *maria*, *vectigalia*, *calcaria*, *paria*, *facilia*, *sapientia*, *ingentia*, *victricia*; *amantia*, *sedentia*, *audientia*; but *majora*, *doctiora*, &c.

Note. *Sal* has no neuter plural, but only *sales* with masculine gender. All adjectives of one termination, make the plural in *ia*, for of those which form the ablative singular in *e* exclusively, the neuter does not occur. Thus there remains only *vetus*, *vetera*, although the ablative sing. is *vetere* or *veteri*. *Complures* (*several* or *some*) makes both *compluria* and *complura*.

[§ 66.] 6. The following words make their genitive plural in *ium* instead of *um*:

a) All neuters which have *ia* in the nominative plural, that is, those in *e*, *al*, and *ar*, and all participles and adjectives which follow the third declension. Comparatives therefore (with the exception of *plurium* and *complurium*) and those adjectives which have only *e* in the ablative singular, retain the termination *um* in the genit. plur., as *pauperum*, *superstitum*. To these we must add the adjectives *caelebs*, *celer*, *cicur*, *compos*, *impos*, *dives*, *memor*, *immemor*, *supplex*, *uber*, *vetus*, and *vigil*; all compounds of *facio* and *cipio*, and of such substantives as make the genitive plur. in *um*, e. g. *degenerum*, *bicorporum*, *inöpum*, *quadrupedum*, *tricipitum*, *versicolörum*.

b) Words in *es* and *is*, which do not increase in the genitive singular (e. g. *nubes*, *nubium*; *civis*, *civium*; but *militum* and *lapidum* from *miles* and *lapis*, gen. *militis*, *lapidis*); the following words in *er*: *imber*, *linter*, *venter*, *uter*, and the word *caro*, *carnium*. *Vates*, *strues*, the plural *ambāges*, and generally also *sedes*, together with *apis*, *canis*, *juvenis*, and *volucris*, form exceptions, and make their genitive plur. in *um*. *Panis* is uncertain.

c) Many monosyllabic substantives, and without exception those ending in *s* and *x* preceded by a consonant, make *ium*, as *montium*, *dentium*, *arcium*, *mercium*, from *mons*, *dens*, *arx*, *merx*. *Lynx* however has *lyncum*; and *opes*, from *ops*, has *opum*. But the greater number of monosyllabic words

ending in *s* and *x* preceded by a vowel make their genitive plur. more frequently in *um* than in *ium*. The latter occurs only in *as*, *assium*; *glis*, *glirium*; *lis*, *litium*; *mas*, *marium*; *os*, *ossium*; *vis*, *virium*; and generally also in *fraus*, *fraudium*, and *mus*, *murium*. To these we must add *fauz*, *faucium*; *nix*, *nivium*; *strix*, *strigium*; and *nox*, *noctium*. *Fur* and *ren* have *furum*, *renum*; *lar* has more frequently *larum* than *larium*. Of *cor* we only find *cordium*.

d) Substantives of two or more syllables ending in *ns* and *rs* have *ium* and *um*, though the latter occurs more rarely; as in *cliens*, *cohors*, *Picens*, *Vejens*, *Camers*; and in like manner those which, like *adolescens*, *infans*, *parens*, *sapiens*, *serpens*, are properly participles, and admit *um* only because they are substantives (whence we frequently find *parentum* from *parentes*), commonly make their genitive in *ium*: *adolescentium*, *sapientium*, &c. The names of people in *as*, *ātis*, such as *Arpinas*, *Fidenas*, form their genitive almost exclusively in *ium*: *Arpinatium*, *Fidenatium*. *Penates* and *optimates*, which usually occur only in the plural, follow their analogy. Other substantives (common nouns, *appellativa*) in *as* generally have *um*: e. g. *aetatum*, *civitatum*; but *ium* also is correct, and *civitatum* in particular occurs frequently. *Quiris* and *Samnis*, contrary to the rule, generally make *Quiritium*, *Samnitium*.

[§ 67.] 7. Names of festivals in *alia* which are used only in the plural, as *Bacchanalia*, *Compitalia*, make their genitive plural in *ium* or *orum*, as *Bacchanalium* or *Bacchanaliorum*.

8. In the dative and ablative plural, the Greek words in *ma* prefer the termination *is* of the second declension to *ibus*; e. g. *poëmatīs*, *epigrammatīs*, for *poematibus* and *epigrammatibus*.

[§ 68.] 9. The accusative plural of words which make the genitive plur. in *ium* ended, in the best age of the Latin language, in *īs*, instead of *es*; hence we find *artis*, *civīs*, *omnis*, *tris*.

[§ 69.] 10. *Juppiter* (see § 12.) is declined as follows: genit. *Jovis*, dat. *Jovi*, accus. *Jovem*. voc. *Juppiter*, abl. *Jove*. In the plural *Joves* only is found.

Bos, *bōvis*, makes the nominat. and accus. plur. *boves*, gen. *boum*, dat. and ablat. *būbus*, and less frequently *bōbus*. *Sus* makes the dat. and ablat. plur. *subus*, which is a contraction of *suibus*.

APPENDIX.

We have, in the preceding chapter, arranged the deviations from the regular or ordinary declension, according to the order in which the cases follow one another in the paradigm: but for the purpose of assisting the learner, we shall here arrange the same observations according to the terminations of the nouns, viz. : —

a. *Substantives.*

1. The neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*, make the ablat. sing. in *i*, the nom. accus. and vocat. plur. in *ia*, and the genit. plur. in *ium*.

2. Substantives in *es* and *is*, which do not increase in the genit., as well as several ending in *er*, make the genit. plur. in *ium*.

3. Greek words in *is*, together with the names of rivers and towns of the same termination, though they may not be Greek, and a few Latin words in *is*, make the accus. sing. in *im*, the ablat. in *i*, and the genit. plur. (if they occur in the plural) in *ium*.

4. Monosyllabic words in *s* and *x*, preceded by a consonant, and several in which *s* or *x* is preceded by a vowel, form the genit. plur. in *ium*.

5. Polysyllabic words in *ns* and *rs* commonly make the genit. plur. in *ium*; the same is the case with the appellatives in *as*, though more rarely.

b. *Adjectives.*

1. Adjectives in *is*, *e*, and *er*, *is*, *e*, make the ablat. sing. in *i*, the neuter plur. in *ia*, and the genit. plur. in *ium*.

2. Adjectives of one termination make the ablat. sing. on the whole more commonly in *i* than in *e*, the neuter plural in *ia*, and the genit. plur. in *ium*. (Comparatives, however, make the ablat. sing. in *e*, the neuter plur. in *a*, and the genit. plur. in *um*.)

We subjoin a few of these nouns as models for the declension of the rest.

Neuters in e, al, and ar.

SINGULAR.

Nom. <i>mare</i> , the sea.	Nom. <i>animal</i> , the animal.
Gen. <i>mar-is</i> .	Gen. <i>animal-is</i> .
Dat. <i>mar-i</i> .	Dat. <i>animal-i</i> .
Acc. <i>mare</i> .	Acc. <i>animal</i> .
Voc. <i>mare</i> .	Voc. <i>animal</i> .
Abl. <i>mar-i</i> .	Abl. <i>animal-i</i> .

PLURAL.

Nom. <i>mar-ia</i> , the seas.	Nom. <i>animal-ia</i> , the animals.
Gen. <i>mar-ium</i> .	Gen. <i>animal-ium</i> .
Dat. <i>mar-ibus</i> .	Dat. <i>animal-ibus</i> .
Acc. & Voc. <i>mar-ia</i> .	Acc. & Voc. <i>animal-ia</i> .
Abl. <i>mar-ibus</i> .	Abl. <i>animal-ibus</i> .

Nouns in es, is, and er.

SINGULAR.

Nom. & Voc. <i>nubes</i> , a cloud.	N. & V. <i>imber</i> , a shower of rain.
Gen. <i>nub-is</i> .	Gen. <i>imbr-is</i> .
Dat. <i>nub-i</i> .	Dat. <i>imbr-i</i> .
Acc. <i>nub-em</i> .	Acc. <i>imbr-em</i> .
Abl. <i>nub-e</i> .	Abl. <i>imbr-e</i> .

PLURAL.

Nom. & Voc. <i>nub-es</i> , clouds.	N. & V. <i>imbr-es</i> , showers of rain.
Gen. <i>nub-ium</i> .	Gen. <i>imbr-ium</i> .
Dat. <i>nub-ibus</i> .	Dat. <i>imbr-ibus</i> .
Acc. <i>nub-es</i> .	Acc. <i>imbr-es</i> .
Abl. <i>nub-ibus</i> .	Abl. <i>imbr-ibus</i> .

SINGULAR.

Nom. & Voc. <i>civis</i> , citizen.	Nom. & Voc. <i>secūris</i> , axe.
Gen. <i>civ-is</i> .	Gen. <i>secur-is</i> .
Dat. <i>civ-i</i> .	Dat. <i>secur-i</i> .
Acc. <i>civ-em</i> .	Acc. <i>secur-im</i> .
Abl. <i>civ-e</i> .	Abl. <i>secur-i</i> .

PLURAL.

Nom. & Voc. <i>civ-es</i> , citizens.	Nom. & Voc. <i>secur-es</i> , axes.
Gen. <i>civ-ium</i> .	Gen. <i>secur-ium</i> .
Dat. <i>civ-ibus</i> .	Dat. <i>secur-ibus</i> .
Acc. <i>civ-es</i> .	Acc. <i>secur-es</i> .
Abl. <i>civ-ibus</i> .	Abl. <i>secur-ibus</i> .

Nouns in s and x, with a Consonant preceding.

SINGULAR.

Nom. & Voc. <i>ars</i> , art.	N. & V. <i>sapiens</i> , a wise man.
Gen. <i>art-is</i> .	Gen. <i>sapient-is</i> .
Dat. <i>art-i</i> .	Dat. <i>sapient-i</i> .
Acc. <i>art-em</i> .	Acc. <i>sapient-em</i> .
Abl. <i>art-e</i> .	Abl. <i>sapient-e</i> .

PLURAL.

Nom. & Voc. <i>art-es</i> , arts.	N. & V. <i>sapient-es</i> , wise men.
Gen. <i>art-ium</i> .	Gen. <i>sapient-ium</i> .
Dat. <i>art-ibus</i> .	Dat. <i>sapient-ibus</i> .
Acc. <i>art-es</i> .	Acc. <i>sapient-es</i> .
Abl. <i>art-ibus</i> .	Abl. <i>sapient-ibus</i> .

CHAP. XVI.

GREEK WORDS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

[§ 70.] A GREAT number of Greek words; especially proper names, belong to the third declension; as their genitive terminates in *os* (*ews*, *ous*), they follow the third declension in their own language also. Among the terminations of the nominative mentioned above, some belong exclusively to Greek words, viz. *ma*, *i*, *y*, *ān*, *in*, *ōn*, *yn*, *ēr*, *yr*, *ys*, *eus*, *yx*, *inz*, *ynx*, and the plurals in *e*; but there are also Greek words with other terminations, most of which, however, are quite treated as Latin words, and the Greek forms are used by Latin writers, especially the poets, only in some cases.

1. In the genitive singular, the poets frequently use the Greek termination *ōs* instead of the Latin *is*, e. g. *Panos*, *Tethyos*.

The feminines in *o*, however, as *echo*, *Calypso*, *Dido*, *Sappho*, have usually the Greek genitive in *ūs*, as *echus*, *Didus*, *Sapphus*, the Latin

termination *onis* being less common. Their dative, accusative, and ablative end in *o*, and the Latin terminations *oni*, *onem*, *one*, are but rarely used.

[§ 71.] 2. The Greek accusative of the third declension in *a* is very often used by the Latin poets instead of *em*; e. g. *hebdomada* from *hebdomas*, *Pana*, *aethera*, *Lacedaemona*, *Babylona*.

[§ 72.] 3. The vocative singular in most Greek words ending in *s* is formed by rejecting that consonant both in Greek and Latin; e. g. *Daphni*, *Phylli*, *Thai*, *Tiphy*, *Orpheu*, *Perseu*. Nouns in *as*, *antis*, make their vocative in Greek *āv* and *ā*, but the latter only is used in Latin; e. g. *Atla*, *Calcha*.

[§ 73.] 4. In the genitive plural only a few words retain the Greek termination *ōn* (*ων*), but on the whole only in titles of books; e. g. *metamorphoseōn*, *epigrammatōn*.

[§ 74.] 5. The Greek accusative plural in *ās* often occurs in proper names; e. g. *Cyclopas*, *Macedonas*.

CHAP. XVII.

GENDER OF WORDS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION. — MASCULINES.

[§ 75.] MASCULINE are those which end in *o*, *or*, *os*, and *er*, and those in *es* which increase in the genitive, especially those in *es*, *itis*, e. g. *sermo*, *error*, *sudor*, *flos*, *mos*, *venter*, *stipes*.

Exceptions in *o*. Words ending in *do*, *go* and *io* are feminine, e. g. *consuetudo*, *grando*, *legio*, *contio*, *natio*, &c., also *caro*. The following, however, are masculine: in *do*, the words *cardo* and *ordo*, together with *udo* and *cudo* or *cudon*; in *go*: *ligo*, *margo*, and *harpago*; and all words in *io*, which are not abstract nouns, but common names of things, such as *pugio* (a dagger), *scipio* (a staff), *septentrio* (north pole), *titio* (a fire-brand); several names of animals, as *curculio*, *papilio*, *scorpio*, *stellio*, *vespertilio*, and a few others of rare occurrence; and lastly, *unio*, in the sense of a particular pearl (*margarita*).

[§ 76.] *Exceptions* in *or*. The following words in *or*, *ōris*, are neuter: *ador*, *aequor*, *marmor*, and *cor*, *cordis*. *Arbor* is feminine according to the general rule.

Exceptions in os. *Cos, dos*, and the Greek *eōs* are feminine; *ōs, ossis*, and *ōs, oris*, are neuter.

Exceptions in er. A great many words in *er* are neuter, viz. *cadaver, iter, spinther, tūber* (a hump), *uber, ver*, and *verber* (rarely used in the singular), and all the names of plants in *er*: *cicer, laser, papaver, piper, siler, siser, suber*, and *zingiber*. *Tūber* (a kind of peach tree) is feminine; but when it denotes the fruit, it is masculine.

Exceptions in es increasing in the genitive. The following are feminine: *merges, ūtis; seges* and *teges, ētis; merces, ēdis; quies, ētis*, with its compounds *inquies* and *requies*. *Compes*, which, however, does not occur in the nominative sing., but only in the plural *compēdes*, is feminine. *Aes, aeris*, is neuter; *ales* and *quadrupes* are properly adjectives, but as substantives they are mostly used as feminines.

CHAP. XVIII.

GENDER OF WORDS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION. — FEMININES.

[§ 77.] FEMININE are those which end in *as, is, ys, aus*, and *x*, those in *es*, which do not increase in the genitive, and those in *s* preceded by a consonant, e. g. *aetas, navis, chlamys, laus* and *fraus, pax, radix, arx, nubes, pars, mors, hiems*.

Exceptions in as. The following are masculine: — *as*, gen. *assis*, and its compounds, though they have different terminations, as *quadrans*, a fourth of an *as*; *bes*, two-thirds of an *as*; and the Greek words which make their genitive in *antis*, as *adamas, elephas*, and the names of mountains: *Acragas, Atlas, Mimas*. *Mas, māris*, and *vas, vādīs*, are, of course, masculine. The following are neuters: *vas, vasis*, and *fus* and *nefas*, which, however, occur only in the nom. and accus.

Exceptions in is. The following are masculine: — 1) Those in *is*, gen. *ēris*, as *cinis, cucumis, pulvis*, and *vomis* (commonly *vomer*); 2) The following which increase in the genitive: *glis, lapis, pollis*, and *sanguis*; 3) The following

which do not increase: *amnis*, *axis*, *callis*, *canalis*, *cassis* (used especially in the plural *casses*, a hunter's net, and not to be confounded with *cassis*, *idis*, a helmet, which is feminine); *caulis* or *colis*, *collis*, *crinis*, *ensis*, *fascis* (generally in the plural *fascēs*), *finis*, *foliis*, *funis*, *fustis*, *ignis*, *mensis*, *orbis*, *panis*, *piscis*, *postis*, *scrobis*, *sentis*, *torquis*, *torris*, *unguis*, *vectis*, *vermis*.

As *mensis* is masculine, *Aprilis*, *Quintilis* (Julius), and *Sextilis* (Augustus), have the same gender. Some substantives in *is* are properly adjectives, and a substantive masculine being always understood, they are themselves used as masculines: e. g. *annalis*, commonly in the plural *annales* (*libri*), annals; *jugales* (*equi*), two horses yoked together; *molaris* (*lapis*), a millstone, or if *dens* is understood, a back-tooth or grinder; *natalis* (*dies*), birth-day; *pugillares* (*libelli*), a tablet for writing.

Note. All the masculines in *is*, whatever may be their genitive, are contained in the following hexameter lines:

Macula sunt panis, piscis, crinis, cinis, ignis,
Funis, *glis*, *vectis*, *foliis*, *fascis*, *lapis*, *amnis*,
 Sic *fustis*, *postis*, *scrobis*, *axis*, *vermis* et *unguis*,
 Et *penis*, *collis*, *callis*, sic *sanguis* et *ensis*,
Mugilis et *mensis*, *pollis*, cum *caule* *canalis*,
 Et *vomis*, *sentis*, *pulvis*, *finis*, *cucumisque*,
Anguis, item *torquis*, *torris*, cum *cassibus* *orbis*.

Exceptions in ys. All words of this termination are Greek. Names of rivers and mountains in *ys* are masculine, according to the general rule; e. g. *Halys*, *Othrys*.

[§ 78.] *Exceptions in x.* The following are masculine: 1) The Greek words in *ax*: as *cordax*, *thorax*. 2) The majority of those in *ex*, so that only *lex*, *nex*, *faex*, and *supellex*, are feminine. 3) Some in *ix*: viz. *calix*, *fornix*, *phoenix*, *sorix*; and generally also *varix*. 4) One word in *ux*: viz. *tradux*, properly an adjective, *palmes* being understood. 5) The following Greek words in *yx*: *calyx*, *coccyx*, *onyx*, *oryx* and *bombyx* (in the sense of silkworm; it is feminine when it signifies silk); and the names of mountains, such as *Eryx*. 6) The subdivisions of an *as* which end in *unx*: as *quincunx*, *septunx*, *deunx*.

Note. Many words in *ex* commonly enumerated in these lists are masculine from their signification, such as *rex*, *pontifex*, *carnifex*, *foenisex*, *verrex*. The other masculines in *ex* are: *apex*, *caudex*, *codex*, *cimex*,

cortex, culex, frutex, grex, irpex, latex, murex, obex, podex, pollex, pulex, pumex, ramex, silex, sorex, ulex, vertex or vortex.

Exceptions in *es*, gen. *is* without increase. The Greek word *acinaces* alone (ἀκινάκης, ου) is masculine. *Vepres*, which rarely occurs in the singular, and *palumbes*, though commonly masculines, are found also as feminines.

Exceptions in *s* preceded by a consonant. The following are masculine: *dens, fons, mons, and pons*, and commonly also *adeps*. Some words are properly adjectives, but are used as masculine substantives, because a substantive of that gender is understood: *confluens* or *confluentes* (*amnes*), *torens* (*amnis*), *oriens* and *occidens* (*sol*), *rudens* (*funis*), *bidens* and *tridens*; and several Greek words, such as *ellops, epops, merops, gryps, hydrops, chalybs*.

CHAP. XIX.

GENDER OF WORDS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.—NEUTERS.

[§ 79.] WORDS ending in *a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, us* are neuter: e. g. *poëma, mare, sināpi, misy, lac, animal, mel, carmen, flumen, caput* (the only word of this termination), *calcar, pulvinar, fulgur, facinus, opus, tempus*.

1. *Exceptions* in *l*. The following are masculine: *sol, sal, and mugil*. *Sal* in the singular is sometimes found as a neuter, but in the plural the ancients use only *sales*.

2. *Exceptions* in *n*. There are only three Latin words in *en* which are masculine, viz. *pectēn, pectīnis, rēn*, and *liēn* (or *liēnis*); the others in *ēn* are of Greek origin: e. g. *attagen, lichen* and *splen*. In *an, paeon*; in *on, agon, canon, gnomon, horizon*, and the names of mountains in *on*, as *Cithaeron, Helicon*. The following in *ōn* are feminine: *aëdon, icon, and sindon*; and many Greek names of towns.

3. *Exceptions* in *ar*. *Par* is common in the sense of "mate," but neuter in the sense of "a pair."

4. *Exceptions* in *ur*. *Astur, turtur, vultur, and furfur* are masculine, and *fur* on account of its meaning.

5. *Exceptions* in *us*. All words of two or more syllables

which retain the *u* in the genitive, that is, which end in *ūtis* or *ūdis*, are feminine: e. g. *juventus*, *salus*, *senectus*, *servitus*, *virtus*; *incus*, *palus*, and *subscus*; also *tellus*, *tellūris*, and *pecus*, *pecūdīs*, a sheep. The monosyllables, such as *tus*, *turis*; *jus*, *juris*, and those polysyllabic words which change their vowel (see § 59.), are neuter according to the general rule. Respecting the names of animals in *us*, see above, § 42. *Lepus* and *mus* are masculine; *grus* and *sus* are feminine, when the particular sex is not to be specified.

CHAP. XX.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

[§ 80.] THE fourth declension is only a particular species of the third, which has arisen from contraction and elision. The nominative of masculine and feminine words ends in *us*, and of neuters in *u*. The following is the form of their declension:—

SINGULAR.

Nom. <i>fruct-ūs</i> , fruit.	<i>corn-ū</i> , horn.
Gen. <i>fruct-ūs</i> .	<i>corn-ūs</i> .
Dat. <i>fruct-ūi</i> .	(<i>corn-ūi</i>) <i>corn-ū</i> .
Acc. <i>fruct-um</i> .	<i>corn-ū</i> .
Voc. <i>fruct-ūs</i> .	<i>corn-ū</i> .
Abl. <i>fruct-ū</i> .	<i>corn-ū</i> .

PLURAL.

Nom. <i>fruct-ūs</i> .	<i>corn-ūa</i> .
Gen. <i>fruct-ūum</i> .	<i>corn-ūum</i> .
Dat. <i>fruct-ibus</i> .	<i>corn-ibus</i> .
Acc. <i>fruct-ūs</i> .	<i>corn-ūa</i> .
Voc. <i>fruct-ūs</i> .	<i>corn-ūa</i> .
Abl. <i>fruct-ibus</i> .	<i>corn-ibus</i> .

The following words may be used as exercises: *actus*, *coetus*, *cursus*, *gradus*, *lusus*, *magistratus*, *motus*, *sensus*, *sumptus*, *vultus*: the only neuters are *genu*, *gelu*, *veru*, *pecu* (the same as *pecus*, *ōris*). *Tonitrus* and *tonitruum*, plur. *tonitrua*, are more commonly used than *tonitru*.

[§ 82.] *Note.* Some words make the dative and ablative plural in *ibus* instead of *ibus*. They are contained in the following two hexameters :—

*Arcus, acus, portus, quercus, ficus, lacus, artus,
Et tribus et partus, specus, adde veruque pecuque.*

But it must be observed, that instead of *ficubus* a better form is *ficis*, from *ficus*, *i*, and *portus* has both forms, *ubus* and *ibus*.

[§ 83.] *Domus* takes, in some of its cases, the forms of the second declension; especially in the genit. *domi* in the sense of “at home:” in the abl. *domo* in the sense of “from home;” and in the acc. plur. *domos* in the sense of “home,” when several places are alluded to. In the other signification, the forms of the fourth declension prevail.

GENDER OF WORDS OF THE FOURTH DECLENSION.

[§ 84.] The words in *us* are masculine. The following only are feminine: *acus, domus, manus, porticus, tribus*, and the plurals *idus, iduum*, and *quinquatrus, quinquatruum*. To these must be added *colus*, which however also follows the second declension. The words *anus, nurus, socrus*, and *quercus* are feminine, according to the general rule, on account of their signification.

The few words in *u* are neuter, without exception.

CHAP. XXI.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

[§ 85.] THE fifth declension, like the fourth, may, with a few changes, be traced to the third. The nominative ends in *ēs*, and the declension is as follows :—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. <i>di-ēs</i> , a day.	Nom. <i>di-ēs</i> , days.
Gen. <i>di-ēi</i> .	Gen. <i>di-ērum</i> .
Dat. <i>di-ēi</i> .	Dat. <i>di-ēbus</i> .
Acc. <i>di-em</i> .	Acc. <i>di-ēs</i> .
Voc. <i>di-ēs</i> .	Voc. <i>di-ēs</i> .
Abl. <i>di-ē</i> .	Abl. <i>di-ēbus</i> .

The following may serve as examples for declension: *res* and *species* have their plural complete. The words *acies, facies, effigies, series*, and

spes, are found in good prose writers only in the nominative sing. and in the nom. and accusative plural; the others, *fides*, *macies*, *perniciēs* and *scabies* have, from their signification, no plural.

Note. The *e* in the termination of the genitive and dative singular is long when preceded by a vowel, as in *diēi*, *maciēi*, but short after a consonant, as in *fidēi*, *rēi*.

GENDER OF WORDS OF THE FIFTH DECLENSION.

[§ 86.] The words of the fifth declension are feminine, with the exception of *dies*, which is mascul. and femin. in the singular, and masculine only in the plural. The compound *meridies* is masculine only, but does not occur in the plural.

CHAP. XXII.

IRREGULAR DECLENSION.—INDECLINABLES—DEFECTIVES.

[§ 87.] THE irregularities in the declension of substantives may be comprised under two general heads: *A. Indeclinables* and *defectives*; *B. Heteroclita* and *heterogenea*.

A. Some substantives have a defective declension, inasmuch as they have either no terminations at all to mark the different cases (*indeclinables*), or want particular cases, or even a whole number (*defectives*).

I. Indeclinables, or words which retain the same form in all cases, are chiefly the names of the letters of the Greek and Latin alphabets, e. g. *alpha*, *beta*, *gamma*, *delta*, *iota*, *alpha*, *nu*, &c. Further, a number of foreign words, such as *manna*, *pascha*, and a few Greek substantives in *i* and *y*, such as *gummi*. Hebrew proper names, which differ in their terminations from Greek and Latin words, are either not declined at all, as *Bethleem*, *Gabriel*, *Ruth*, or they take a Latin termination in the nominative also, e. g. *Abrahamus*, *Jacobus*, *Josephus*, *Juditha*. *David* and *Daniel* are the only names which, without taking any termination in the nominative, make the genitive *Davidis*, and *Danielis*. Others, as *Joannes*, *Moses*, *Judas*, *Maria*, have already

acquired through the Greek a declinable termination, and are accordingly declined after the first or third declension. *Jesus* makes the accusat. *Jesum*, but in the other cases it remains unchanged, *Jesu*.

Among the genuine Latin words we must notice *pondo* (properly an ancient ablative), which is used only as a plural, and remains unchanged in all its cases, e. g. *auri quinque pondo*, five pounds of gold.

[§ 88.] II. *Defectives in case* are those substantives which want one or more cases. There are many words of which the nominative singular cannot be proved to have existed, as for instance, of the genitives *dapis*, *dicionis*, *frugis*, *opis*, *vicis*, and of the plurals *preces* and *verbera* (for which we use as a nom. sing. *plaga* or *ictus*). The genitive *neminis* from *nemo* occurs very rarely, and its place is supplied by *nullius*. The genitive plural is wanting, that is, does not occur in our authorities, in several monosyllabic words, as *ōs*, *oris*; *vas*, *vadis*; *glos*, *pax*, and others. The genit. and dat. sing. of *vis* is very rare, but the plural *vires*, *virium*, &c., is complete.

[§ 89.] With regard to words which want several cases, it most frequently happens, that only those cases exist which are alike (i. e. especially the nominat., accusat., and vocat., all the others being wanting). Thus *fas*, *nefas*, *nihil*, *parum* (too little), and *instar*, are used only as nom. and accus. This is the case especially with the plural of such words as *neces*, kinds of death; *jura*, rights; *rura*, fields; *silentia*, *grates*, and *munia*.

The following must be remembered separately: *fors* occurs only in the nom. and abl. singular (*forte* by chance); *mane*, in the nom., acc., and abl. singular, and is alike in all of them, but it is generally used only as an adverb.

[§ 90.] Some words occur only in particular combinations and in a particular case: *dicis* with *causa* and *gratia*; *nauci* in the phrase *non nauci facere* or *esse*; *derisui* and *despicatui*, in combination with *duci* or *esse*; *infitias* with *ire*; *venum* with *ire* and *dare*, whence *venire* and *vendere*; *diu et noctu* (for which, however, *noctu et interdium* is more common); *natu* with *major* and *minor*; *in promptu* and *in procinctu* commonly with *esse* and *stare*; *sponte* with a pronoun, as *mea*, *tua*, *sua*, or a genitive. We must particularly notice some verbal substantives, which rarely occur in any other form than the ablat. sing. in combination with a genitive or a pronoun, such as *meo*, *tuo*, &c., e. g. *concessu* and *permisso*;

admonitu, rogatu, oratu, arbitrato, jussu and injussu; coactu and efflagitatu.

[§ 91.] III. *Defectives in number* are words which have either no plural or no singular.

1. Many words from their signification can have no plural, and are termed *singularia tantum*. This is the case: *a*) With abstract nouns which have a simple and universal meaning, e. g. *justitia, temperantia, pueritia, fames, sitis*; *b*) With words which denote a substance or mass without division or subdivision, as *aurum, argentum, sabulum, coenum, sanguis*, and *panis*, inasmuch as we thereby do not understand a single loaf, but the substance of bread in general. Some words of this kind however, when used in the plural, denote separate objects, consisting of the substance indicated by the name, as *aera*, works in bronze; *cerae*, wax-tablets; *ligna*, pieces of wood; *c*) Collective words, as *indoles*, the whole natural abilities of a person; *plebs* and *vulgus, victus, supellex*. Proper names should strictly have no plural, but cases often occur where a plural is necessary, viz. when persons of the same name or character are spoken of, and it may be remarked in general, that in such cases the person who speaks or writes must decide for himself. It is surprising that there exists no plural of the words *vesper (vespera), meridies, ver*, and *specimen*.

[§ 93.] 2. Other words (*pluralia tantum*) occur only in the plural. This is the case: *a*) With the following collective names of personal beings: *liberi, gemini, majores, posteri, primores* and *proceres, superi* and *inferi, coelites, consentes, penates, lemures, excubiae, operae*. When in any of these cases an individual is to be indicated, it can be done only by making it a part of the collective, e. g. one child, *unus* or *una liberorum* or *ex liberis*. *Manes* or *dii manes* however is used in the plural also to denote the departed soul of an individual. *b*) A great number of other *pluralia tantum* denote a complex of things, the constituent parts of which are not conceived separately, or at least are not designated by the same word as the whole complex itself. Such words are rendered in English either by plurals or collective words. The most important among them are:—*a*) *Artus, exta, intestina and viscera, foria (orum), tormina, ilia, armamenta, impedimenta, utensilia, induviae, exuviae, manubiae, parietinae, reliquiae, sentes, vepres, virgulta, bellaria, crepundia, scruta, donaria, lautia, inferiae, justa, sarta, compedes, verbera, grates, la-*

menta, minae, preces, dirae, ambāges, argutiae, deliciae, divitiae, facetiae, nugae, gerrae, quisquiliae, insidiae, praestigiae, tricae. To these we may add some other but similar ideas, which are more frequently expressed by the plural than the singular, as *angustiae, blanditiae, illecebrae, ineptiae, minutiae, latebrae, salebrae.*

[§ 94.] β) The following words are used in Latin in the plural, because they denote things composed of several parts, whereas we frequently express the same things in the singular:—*Altaria* (*altare* is less common), *arma, moenia, bigae, trigae, quadrigae, cancelli* and *clathri, casses* and *plagae, exequiae, fides* (a lyre, properly the strings which were called *nervi*), *fores* and *valvae, loculi, phalerae, salinae, scalae, scopae, codicilli, pugillares, tabulae, cerae, clunes* and *nates.* The meaning of the plural is to us more obscure in the following words: *cervices, fauces, clitellae, cunae, cunabula* and *incunabula, inimicitiae, induciae, nuptiae, obices, pantes, praecordia (orum), sordes, tenebrae.*

[§ 95.] The names of certain days in the Roman calendar are plurals, as *calendae, nonae, idus, nundinae* and *feriae*; so also the names of festivals and festive games (like *ludi* itself), e. g. *Bacchanalia, Floralia, Saturnalia, Olympia,* and *natalicia, sponsalia* and *reposita*; further, many names of towns, such as *Athenae, Thebae, Gades,* the neuters *Arbela, Bactra, Leuctra,* and a considerable number of names of towns which are properly names of the people, as *Delphi, Leontini, Parisii, Treviri.*

[§ 96.] Some words which are apparently the same vary in meaning according to their number, which is sometimes accompanied by a difference of gender. *Lustrum* is a period of five years, and *lustra*, dens of wild beasts; *fastus*, us, plur. *fastūs*, pride; and *fasti*, the calendar; *forum*, market, and *fori*, passages; *tempus*, time, and *tempora* (sometimes *tempus* also), the temples of the head.

In other words the plural has a different meaning from the singular, though one nearly allied to it, and without giving up the meaning of the singular for the plural, e. g.

SINGULAR.

Aedes, a temple.
Aqua, water.
Auxilium, help.
Bonum, something good.
Carcer, a prison.
Castrum, a fort.

PLURAL.

Aedes, a house.
Aquae, medicinal springs.
Auxilia, auxiliary troops.
Bona, property.
Carceres, the barriers of a race-course.
Castra, a camp.

<i>Comitium</i> , a part of the Roman forum.	<i>Comitia</i> , assembly of the people.
<i>Copia</i> , abundance.	<i>Copiae</i> , troops.
<i>Cupedia</i> , daintiness.	<i>Cupediae</i> , or <i>cupedia</i> , dainties.
<i>Epulum</i> , a solemn feast.	<i>Epulae</i> , a feast, a meal.
<i>Facultas</i> , power to do something.	<i>Facultates</i> , property.
<i>Fortuna</i> , fortune.	<i>Fortunae</i> , goods of fortune.
<i>Hortus</i> , a garden.	<i>Horti</i> and <i>hortuli</i> , pleasure-grounds.
<i>Littera</i> , letter of the alphabet.	<i>Litterae</i> , an epistle.
<i>Ludus</i> , pastime.	<i>Ludi</i> , public games.
<i>Naris</i> , nostril.	<i>Nares</i> , <i>ium</i> , nose = <i>nasus</i> .
<i>Natalis</i> (dies), birth-day.	<i>Natales</i> , birth, high or low.
(<i>Ops</i> , obsol.) <i>Opis</i> , help.	<i>Opes</i> , power, wealth.
<i>Opera</i> , labour.	<i>Operae</i> , workmen.
<i>Pars</i> , a part.	<i>Partes</i> , (commonly) a party.
<i>Rostrum</i> , a beak, pointed head of a ship.	<i>Rostra</i> , the raised place from which the orators spoke.
<i>Sal</i> , salt.	<i>Sales</i> , witticisms.

CHAP. XXIII.

IRREGULAR DECLENSION. — HETEROCLITA. — HETEROGENEA.

[§ 97.] *B.* THE second kind of irregularity in the declension of substantives consists in too great an abundance of forms. It happens either, that although there is but one nominative, the other cases have two forms after different declensions, or that both the nominative, and all the other cases have two different forms. If, owing to the different terminations, such a word has at the same time different genders, it is called a *heterogēnes*; if it has merely different forms, it is called a *heterocliton*. It must however be observed that there are only very few words in which the practice of good prose does not give preference to one of the forms, and in the following list we shall always put the preferable form first.

Forms of different declensions are found with the word *jūgērū*; for, besides the ablative sing. and plur. *jūgero* and *jūgeris*, poets use *jugere* and *jugeribus*. Some names of trees in *us*, viz. *cupressus*, *ficus*, *laurus*, *pinus*, besides the forms of the second declension, also take those of the fourth in *ūs* and *u*, i. e. in the genit. and ablat. singular, and in the nom. and accus. plural, e. g. *laurus* (after the second and fourth

declension), gen. *lauri* and *laurus*, dat. *lauro*, acc. *laurum*, voc. *laure*, abl. *lauro* and *lauru*. Nom. plur. *lauri* and *laurus*, gen. *laurorum*, dat. and abl. *lauris*, accus. *lauros* and *laurus*, voc. *lauri*. The same is the case with *colus*, a distaff; but the cases in *i, orum, is*, do not exist. *Vas, vasis*, a vessel, makes the plural *vasa, vasorum, vasis*.

[§ 98.] Words which have different forms in the nominative as well as in the other cases may follow the same declension in either case, as *balteus* and *balteum*, *callus* and *callum*, *clipeus* and *clipeum* (especially a consecrated shield), *carrus* and *carrum*, *commentarius* and *commentarium*, *cubitus* and *cubitum*, *pileum* and *pileus*, *baculum* and *baculus*, *palatum* and *palatus*, *jugulum* and *jugulus*, *catinus*, *catillus*, and *catinum*, *catillum*; and some names of plants, as *lupinus* and *lupinum*, *papyrus* and *papyrum*, *porrum* and *porrus*: or they follow different declensions; as

<i>Alimonia, ae.</i>	— <i>alimonium, i.</i>
<i>Amygdala, ae.</i>	— <i>amygdalum, i.</i>
<i>Vespera, ae.</i>	— <i>vesper, i</i> , the evening star, is regular. In the sense of evening, we find the nom. <i>vesper</i> and accus. <i>vesperum</i> , but the ablative <i>vespere</i> and <i>vesperi</i> , from <i>vesper, is</i> .
<i>Cingulum, i.</i>	— <i>cingula, ae.</i>
<i>Essedum, i.</i>	— <i>essedā, ae.</i>
<i>Incestum, i.</i>	— <i>incestus, ūs.</i>
<i>Delphinus, i.</i>	— <i>delphin, inis.</i>
<i>Elephantus, i.</i>	— <i>elephas, antis.</i>
<i>Consortio, onis.</i>	— <i>consortium, i.</i>
<i>Mendum, i.</i>	— <i>menda, ae.</i>
<i>Penum, i.</i>	— <i>penus, ūs</i> , and <i>penus, ōris.</i>
<i>Tergum, i.</i>	— <i>tergus, oris.</i>
<i>Pavo, ōnis.</i>	— <i>pavus, i.</i>
<i>Scorpio, onis.</i>	— <i>scorpius, i.</i>
<i>Palumbes, is.</i>	— <i>palumbus, i</i> ; and <i>palumba, ae.</i>
<i>Colluvio, ōnis.</i>	— <i>colluvies, ēi.</i>
<i>Crater, ēris.</i>	— <i>cratēra, ae.</i>
<i>Plebs, is.</i>	— <i>plebes, ēi.</i>
<i>Paupertas, atis.</i>	— <i>pauperies, ei.</i>
<i>Juventus, utis.</i>	— <i>juventa, ae</i> ; and <i>juventas, ātis.</i>
<i>Senectus, ūtis.</i>	— <i>senecta, ae.</i>

Gausāpe, is (also — *gausapum*, i; and *gausapa*, ae.
gausapes, is,
 masc.).

Praesepe, is (also — *praesepium*, i.
praesepes, is,
 fem.).

Tapēte, is. — *tapētum*, i; and *tapes*, ētis.

Angiportus, us. — *angiportum*, i.

Rictus, us. — *rictum*, i.

Arcus, us. — *arcus*, i (in Cic. *De Nat. Deor.* iii. 20.).

Tonitrus, us — *tonitruum*.
 (*tonitru*).

It is of comparatively frequent occurrence that substantives have two different forms, one belonging to the first and the other to the fifth declension, as *barbaria*, *barbaries*; *luxuria*, *es*; *duritia*, *es*; *materia*, *es*; *mollitia*, *es*; *segnitia*, *es*; and that verbal substantives of the fourth declension have a second form in *um*, genit. i, like the participle of the perfect, as *conatus* and *conatum*, *eventus* and *eventum*, *praetextus* and *praetextum*, *suggestus* and *suggestum*.

[§ 99.] To this class belong those substantives which, in the plural, assume a different gender and a different form, in some instances, along with the regular one:—

1. Masculines, which in the plural become also neuters: *jocus*, plur. *joci* and *joca*; *locus*, plur. *loci* (passages in books or subjects for investigation and discussion=topics) and *loca* (in the common sense of “places”).

2. Feminines which in the plural become also neuters: *carbasus*, a species of flax, plur. *carbasi* and *carbasa*, sails made of it; *ostrea*, plur. *ostreae* and *ostrea*, *orum*; *margarita*, plur. *margaritae*, but also *margarita*, *orum*.

3. The following neuters become—*a*) Masculines: *coelum*, *coeli*; *siser*, *siseres*; *porrum*, *porri*; *b*) Feminines: *delicium*, *deliciae*; *epulum*, *epulae*; *balneum*, *balneae* (in the sense of a public bath *balnea* is more frequent); *c*) Both masculines and neuters: *rastrum*, *rastri* and *rastra*; *frenum*, *fren* and *frena*.

CHAP. XXIV.

NOUNS ADJECTIVE.—TERMINATIONS.—DECLENSION.

[§ 100.] 1. THE noun adjective denotes a quality of a person or a thing, expressed either by a substantive or a pronoun. The participle is an adjective formed from a verb, and, as far as its form is concerned, is an adjective. An adjective has three genders, and can thus be joined with substantives of different genders. But there are only two classes of adjectives in which the three genders are indicated by three different terminations; namely, the adjectives and participles in *us, a, um*, such as *bonus, bona, bonum; amatus, amata, amatum*; and those in *er, a, um*, such as *liber, libera, liberum*; and the isolated *satur, satura, saturum*.

To these adjectives of three terminations the following thirteen in *er, is, e* must be added: *acer, acris, acre; alacer, alacris, alacre; campester, campestris, campestre; celebrer, celebris, celebre; celer, celeris, celere; equester, equestris, equestre; paluster, palustris, palustre; pedester, pedestris, pedestre; puter, putris, putre; saluber, salubris, salubre; silvester, silvestris, silvestre; terrester, terrestris, terrestre; volucer, volucris, volucre*. Originally they had only two terminations, *is* for the masculine and feminine, and *e* for the neuter. The termination *er* for the masculine exclusively was afterwards added to them.

[§ 101.] 2. Other adjectives have in reality only two forms, the one for the masculine and feminine in common (*generis communis*), and the other for the neuter. This class consists of those in *is*, neut. *e*, as *levis* (masc. and fem.); *leve*, and the comparatives in *or* (masc. and fem.), *us* (neut.), as *levior, levius*.

[§ 102.] 3. All other adjectives have only one termination for all three genders; as *felix, prudens, anceps, sollers, pauper, dives, vetus*. So also the present participles in *ns*, as *laudans, monens, legens, audiens*. But all the adjectives of this class have the termination *ia* in the nom., accus., and vocative plural of the neuter gender. Very few, and properly speaking only *vetus, veteris*, have the termination *a*, (respecting which see above, § 65.) E. g. *felicia, prudentia, ancipitia, sollertia, laudantia, vetera*.

[§ 103.] 4. With regard to the declension of adjectives, it must be observed that the feminines in *a* follow the first declension; the masculines in *us* and *er*, which make the feminine in *a*, and the neuters in *um*, follow the second. All other terminations belong to the third declension. As therefore adjectives follow the same declensions as substantives, they have been treated of above, and their irregularities have been already pointed out (see §§ 51. and 66., &c.); especially that many in *er*, *a*, *um*, throw out the *e*, and that the adjct. of the third declension *commonly* make the ablat. sing. in *i*, the neuter plur. in *ia*, and the genit. plur. in *ium*.

Note. We say *commonly*, for the abl. sing. in *i* occurs in all the adjectives in *is*, *e*, and in *er*, *is*, *e*, and also in the majority of those which have only one termination; *e* exclusively occurs only in very few, but several have *i* alone, or *e* and *i* indiscriminately. With regard to the neuter plural in *ia*, it should be remembered that only the comparatives and *vetus*, *vetera* form an exception. The neuter plural however occurs only in adjectives ending in *ans*, *ens*, *rs* and *x*, and a few others. The genitive plur. in *um* is more frequent.

5. Indeclinable adjectives are: *nequam*; *frugi* (properly a dative of the obsolete *frux*, but is used quite as an adjective), *praesto*, and *semis*, which is always added to other numerals in the sense of "and a half," e. g. *recipe uncias quinque semis*, take five ounces and a half. It must not be confounded with the substantive *semis*, gen. *semissis*.

Adjectives defective in number are *pauci* and *plerique*, which, in ordinary language, have no singular. Of *mactus*, *a*, *um*, we have only *macte* and *macti*, joined with the imperative of *esse*.

Parum, too little, is the neuter of the obsolete *parus*, and is used as a substantive only in the nom. and accusative. *Necesse* exists only as a neuter in connection with *est*, *erat*, &c., and with *habeo*, *habet*, &c., the adjective *necessarius*, *a*, *um*, being used in its stead.

APPENDIX.

As in Chapter XV. we confined ourselves to giving specimens of the declension of substantives, we here subjoin some examples of adjectives which follow the first, second and third declensions.

Altus, a, um, high.

SINGULAR.

Nom.	<i>alt-us, alt-ă, alt-um.</i>
Gen.	<i>alt-i, alt-ae, alt-i.</i>
Dat.	<i>alt-o, alt-ae, alt-o.</i>
Acc.	<i>alt-um, alt-am, alt-um.</i>
Voc.	<i>alt-e, alt-ă, alt-um.</i>
Abl.	<i>alt-o, alt-ă, alt-o.</i>

PLURAL.

Nom.	<i>alt-i, alt-ae, alt-ă.</i>
Gen.	<i>alt-orum, alt-arum, alt-orum.</i>
Dat.	<i>alt-is, alt-is, alt-is.</i>
Acc.	<i>alt-os, alt-as, alt-a.</i>
Voc.	<i>alt-i, alt-ae, alt-a.</i>
Abl.	<i>alt-is, alt-is, alt-is.</i>

Miser, era, erum, wretched.

SINGULAR.

Nom.	<i>miser, miser-ă, miser-um.</i>
Gen.	<i>miser-i, miser-ae, miser-i.</i>
Dat.	<i>miser-o, miser-ae, miser-o.</i>
Acc.	<i>miser-um, miser-am, miser-um.</i>
Voc.	<i>miser, miser-ă, miser-um.</i>
Abl.	<i>miser-o, miser-ă, miser-o.</i>

PLURAL.

Nom.	<i>miser-i, miser-ae, miser-ă.</i>
Gen.	<i>miser-orum, miser-arum, miser-orum.</i>
Dat.	<i>miser-is, miser-is, miser-is.</i>
Acc.	<i>miser-os, miser-as, miser-a.</i>
Voc.	<i>miser-i, miser-ae, miser-a.</i>
Abl.	<i>miser-is, miser-is, miser-is.</i>

Aeger, aegra, aegrum, ill.

SINGULAR.

Nom.	<i>aeger, aegr-ă, aegr-um.</i>
Gen.	<i>aegr-i, aegr-ae, aegr-i.</i>
Dat.	<i>aegr-o, aegr-ae, aegr-o.</i>
Acc.	<i>aegr-um, aegr-am, aegr-um.</i>
Voc.	<i>aeger, aegr-ă, aegr-um.</i>
Abl.	<i>aegr-o, aegr-ă, aegr-o.</i>

PLURAL.

- Nom. *aegr-i, aegr-ae, aegr-ă.*
 Gen. *aegr-orum, aegr-arum, aegr-orum.*
 Dat. *aegr-is, aegr-is, aegr-is.*
 Acc. *aegr-os, aegr-as, aegr-a.*
 Voc. *aegr-i, aegr-ae, aegr-a.*
 Abl. *aegr-is, aegr-is, aegr-is.*

Celer, celeris, celere, quick.

SINGULAR.

- Nom. *celer, celer-is, celer-e.*
 Gen. *celer-is* for all genders.
 Dat. *celer-i* for all genders.
 Acc. *celer-em, celer-em, celer-e.*
 Voc. *celer, celer-is, celer-e.*
 Abl. *celer-i* for all genders.

PLURAL.

- Nom. *celer-es, celer-es, celer-ia.*
 Gen. *celer-ium* for all genders.
 Dat. *celer-ibus* for all genders.
 Acc. *celer-es, celer-es, celer-ia.*
 Voc. *celer-es, celer-es, celer-ia.*
 Abl. *celer-ibus* for all genders.

Gravis, neut. grave, heavy.

SINGULAR.

- Nom. *grav-is, neut. grav-e.*
 Gen. *grav-is.*
 Dat. *grav-i.*
 Acc. *grav-em, neut. grav-e.*
 Voc. *grav-is, neut. grav-e.*
 Abl. *grav-i.*

PLURAL.

- Nom. *grav-es, neut. grav-ia.*
 Gen. *grav-ium.*
 Dat. *grav-ibus.*
 Acc. *grav-es, neut. grav-ia.*
 Voc. *grav-es, neut. grav-ia.*
 Abl. *grav-ibus.*

Comparative altior, neut. altius, higher.

SINGULAR.

Nom. *altior*, neut. *altius*.
 Gen. *altior-is*.
 Dat. *altior-i*.
 Acc. *altior-em*, neut. *altius*.
 Voc. *altior*, neut. *altius*.
 Abl. *altior-e*, or *altior-i*.

PLURAL.

Nom. *altior-es*, neut. *altior-a*.
 Gen. *altior-um*.
 Dat. *altior-ibus*.
 Acc. *altior-es*, neut. *altior-a*.
 Voc. *altior-es*, neut. *altior-a*.
 Abl. *altior-ibus*.

Adjectives of one Termination.

Dives, rich. Felix, happy.

SINGULAR.

Nom. *dives*.
 Gen. *divit-is*.
 Dat. *divit-i*.
 Acc. *divit-em*, neut. *dives*.
 Voc. *dives*.
 Abl. *divit-e*, or *divit-i*.

PLURAL.

Nom. *divit-es*, neut. *dit-ia* (*divit-ia*).
 Gen. *divit-um*.
 Dat. *divit-ibus*.
 Acc. *divit-es*, neut. *dit-ia*.
 Voc. *divit-es*, neut. *dit-ia*.
 Abl. *divit-ibus*.

SINGULAR.

Nom. *felix*.
 Gen. *felic-is*.
 Dat. *felic-i*.
 Acc. *felic-em*, neut. *felix*.
 Voc. *felix*.
 Abl. *felic-i*, or *felic-e*.

PLURAL.

Nom. *felic-es*, neut. *felic-ia*.Gen. *felic-ium*.Dat. *felic-ibus*.Acc. *felic-es*, neut. *felic-ia*.Voc. *felic-es*, neut. *felic-ia*.Abl. *felic-ibus*.

CHAP. XXV.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

[§ 104.] 1. ADJECTIVES (also the present and past participles when used as adjectives) may, by means of a change in their termination, be made to indicate that the quality they denote belongs to a subject in a higher or in the highest degree. The degrees of comparison (*gradus comparationis*), as this change is called, are, the *comparative*, when a comparison is made between two (persons, things, or conditions), and the *superlative*, when a comparison takes place among three or more. The fundamental form of the adjective in this respect is called the *positive*.

Note. The comparative is also used, in an elliptic mode of speaking, instead of our "too" (*nimis*); e. g. *homo tristior*, more sad, viz. than is right or natural, hence too sad. In like manner the superlative, when used without the objects of comparison being mentioned, indicates only that the quality exists in a high degree, which we express by the adverb *very*, e. g. *homo doctissimus*, does not always mean "the most learned," but very often "a very learned man;" and *intemperantissime vixit*, he lived very intemperately.

2. The comparative has the termination *ior* for the masculine and feminine, and *ius* for the neuter; and these terminations are added to the stem of the word such as it appears in the oblique cases. The rule may be practically expressed thus: to form the comparative add *or* or *us* to that case of the positive which ends in *i*, that is, in adjectives of the second declension to the genitive, and in those of the third to the dative, e. g. *doctus* (*docti*), *doctior*; *liber* (*liberi*), *liberior*; *pulcher* (*pulchri*), *pulchrior*; *levis*, *levior*; *acer* (*acri*), *acrior*; *prudens*, *prudentialior*; *indulgens*, *indulgentior*; *audax*, *audacior*; *velox*, *velocior*.

3. The superlative ends in *issimus*, *a*, *um*, and is formed as the comparative by adding this termination to the stem of the positive, such as it presents itself in the genitive and the other oblique cases, after the removal of the terminations, e. g. *doct-issimus*, *prudent-issimus*, *audac-issimus*, *concord-issimus*.

[§ 105.] 4. The following adjectives must be noticed as exceptions:

a) All adjectives in *er* (those in *er*, *a*, *um*, as *liber* and *pulcher*, as well as those in *er*, *is*, *e*, as *acer*, *celeber*, and those of one termination, as *pauper*, gen. *pauperis*) make the superlative in *errimus*, by adding *rimus* to the nominative of the masculine gender, as *pulcher-rimus*, *acer-rimus*, *celeber-rimus*, *pauper-rimus*. *Vetus* and *nuperus*, too, have *veter-rimus*, *nuperrimus*. *Maturus* has both forms, *maturissimus* and *maturrimus*, though the latter chiefly in the adverb.

b) Some adjectives in *ilis*, viz. *facilis*, *difficilis*, *similis*, *dissimilis*, *gracilis*, and *humilis*, make the superlative in *illimus*, by adding *limus* to the positive after the removal of the termination *is*, as, *facil-limus*, *humil-limus*. *Imbecillus* has two forms, *imbecillissimus* and *imbecillimus*.

c) Adjectives compounded with *dīcus*, *fīcus* and *vōlus* (from the verbs *dicere*, *facere*, *velle*) make the comparative in *entior* and the superlative in *entissimus*, from the unusual and obsolete forms *dicens*, *volens*, *faciens*, e. g. *maledicentior*, *benevolentior*, *munificentior*, *munificentissimus*, *magnificentissimus*.

CHAP. XXVI.

COMPARISON BY ADVERBS AND INCREASED COMPARISON.

[§ 106.] 1. INSTEAD of the peculiar forms of the comparative and superlative, we sometimes find a circumlocation, *magis* and *maxime*, or *summe*, being added to the positive. This rarely occurs in the case of adjectives which form their degrees of comparison in the regular way; but where the regular or grammatical comparison cannot be used, its place is supplied by circumlocation. (See below, § 114.)

[§ 107.] 2. A degree is also expressed by the adverbs *admodum*, *bene*, *apprime*, *imprimis*, *sane*, *oppido*, *valde*, and *multum*, and by the particle *per*, which is united with the adjective into one word, as in *perdifficilis*, *permagnus*, and is made still more emphatic by the addition of *quam*, e. g. *locus perquam difficilis*, an extremely difficult passage. Some few adjectives are increased in the same way by being compounded with *prae*, e. g. *praedives*, *praepinguis*, *praelongus*.

[§ 108.] 3. When the adverb *etiam* (still) is added to the comparative, and *longe* or *multo* (by far) to the superlative, the meaning of the degrees is enhanced. *Vel*, even, and *quam*, as much as possible, likewise serve to denote an increase of the meaning expressed by the superlative, e. g. *Cicero vel optimus oratorum Romanorum*; i. e. Cicero, a good or rather the very best of Roman orators; *gratias tibi ago quam maximas*, or *quam maximas possum tibi gratias ago*. As these words increase the meaning, so *paulum* or *paulo*, *paululum* or *paululo*, on the other hand, diminish it, as *paulo doctior*, only a little more learned. *Aliquanto* increases the sense, and has an affirmative power; it may be expressed by "considerably" or "much."

CHAP. XXVII.

IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE COMPARISON.

[§ 109.] 1. SOME adjectives make their degrees of comparison from obsolete forms, or take them from other words of a similar signification.

<i>Bonus</i> , good,	<i>melior</i> ,	<i>optimus</i> .
<i>Malus</i> , bad,	<i>pejor</i> ,	<i>pessimus</i> .
<i>Magnus</i> , great,	<i>major</i> ,	<i>maximus</i> .
<i>Multus</i> , much, neut.	<i>plus</i> (pl. <i>plures</i> , <i>plura</i>),	<i>plurimus</i> (equivalent in the plural to <i>plerique</i>).
<i>Parvus</i> , little,	<i>minor</i> ,	<i>minimus</i> .
<i>Nequam</i> } See § 103. {	<i>nequior</i> ,	<i>nequissimus</i> .
<i>Frugi</i> } indeclin. {	<i>frugalior</i> ,	<i>frugalissimus</i> .
<i>Egenus</i> , needy,	<i>egentior</i> ,	<i>egentissimus</i> (<i>egens</i>).
<i>Providus</i> , provident,	<i>providentior</i> ,	<i>providentissimus</i> (<i>providens</i>).

Dives makes the comparative *divitior* and *ditior*, and the superlative *divitissimus* and *ditissimus*.

[§ 110.] 2. The following adjectives have a double irregular superlative : —

Exter or *exterus*, *a, um*, *exterior*, *extremus* and *extimus*.
(Infer or *inferus)*, *a, um*, *inferior*, *infimus* and *imus*.
(Super or *superus)*, *a, um*, *superior*, *supremus* and *summus*.
(Poster or *posterus)*, *a, um*, *posterior*, *postremus* and *postumus*.

[§ 111.] 3. There are some forms of the comparative and superlative which have no adjective for their positive, but an adverb which is derived from an adjective.

<i>(citra)</i> ,	<i>citerior</i> ,	<i>citimus</i> .
<i>(ultra)</i> ,	<i>ulterior</i> ,	<i>ultimus</i> .
<i>(intra)</i> ,	<i>interior</i> ,	<i>intimus</i> .
<i>(prope)</i> ,	<i>propior</i> ,	<i>proximus</i> .

The following, on the other hand, have neither an adjective nor an adverb for their positive : —

_____	<i>deterior</i> ,	<i>deterrimus</i> .
_____	<i>ocior</i> ,	<i>ocissimus</i> .
_____	<i>potior</i> ,	<i>potissimus</i> .
_____	<i>prior</i> ,	<i>primus</i> .

[§ 112.] 4. The following adjectives have a superlative, but no comparative : —

Falsus, *falsissimus* ; *diversus*, *diversissimus* ; *inclitus*, *inclitissimus* ; *novus*, *novissimus* ; *sacer*, *sacerrimus* ; *vetus* (the comparative is supplied by *vetustior*), *veterrimus* (*vetustissimus*), and some participles which are used as adjectives, as *meritus*, *meritissimus*.

[§ 113.] 5. Most adjectives in *ilis* and *bilis* derived from verbs, together with those in *ilis* derived from substantives, have no superlative. To these we must add the following : *agrestis*, *alacer*, *ater*, *caecus*, *longinquus*, *propinquus*, *salutaris*, *surdus*, *vulgaris*, and some others. In like manner there is no superlative of *adolescens*, *juvenis* (comparative *junior* contracted from *juvenior*), and *senex* (comparative *senior*), though these words must be regarded as adjectives.

6. The two adjectives, *anterior* and *sequior*, exist only as comparatives. The neuter of the latter is *sequius*.

[§ 114.] 7. Many adjectives have no degrees of compari-

son at all, because their signification precludes comparison ; e. g. those which denote a substance, origin, possession, or a definite time ; e. g. *aureus, peregrinus, paternus, aestivus, hibernus, vivus*.

Others do not form the comparative and superlative in the usual grammatical manner by the terminations *ior* and *issimus*, but by the adverbs *magis* and *maxime*, which are put before the adjective, and by the particles mentioned above. Such adjectives are :—

a) Those in which the termination *us* is preceded by a vowel, as *idoneus, dubius, necessarius, arduus* : comparative *magis necessarius*, superlative *maxime necessarius*, &c. In *qu* however, the *u* is not regarded as a vowel ; hence *antiquus*, e. g., has its regular comparative, *antiquior*, and superlative *antiquissimus*.

b) Many adjectives compounded with substantives and verbs, e. g. *inops, magnanimus, pestifer* ; and those which have the derivative terminations *icus, idus, ūlus, ālis, īlis, bundus*, e. g. *modicus, credulus, rubidus, exitialis, hostilis, furibundus*.

c) A great number of adjectives which cannot be classified ; their want of the degrees of comparison is surprising, and they must be carefully committed to memory : *albus, almus, caducus, calvus, canus, curvus, ferox, gnarus, lacer, mutilus, lassus, mediocris, memor, merus, mirus, mutus, navus, nefastus, par, parilis, dispar, properus, rudis, trux* (the degrees may be formed from *truculentus*), *vagus*.

CHAP. XXVIII.

NUMERALS.—CARDINAL NUMERALS.

[§ 115.] NUMERALS (*nomina numeralia*) are partly adjectives and partly adverbs. The adjectives are : 1) *Cardinal*, denoting simply the number of things, as *tres*, three ; 2) *Ordinal*, indicating the place or number in succession, as *tertius*, the third ; 3) *Distributive*, denoting how many each time, as *terni*, each time three, or three and three together ; 4) *Multiplicative*, denoting how manifold, as *triplex*, three-

fold ; 5) *Proportional*, denoting how many times more, as *tripulum*, three times as much ; and 6) *Adverbial numerals*, denoting how many times, as *ter*, thrice or three times.

I. CARDINAL NUMERALS.

The cardinal numerals form the roots of the other numerals. The first three, *unus*, *duo*, *tres*, are declined, and have forms for the different genders ; the rest, as far as one hundred, are indeclinable. The hundreds, as 200, 300, &c., are declinable, and have different terminations for the genders. *Mille*, a thousand, is indeclinable, but has a declinable plural (*millia*, or better *milìa*,) for the series of numbers which follow. A higher unit, such as a million or billion, does not exist in Latin, and a million is therefore expressed by the form of multiplication : *decies centena milìa*, i. e. ten times a hundred thousand, or *decies* alone, with the omission of *centena milìa*, and in like manner *vicies*, two millions ; *octogies*, eight millions ; *centies*, ten millions ; *millies*, a hundred millions ; *bis millies*, two hundred millions.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Nom. *unus*, *una*, *unum*, one.Nom. *uni*, *unae*, *una*.Gen. *unius*.Gen. *unorum*, *unarum*, *unorum*.Dat. *uni*.Dat. *unis*.Acc. *unum*, *unam*, *unum*.Acc. *unos*, *unas*, *una*.Abl. *uno*, *una*, *uno*.Abl. *unis*.

Note. The Plural *uni*, *unae*, *una*, occurs as a numeral only in connexion with *pluralia tantum*, i. e. such nouns as have no singular, e. g. *unae nuptiae*, one wedding ; *una castra*, one camp ; *unae litterae*, one letter. (See § 119). *Unus* is used also in the sense of "alone," or "the same," and is then a pure adjective, e. g., *uni Ubii legatos miserant*, the Ubians alone had sent ambassadors ; *Lacedaemonii septingentos jam annos unis moribus vivunt*, with the same manners.

Duo and *tres* are naturally plurals.

Nom. *duo*, *duae*, *duo*.Nom. *tres* (mas. and fem.), *tria*.Gen. *duorum*, *duarum*, *duorum*.Gen. *trium*.Dat. *duobus*, *duabus*, *duobus*.Dat. *tribus*.Acc. *duos* and *duo*, *duas*, *duo*.Acc. *tres* (mas. and fem.), *tria*.Abl. *duobus*, *duabus*, *duobus*.Abl. *tribus*.

Note. *Ambo*, *ae*, *o*, both, is declined like *duo*. *Duum*, a second form of the genit. of *duo*, is the regular one in compounds, as *duumvir*, but is frequently used also in connexion with *mīlium*. Thus Pliny says that he had compiled his work *e lectione voluminum circiter duum mīlium*. (See § 51.)

- | | |
|--|---|
| 4. III. or IV. <i>quattuor</i> . | 30. XXX. <i>triginta</i> . |
| 5. V. <i>quinque</i> . | 40. XL. <i>quadraginta</i> . |
| 6. VI. <i>sex</i> . | 50. L. <i>quinquaginta</i> . |
| 7. VII. <i>septem</i> . | 60. LX. <i>sexaginta</i> . |
| 8. VIII. <i>octo</i> . | 70. LXX. <i>septuaginta</i> . |
| 9. IX. <i>novem</i> . | 80. LXXX. <i>octoginta</i> . |
| 10. X. <i>decem</i> . | 90. XC. <i>nonaginta</i> . |
| 11. XI. <i>undecim</i> . | 99. IC. <i>undecentum, nonaginta novem, or novem et nonaginta</i> . |
| 12. XII. <i>duodecim</i> . [tres. | |
| 13. XIII. <i>tredecim</i> or <i>decem et</i> | |
| 14. XIV. <i>quattuordecim</i> . | 100. C. <i>centum</i> . |
| 15. XV. <i>quindecim</i> . | 109. CIX. <i>centum et novem, or centum novem</i> . |
| 16. XVI. <i>sedecim</i> or <i>decem et sex</i> . | 200. CC. <i>ducenti, ae, a</i> . |
| 17. XVII. <i>decem et septem, or septendecim</i> . | 300. CCC. <i>trecenti, ae, a</i> . |
| 18. XVIII. <i>decem et octo, or duodeviginti</i> . | 400. CCCC. <i>quadringenti, ae, a</i> . |
| 19. XIX. <i>decem et novem, or undeviginti</i> . | 500. D. or ID. <i>quingenti, ae, a</i> . |
| 20. XX. <i>viginti</i> . | 600. DC. <i>sexcenti, ae, a</i> . |
| 21. XXI. <i>unus et viginti, or viginti unus</i> . | 700. DCC. <i>septingenti, ae, a</i> . |
| 22. XXII. <i>duo et viginti, or viginti duo</i> . | 800. DCCC. <i>octingenti, ae, a</i> . |
| 23. XXIII. <i>tres et viginti, or viginti tres</i> . | 900. DCCCC. <i>nongenti, ae, a</i> . |
| 28. XXVIII. <i>duodetriginta, or octo et viginti</i> . | 1000. M. or CIO. <i>mille</i> . |
| 29. XXIX. <i>undetriginta, or novem et viginti</i> . | 2000. CIOCIO. or MM. <i>duo milia, or bis mille</i> . |
| | 5000. IDO. <i>quinque milia</i> . |
| | 10,000. CCIDDO. <i>decem milia</i> . |
| | 100,000. CCCIDDDO. <i>centum milia</i> . |

[§ 116.] The intermediate numbers are expressed in the following manner: — from twenty to a hundred, either the smaller number followed by *et* precedes, or the greater one precedes without the *et*; e. g. *quattuor et sexaginta*, or *sexaginta quattuor*. For 18, 28, 38, &c., and for 19, 29, 39, &c. the expressions *duodeviginti*, *duodetriginta*, *undeviginti*, *undetriginta*, up to *undecentum*, are more frequent than *decem et*

octo, or *octo et viginti* &c. In such combinations neither *duo* nor *un* (*unus*) can be declined. Above 100, the greater number always precedes, either with or without *et*, as *centum unus*, *mille unus*, *mille duo*, *mille trecenti*, or *mille et unus*, *mille et duo*, *mille et trecenti sexaginta sex*.

The thousands are generally expressed by the declinable substantive *milia* and the cardinal numerals, as *duo milia*, *tria milia*, *quattuor milia*, *unum et viginti milia*, *quadraginta quinque milia*. The objects counted are expressed by the genitive which depends on the substantive *milia*; e. g. *Xerxes Mardonium in Graecia reliquit cum trecentis milibus armorum*, unless a lower declined numeral is added, in which case the things counted may be used in the same case with *milia*; e. g. *habuit tria milia trecentos milites*, or *milites tria milia trecentos habuit*; but even then the genitive may be used, e. g. *habuit militum tria milia trecentos*, or *habuit tria milia militum et trecentos*. It is only the poets that express the thousands by the indeclinable adjective *mille* preceded by an adverbial numeral, as *bis mille equi*, for *duo milia equorum*.

CHAP. XXIX.

II. ORDINAL NUMERALS.

[§ 117.] THE ordinals denote the place in the series which any object holds, and answer to the question *quotus*? All of them are adjectives of three terminations, *us*, *a*, *um*.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| 1. <i>primus</i> . | 11. <i>undecimus</i> . |
| 2. <i>secundus</i> (<i>alter</i>). | 12. <i>duodecimus</i> . |
| 3. <i>tertius</i> . | 13. <i>tertius decimus</i> . |
| 4. <i>quartus</i> . | 14. <i>quartus decimus</i> . |
| 5. <i>quintus</i> . | 15. <i>quintus decimus</i> . |
| 6. <i>sextus</i> . | 16. <i>sextus decimus</i> . |
| 7. <i>septimus</i> . | 17. <i>septimus decimus</i> . |
| 8. <i>octavus</i> . | 18. <i>octavus decimus</i> , or <i>duode-</i> |
| 9. <i>nonus</i> . | <i>vicesimus</i> . [<i>cesimus</i>]. |
| 10. <i>decimus</i> . | 19. <i>nonus decimus</i> , or <i>undevi-</i> |

20. <i>vicesimus</i> , sometimes <i>vigesimus</i> .	200. <i>ducentesimus</i> .
21. <i>unus et vicesimus</i> , <i>vicesimus primus</i> .	300. <i>trecentesimus</i> .
22. <i>alter et vicesimus</i> , <i>vicesimus secundus</i> .	400. <i>quadringentesimus</i> .
30. <i>tricesimus</i> , sometimes <i>trigesimus</i> .	500. <i>quingentesimus</i> .
40. <i>quadragesimus</i> .	600. <i>sexcentesimus</i> .
50. <i>quingagesimus</i> .	700. <i>septingentesimus</i> .
60. <i>sexagesimus</i> .	800. <i>octingentesimus</i> .
70. <i>septuagesimus</i> .	900. <i>nongentesimus</i> .
80. <i>octogesimus</i> .	1000. <i>millesimus</i> .
90. <i>nonagesimus</i> .	2000. <i>bis millesimus</i> .
100. <i>centesimus</i> .	3000. <i>ter millesimus</i> .
	10,000. <i>decies millesimus</i> .
	100,000. <i>centies millesimus</i> .
	1,000,000. <i>decies centies millesimus</i> .

[§ 118.] In expressing the intermediate numbers, the most common practice is to place the smaller number before the greater one with the conjunction *et*, or to make the greater number precede the smaller one without *et*, as *quartus et vicesimus*, or *vicesimus quartus*. But there are many instances in which the smaller number precedes without *et*; e. g. *quintus tricesimus*; and from 13 to 19 this is the ordinary method, e. g. *decimus tertius*, though *tertius et decimus* and *decimus et tertius* also occur. Instead of *primus et vicesimus*, &c., we find still more frequently *unus et vicesimus*, fem. *una et vicesima*, or with the elision of the vowel, *unetvicesima*. The 22d, 32d, &c., is more frequently and better expressed by *alter et vicesimus* or *vicesimus et alter*, than by *secundus et vicesimus*. It then goes on regularly: *tertius et vicesimus*, *quartus et vicesimus*, &c.; but the 28th, 38th, &c., are expressed also by *duodetricesimus*, *duodequadragesimus*, and the 29th, 39th, 99th by *undetricesimus*, *undequadragesimus*, *undecentesimus*, the words *duo* and *unus* (*un*) being indeclinable; and both forms are of more frequent occurrence than *octavus* and *nonus et vicesimus*, or *vicesimus octavus*, *vicesimus nonus*.

CHAP. XXX.

III. DISTRIBUTIVE NUMERALS.

[§ 119] DISTRIBUTIVE numerals denote an equal number distributed among several objects or at different times, and answer to the questions:—"How many apiece?" and, "How many each time?" (*quoteni?*) They are always used in the plural. The English language having no corresponding numerals has recourse to circumlocution; e. g. *Scipio et Hannibal cum singulis interpretibus congressi sunt*, each with an interpreter; *Senatus agri Vejentani septena jugera plebi divisit*, the senate gave to each plebeian seven jugera.

Hence the distributives are applied, instead of cardinals, with words which have no singular; e. g. *bini codicilli*, *bina post Romulum spolia opima*; and with those substantives the plural of which, though it has a different signification from the singular, yet retains the meaning of a singular, e. g. *aedes*, *castra*, *litterae*, *ludi*. It must however be observed, that in this case the Romans commonly used *uni* instead of *singuli*, and *trini* instead of *terni*, since *singuli* and *terni* retain their own distributive signification. We therefore say, for example, *bina castra uno die cepit*; *trinae hodie nuptiae celebrantur*; *quotidie quinas aut senas litteras accipio*; for *duo castra* would mean "two castles," *duae aedes* "two temples," and *duae litterae* "two letters of the alphabet." They are all adjectives of three genders, *i*, *ae*, *a*.

1. <i>singuli</i> .	14. <i>quaterni deni</i> .	60. <i>sexageni</i> .
2. <i>bini</i> .	15. <i>quini deni</i> .	70. <i>septuageni</i> .
3. <i>terni</i> , or <i>trini</i> .	16. <i>seni deni</i> .	80. <i>octogeni</i> .
4. <i>quaterni</i> .	17. <i>septeni deni</i> .	90. <i>nonageni</i> .
5. <i>quini</i> .	18. <i>octoni deni</i> .	100. <i>centeni</i> .
6. <i>seni</i> .	19. <i>noveni deni</i> .	200. <i>ducenti</i> .
7. <i>septeni</i> .	20. <i>viceni</i> .	300. <i>trecenti</i> .
8. <i>octoni</i> .	21. <i>viceni singuli</i> .	400. <i>quadringeni</i> .
9. <i>noveni</i> .	22. <i>viceni bini</i> .	500. <i>quingeni</i> .
10. <i>deni</i> .	23. <i>viceni terni</i> , &c.	600. <i>sexcenti</i> .
11. <i>undeni</i> .	30. <i>triceni</i> .	700. <i>septingeni</i> .
12. <i>duodeni</i> .	40. <i>quadrageni</i> .	800. <i>octingeni</i> .
13. <i>terni deni</i> .	50. <i>quingeni</i> .	900. <i>nongeni</i> .

Note. The genitive of these numerals is commonly in *um* instead of *orum*, as *binum*, *ternum*, *quaternum*, *quinum*, &c., but not *singulum* for *singulorum*.

The thousands are expressed by *singula milia*, *bina milia*, *terna*, *quaterna*, *quina milia*; e. g. *Legavit Augustus praetorianis militibus singula milia nummum* (that is, one thousand to each); *in singulis legionibus Romanis quaterna milia duceni pedites cum trecentis equitibus erant*.

Here too there is a certain freedom of combination, for instead of *viceni quaterni*, we also find *quaterni et viceni*, and *quaterni viceni*; and 18 and 19 are expressed also by *duodeviceni* and *undeviceni*.

CHAP. XXXI.

IV. MULTIPLICATIVE NUMERALS.

[§ 120.] MULTIPLICATIVES answer to the question, "How many fold?" (*quotūplex*?) They are: *simplex* (gen. *īcis*), *duplex*, *triplex*, *quadruplex*, *quincuplex* (*sexuplex* or *seplex*), *septemplex*, *octuplex*, *novemplex*, *decemplex*, *centuplex*.

It will not be out of place here to add the Latin expressions for fractions, which are always denoted by *pars*: $\frac{1}{2}$ is *dimidia pars*, $\frac{1}{3}$ *tertia pars*, $\frac{1}{4}$ *quarta pars*, *quinta*, *sexta*, *septima pars*, &c. In cases where the number of the parts into which a thing is divided, exceeds the number of parts mentioned only by one, as in $\frac{2}{3}$, $\frac{3}{4}$, $\frac{4}{5}$, the fractions are expressed in Latin simply by *duae*, *tres*, *quattuor partes*, that is, two out of three, three out of four, and four out of five parts. In all other cases fractions are expressed as in English: $\frac{2}{7}$, *duae septimae*; $\frac{3}{7}$, *tres septimae*, &c.

CHAP. XXXII.

V. PROPORTIONAL NUMERALS.

[§ 121.] PROPORTIONAL numerals express how many times more one thing is than another, but they cannot be used

throughout. They answer to the question *quotūplus*? They are: *simplus*, *a*, *um*; *duplus*, *tripus*, *quadruplus*, *quinguplus*, (*sexuplus*), *septuplus*, *octuplus*, (*nonuplus*), *decuplus*, *centuplus*, and according to the same analogy we might form *ducentuplus*, and so on, as in the multiplicatives above.

CHAP. XXXIII.

VI. NUMERAL ADVERBS.

[§ 122.] 1. THE numeral adverbs answer to the question, "How many times?" *quotiens*? to which *totiens* is the demonstrative, and *aliquotiens* the indefinite. The form in *ns* is the original, and is preferable to the termination *ēs*, which has become the established ending in adverbs formed from real numerals.

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>semel</i> . | 21. <i>semel et vicies</i> . |
| 2. <i>bis</i> | 22. <i>bis et vicies</i> . |
| 3. <i>ter</i> . | 23. <i>ter et vicies</i> , &c. |
| 4. <i>quater</i> . | 30. <i>tricies</i> . |
| 5. <i>quinquies</i> . | 40. <i>quadrages</i> . |
| 6. <i>sexies</i> . | 50. <i>quingages</i> . |
| 7. <i>septies</i> . | 60. <i>sexages</i> . |
| 8. <i>octies</i> . | 70. <i>septuages</i> . |
| 9. <i>novies</i> . | 80. <i>octoges</i> . |
| 10. <i>decies</i> . | 90. <i>nonages</i> . |
| 11. <i>undecies</i> . | 100. <i>centies</i> . |
| 12. <i>duodecies</i> . | 200. <i>ducenties</i> . |
| 13. <i>terdecies</i> or <i>tredecies</i> . | 300. <i>trecenties</i> . |
| 14. <i>quaterdecies</i> or <i>quattuordecies</i> . | 400. <i>quadringenties</i> . |
| 15. <i>quinquiesdecies</i> or <i>quindécies</i> . | 500. <i>quingenties</i> , &c. |
| 16. <i>sexiesdecies</i> or <i>sedecies</i> . | 800. <i>octingenties</i> , &c. |
| 17. <i>septiesdecies</i> . | 1,000. <i>millies</i> . |
| 18. <i>duodevicies</i> or <i>octiesdecies</i> . | 2,000. <i>bis millies</i> . |
| 19. <i>undevicies</i> , or <i>noviesdecies</i> . | 3,000. <i>ter millies</i> , &c. |
| 20. <i>vicies</i> . | 100,000. <i>centies millies</i> . |
| | 1,000,000. <i>millies millies</i> . |

With regard to the intermediate numbers, 21, 22, 23, &c., the method above adopted is the usual one, but we may also say *vicies semel* and *vicies et semel*, though not *semel vicies*; for *bis vicies*, for example, would mean twice twenty, i. e. forty.

[§ 123.] 2. The numeral adverbs terminating either in *um* or *o*, and derived from the ordinals, or rather the ordinals themselves in the acc. or ablat. singular neuter gender, are used in answer to the question "of what number?" or "what in number?" e. g. *primum* or *primo*, for the first time, or first; *secundum* or *secundo*, *tertium* or *tertio*, &c., *decimum*, *tertium decimum*, *duodevicesimum*.

CHAP. XXXIV.

PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

[§ 125.] 1. PRONOUNS are words which supply the place of a substantive, such as *I*, *thou*, *we*, and in Latin *ego*, *tu*, *nos*, &c. These words are in themselves substantives, and require nothing to complete their meaning; hence they are called substantive pronouns (*pronomina substantiva*), but more commonly personal pronouns, *pronomina personalia*.

[§ 126.] 2. Besides these there is a number of words which are in reality adjectives, inasmuch as they have three distinct forms for the three genders, and their meaning is not complete without a substantive either expressed or understood. But their inflection differs so widely from what are commonly called adjectives, and they are so frequently used instead of a substantive, that they are not unjustly termed pronouns. They are—

- 1) The *adjunctive*: *ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum*, self.
- 2) The *demonstrative*: *hic*, *haec*, *hoc*; *iste*, *ista*, *istud*; *ille*, *illa*, *illud*; *is*, *ea*, *id*, and the compound *idem*, *eadem*, *idem*.
- 3) The *relative*: *qui*, *quae*, *quod*, and the compounds *quicumque* and *quisquis*.
- 4) The two *interrogatives*: viz. the substantive interrogative, *quis*, *quid*? and the adjective interrogative, *qui*, *quae*, *quod*?

5) The *indefinite* pronouns: *aliquis*, *aliqua*, *aliquid* and *aliquod*; *quidam*, *quaedam*, *quiddam* and *quoddam*; *aliquispiam*, or abridged *quispiam*, *quaepiam*, *quidpiam* and *quodpiam*; *quisquam*, neuter *quidquam*; *quivis*, *quilibet*, and *quisque*; and all the compounds of *qui* or *quis*.

[§ 130.] 3. The possessive pronouns are derived from the substantive pronouns, and in form they are regular adjectives of three terminations: *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, *vester*; to which we must add the relative *cujus*, *a*, *um*; and the *pronomina gentilia* (which express origin), *nostras*, *vestras*, and *cujas*.

4. Lastly, we include among the pronouns also what are called *pronominalia*, that is, adjectives of so general a meaning, that, like real pronouns, they frequently supply the place of a noun substantive. Such *pronominalia* are. *a*) Those which answer to the question, who? *alius*, *ullus*, *nullus*, *nonnullus*. If we ask, which of two? it is expressed by *uter*? and the answer to it is *alter*, one of two; *neuter*, neither; *alteruter*, either the one or the other; *utervis* and *uterlibet*, either of the two. The relative pronoun (when referring to two) is likewise *uter*, and in a more general sense *utercunque*. *b*) Those which denote quality, size, or number in quite a general way. They stand in relation to one another (whence they are called *correlatives*), and are formed according to a fixed rule. The interrogative beginning with *qu* coincides with the form of the relative; the indefinite is formed by prefixing *ali*; the demonstrative begins with *t*, and its power is sometimes increased by the suffix *dem*; the relative may acquire a more general meaning by being doubled, or by the suffix *cunque*; and the indefinite generality is expressed by adding the words *libet* or *vis* to the (original) interrogative form. In this manner we obtain the following pronominal correlatives:—

Interrog.	Demonst.	Relat.	Relat. generale.	Indefin.	Indef. gener.
<i>qualis</i>	<i>talis</i>	<i>qualis</i>	<i>qualisqualis</i> , <i>qualiscunque</i> .	———	<i>qualislibet</i> .
<i>quantus</i>	<i>tantus</i> , <i>tantundem</i>	<i>quantus</i>	<i>quantusquantus</i> , <i>quantuscunque</i>	<i>aliquantus</i>	<i>quantuslibet</i> , <i>quantusvis</i> .
<i>quot</i>	<i>tot</i> , <i>totidem</i> ,	<i>quot</i>	<i>quotquot</i> , <i>quotcunque</i>	<i>aliquot</i>	<i>quotlibet</i> .
<i>quotus</i>	<i>tôtus</i>	<i>quôtus</i>	<i>quotuscunque</i>	(<i>aliquotus</i> .)	———

CHAP. XXXV.

DECLENSION OF PRONOUNS.

[§ 131.] 1. DECLENSION of the personal pronouns *ego, tu, sui*.

SINGULAR.

Nom. <i>Ego</i> , I.	<i>Tu</i> , thou.	
Gen. <i>mei</i> , of me.	<i>tui</i> , of thee.	<i>sui</i> , of himself, herself, itself.
Dat. <i>mihi</i> , to me.	<i>tibi</i> , to thee.	<i>sibi</i> , to himself, &c.
Acc. <i>me</i> , me.	<i>te</i> , thee.	<i>se</i> , himself, &c.
Voc. like nom.	like nom.	
Abl. <i>me</i> , from me.	<i>te</i> , from thee.	<i>se</i> , from himself, &c.

PLURAL.

Nom. <i>Nōs</i> , we.	<i>Vōs</i> , you.	
Gen. <i>nostrī, nostrum</i> , of us.	<i>vestrī, vestrum</i> , of you.	<i>sui</i> , of themselves.
Dat. <i>nōbis</i> , to us.	<i>vōbis</i> , to you.	<i>sibi</i> , to themselves.
Acc. <i>nos</i> , us.	<i>vos</i> , you.	<i>se</i> , themselves.
Voc. like nom.	like nom.	
Abl. <i>nobis</i> , from us.	<i>vobis</i> , from you.	<i>se</i> , from themselves.

Note. The contracted form of the dative, *mi* for *mihi* (like *nūl* for *nihil*) is frequently found in poetry, but rarely in prose. The genitives *mei, tui, sui, nostrī, vestrī*, are properly genitives of the possessive pronouns *meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum*, for originally the neuters *meum, tuum, &c.* were used in the sense of "my being," or of "as regards me, thee," &c. The beginner may pass over the origin of these forms, since they are used as the real genitives of the personal pronouns; but he must be reminded of it in the construction of the gerund, § 660. Respecting the difference between *nostrī, vestrī*, and *nostrum, vestrum*, see § 431.

The suffix *met* may be added to all the cases of these three pronouns to express the English emphatic *self*, as *ēgomet, mihimet, temet, semet*, and even with the addition of *ipse* after it, as *mihimet ipsi, temet ipsum*. The genit. plur. and the nominat. *tu* alone do not admit this suffix. Instead of it the emphasis is given to *tu* by the suffix *tē*, as *tute*, and to this again by the addition of *met*, as *tutemet*. The accus. and ablat. singular of these pronouns admit a reduplication, *meme, tete, sese*; of the pronoun *sui* alone it is used in the plural as well as in the singular.

When the preposition *cum* occurs with the ablat. of these pronouns, it is appended to them, as *mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum*. The same is the case with *quo, qua*, and *quibus*, though we may also say *cum quo, cum qua, cum quibus*.

[§ 132.] 2. Declension of the demonstrative pronouns, *hic, iste, ille, is*.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Nom. & Voc. *Hic, haec, hoc*, this. Nom. & Voc. *hi, hae, haec*, these.

Gen. *hujus*, of this. Gen. *horum, harum, horum*, of these.

Dat. *hūc* (or *hūc*), to this. Dat. *his*, to these.

Acc. *hunc, hanc, hoc*, this. Acc. *hos, has, haec*, these.

Abl. *hoc, hac, hoc*, from this. Abl. *his*, from these.

Note. The ancient form of this pronoun was *hic, haec, hoc*. The cases ending in *c* arose from the omission of the *e*. In ordinary language the cases in *s* also sometimes take the *ce* to render the demonstrative power more emphatic, e. g. *hujusce, hisce, hosce*.

The pronouns *iste, ista, istud*, and *ille, illa, illud*, are declined alike, and in the following manner :

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Nom. & Voc. *ille, illa, illud*, he, or that. Nom. & Voc. *illi, illae, illa*, they or those.

Gen. *illius*. Gen. *illorum, illarum, illorum*.

Dat. *illi*. Dat. *illis*.

Acc. *illum, illam, illud*. Acc. *illos, illas, illa*.

Abl. *illo, illa, illo*. Abl. *illis*.

Ipse, ipsa, ipsum, is declined like *ille*, except that the neuter is *ipsum* and not *ipsud*.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Nom. *is, ea, id*, he, she, it, or that. Nom. *ii (ei), eae, ea*, they or those.

Gen. *ejus*. Gen. *eorum, earum, eorum*.

Dat. *ei*. Dat. *iis (eis)*.

Acc. *eum, eam, id*. Acc. *eos, eas, ea*.

Abl. *eo, ea, eo*. Abl. *iis (eis)*.

By the addition of the suffix *dem* we form from *is*—*idem, eadem, idem* (as it were *isdem, eadem, iddem*), which is declined in the other cases exactly like the simple *is, ea, id*. In the accusative *eundem* and *eandem* are preferable to *eumdem, eamdem*, and in like manner in the genitive plur. *eorundem, earundem*.

[§ 133.] 3. Declension of the relative pronoun, *qui, quae, quod*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. <i>Qui, quae, quod</i> , who or which.	Nom. <i>qui, quae, quae</i> , who or which.
Gen. <i>cujus</i> (<i>quojus</i> , obsol.), of whom.	Gen. <i>quorum, quarum, quorum</i> .
Dat. <i>cui</i> or <i>cui</i> (<i>quoi</i> , obsol.), to whom.	Dat. <i>quibus</i> .
Acc. <i>quem, quam, quod</i> , whom.	Acc. <i>quos, quas, quae</i> .
Abl. <i>quo, qua, quo</i> , from whom.	Abl. <i>quibus</i> .

Note. An ancient ablat. singular for all genders was *qui*, especially when joined with *cum*, as *quicum vixit*, instead of *quocum* or *quacum*. Instead of *quibus* there is an ancient form *quis*, or *queis*.

[§ 134.] There are two interrogative pronouns, *quis, quid?* (substantive), and *qui, quae, quod?* (adjective), the latter of which is quite the same in form as the relative pronoun, and the former differs from it only by its forms *quis* and *quid*. The interrogatives *quisnam, quidnam?* and *quinam, quaenam, quodnam?* express a more lively or emphatic question than the simple words, and the *nam* answers to the English "pray."

[§ 135.] The indefinite pronoun *aliquis*, plur. *aliqui*, is used as a substantive and as an adjective. In ordinary language the form *aliquis* alone is used, both as a substantive and as an adjective; but in the neuter the two forms *aliquid* and *aliquod* exist, and the difference between them must be observed; e. g. *da mihi aliquid*, give me something; *aliquod negotium*, some business. The femin. singul. and the neuter plur. are both *aliqua*, and the form *aliquae* is the femin. nom. plural.

[§ 136.] But there is also a shorter form of the indefinite pronoun, without the prefix *ali*, and exactly like the interrogative pronoun: *quis, quae, quid*, as a substantive, and *qui, quae, quod*, as an adjective. This form is generally used only after the conjunctions *si, nisi, ne, num*, and after relatives, such as *quo, quanto*, and *quum*. This rule is commonly expressed thus: the prefix *ali* in *aliquis* and its derivatives *aliquo, aliquando*, and *alicubi* is rejected when *si, nisi, ne, num, quo, quanto*, or *quum*, precede; e. g. *Quo quis est doc-*

tior, eo esse humanior solet, the more learned a person is, the more humane he usually is ; *Consul videat, ne quid respublica detrimenti capiat*. The combinations of this indefinite *quis* or *qui* with the conjunctions *si*, *ne*, *num*, and with the interrogative syllable *en* (*ec*) may be considered as peculiar and distinct words, as *siquis* or *siqui*, *nequis* or *nequi*, *numquis* or *numqui*. In the femin. singul. and the neuter plur. the form *qua* is used along with *quae*, likewise according to the analogy of *aliquis*. We may therefore say *siqua*, *nequa*, *numqua*, *ecqua*, but also *si quae*, *ne quae*, *num quae*, *ecquae*.

[§ 137.] The compounds of *qui* and *quis*, viz. *quidam*, *quilibet*, *quivis*, *quisque*, *quispiam*, and *unusquisque*, are declined like the relative, but have a double form in the neuter singular, *quiddam* and *quoddam*, *unumquidque* and *unumquodque*, according as they are used as substantives or as adjectives. *Quisquam* and *quisquis* are commonly used only as substantives, for *ullus* supplies their places as adjectives, and the regular form of the neuter therefore is *quidquam* (*quicquam*), and *quidquid* (*quicquid*), and more rarely *quodquam*, *quodquod*. *Quicumque*, however, has only the form of *quodcunque* for the neuter.

[§ 138.] Each of the two words of which *unusquisque* is composed is declined separately, as gen. *uniuscujusque*, dat. *unicuique*, acc. *unumquemque*, &c.

CHAP. XXXVI.

DECLENSION OF THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS AND OF PRONOMINALS.

[§ 139.] 1. THE possessive pronouns *meus*, *mea*, *meum*; *tuus*, *tua*, *tuum*; *suus*, *sua*, *suum*; *noster*, *nostra*, *nostrum*; *vester*, *vestra*, *vestrum*, are declined entirely like adjectives of three terminations. *Meus* makes the vocative of the masculine gender *mi*, as *O mi pater*!

2. The possessive pronoun *cujus*, *a*, *um*, has, besides the nominative, only the accusative singular, *cujum*, *cujam*, *cujum*; *cujā*, the ablative singular feminine, and *cujae*, *cujas*, the nominative and accusative plural feminine; but all these forms occur very rarely.

3. *Nostras, vestras, and cujas* (i. e. belonging to our, your nation, family, or party), are regularly declined after the third declension as adjectives of one termination: genit. *nostrātis*, dat. *nostrāti*, &c., plural *nostrates*, and neuter *nostratiā*.

[§ 140.] 4. The peculiar declension of the adjective pronouns *uter, utra, utrum*; *alter, altēra, altĕrum*; *alius* (neut. *aliud*), *ullus*, and *nullus*, has already been explained in § 49.

Nom. <i>uter,</i>	Gen. <i>utrius,</i>	Dat. <i>utri.</i>
<i>neuter,</i>	<i>neutrius,</i>	<i>neutri.</i>
<i>alter,</i>	<i>alterius,</i>	<i>altĕri.</i>
<i>alius</i> (neut. <i>aliud</i>),	<i>alius,</i>	<i>aliī.</i>
<i>ullus,</i>	<i>ullius,</i>	<i>ulli.</i>
<i>nullus,</i>	<i>nullius,</i>	<i>nullī.</i>

The compound *alterūter* (the one or the other) is either declined in both words, genitive *alteriusutrius*, accusative *alterumutrum*, or only in the latter, as *alterutri, alterutrum*. The other compounds with *uter*, viz. *uterque, uterlibet, utervis*, and *utercunque*, are declined entirely like *uter*, the suffixes being added to the cases without any change. The words *unus, solus*, and *totus* are declined like *ullus*.

CHAP. XXXVII.

THE VERB.

[§ 142.] 1. THE verb is that part of speech by which it is declared that the subject of a sentence *does* or *suffers* something. This most general difference between *doing* which originates in the subject, and *suffering* which presupposes the doing or acting of another person or thing, is the origin of the two main forms of verbs, viz. the *active* and *passive* (*activum et passivum*).

2. The active form comprises two kinds of verbs: *transitive* or *active* properly so called, and *intransitive* or *neuter* verbs. The difference between them is this: an *intransitive* verb expresses a condition or action which is not communi-

cated from the agent to any other object ; e. g. I walk, I stand, I sleep ; whereas the *transitive* verb expresses an action which affects another person or thing (which in grammar is called the *object*, and is commonly expressed by the accusative) ; e. g. I love thee, I read the letter. As far as form is concerned this difference is important, for neuter verbs cannot have a passive voice, whereas every transitive or active verb (in its proper sense) must have a passive voice, since the object of the action is the subject of the suffering ; e. g. I love thee—thou art loved ; I read the letter—the letter is read.

[§ 147.] 3. It is a peculiarity of the Latin language, that it has a class of verbs of a passive form, but of an active (either transitive or intransitive) signification. They are called *deponents* (*laying aside*, as it were, their passive signification), e. g. *consōlor*, I console ; *imītor*, I imitate ; *fateor*, I confess ; *sequor*, I follow ; *mentior*, I lie ; *morior*, I die. These verbs, even when they have a transitive signification, cannot have a passive voice, because there would be no distinct form for it.

[§ 148.] 4. Before proceeding we must notice the following special irregularities :—

The three verbs, *fio*, I become, or am made, *vapulo*, I am beaten, and *veneo*, I am sold or for sale, have a passive signification, and may be used as the passives of *facio*, *verbero*, and *vendo* ; but, like all neuter verbs, they have the active form, except that *fio* makes the perfect tense *factus sum*, so that form and meaning agree. They are called *neutraliū passiva*.

The verbs *audeo*, *fido*, *gaudeo*, and *soleo*, have the passive form with an active signification in the participle of the preterite, and in the tenses formed from it : as *ausus*, *fisus*, *gavisus*, *solitus sum*, *eram*, &c. They may therefore be called *semideponentia*.

To these we must add, but merely with reference to the participle of the preterite, the verbs *jurare*, *coenare*, *prandere*, and *potare*, of which the participles *juratus*, *coenatus*, *pransus*, and *potus*, have, like those of deponents, the signification :—one that has sworn, dined, breakfasted, and drunk.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

MOODS.—TENSES.

[§ 149.] THERE are four general modes (moods, *modi*) in which an action or condition expressed by a verb may be represented:—1) Simply as a fact, though the action or condition may differ in regard to its relation and to time: this is the *Indicative*; 2) As an action or condition which is merely conceived by the mind, though with the same differences as the indicative, *Conjunctive* or *Subjunctive*; 3) As a command, *Imperative*; 4) Indefinitely, without defining any person by whom, or the time at which, the action is performed, although the relation of the action is defined, *Infinitive*.

To these moods we may add the *Participle* which is, in form, an adjective, but is more than an adjective by expressing at the same time the different relations of the action or suffering, that is, whether it is still lasting or terminated. A third participle, that of the future, expresses an action which is going to be performed, or a condition which is yet to come. The *Gerund*, which is in form like the neuter of the participle passive in *dus*, supplies by its cases the place of the infinitive present active. The two *Supines* are cases of verbal substantives, and likewise serve in certain connections (which are explained in the syntax) to supply the cases for the infinitive.

[§ 150.] When an action or condition is to be expressed as a definite and individual fact, either in the indicative or subjunctive, it is expressed in a verb by its *Tenses*. We must further know its position in the series of actions with which it is connected, that is, the relation of the action, viz. whether it took place while another was going on, or whether it was terminated before another began. If we connect these considerations, we shall obtain the following six tenses of the verb:—

- | | |
|---|--|
| { | An action not terminated in the present time; I write, <i>scribo</i> : Present tense. |
| | An action not terminated in the past time; I was writing or wrote, <i>scribebam</i> : Imperfect tense. |
| | An action not terminated in the future; I shall write, <i>scribam</i> : Future tense. |

- { An action terminated in the present time ; I wrote or have written, *scripsi* : Perfect tense.
 { An action terminated in the past time ; I had written, *scripseram* : Pluperfect tense,
 { An action terminated in the future ; I shall have written, *scripsero* : Future perfect tense.

The same number of tenses occurs in the passive voice, but those which express the terminated state of an action can be formed only by circumlocution, with the participle and the auxiliary verb *esse* : *scribor, scribebar, scribar, scriptus sum, scriptus eram, scriptus ero*. The subjunctive has no future tenses : respecting the manner in which their place is supplied, see § 496. The infinitive by itself does not express time, but only the relation of an action, that is, whether it is completed or not completed. By circumlocution we obtain also an infinitive for an action or a suffering which is yet to come.

CHAP. XXXIX.

NUMBERS. — PERSONS.

[§ 151.] THE Latin verb has two numbers, singular, and plural, and in each number three persons. These three persons, *I*, the one speaking, *thou*, the one spoken to, and *he* or *she*, the one spoken of, are not expressed in Latin by special words, but are implied in the forms of the verb itself. The same is the case in the plural with *we*, *you*, *they*, and these personal pronouns are added to the verb only when the person is to be indicated in an emphatic manner.

The following is a general scheme of the changes in termination, according to the persons, both in the indicative and subjunctive : —

In the Active.

Person :	1.	2.	3.
Sing. —		<i>s,</i>	<i>t.</i>
Plur. <i>mus,</i>		<i>tis,</i>	<i>nt.</i>

The termination of the first person singular cannot be stated in a simple or general way, since it sometimes ends in

a, sometimes in *m*, and sometimes in *i* (see the following Chapter). In the second person singular the perfect indicative forms an exception, for it ends in *ti*. Respecting the vowel which precedes these terminations, nothing general can be said, except that it is *a* in the imperfect and pluperfect indicative.

In the Passive.

Person :	1.	2.	3.
Sing. <i>r</i> ,	<i>ris</i> ,	<i>tur</i> .	
Plur. <i>mur</i> ,	<i>mini</i> ,	<i>ntur</i> .	

This, however, does not apply to those tenses of the passive, which are formed by a combination of the participle with a tense of the verb *esse*.

The imperative in the active and passive has two forms, viz. one for that which is to be done at once, and another for that which is to be done in future, or an imperative present and an imperative future. Neither of them has a first person, owing to the nature of the imperative. The imperative present has only a second person, both in the singular and plural; the imperative future has the second and the third persons, but in the singular they have both the same form, ending in *to* in the active, and in *-tor* in the passive voice; as *amato*, *amator*; *legito*, *legitor*. In the second and third persons plural, however, there are distinct forms. The imperative future passive, on the other hand, has no second person plural, which is supplied by the future of the indicative, e. g. *laudabimini*.

CHAP. XL.

FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

[§ 152.] 1. THERE are in Latin four conjugations, distinguished by the infinitive mood, which ends thus : —

1. *āre.* 2. *ēre.* 3. *ěre.* 4. *īre.*

The present indicatives of these conjugations end in :

1. *o*, *ās.* 2. *eo*, *ēs.* 3. *o*, *īs.* 4. *io*, *īs.*

Note. Attention must be paid to the difference of quantity in the ter-

mination of the second person in the third and fourth conjugations, in order to distinguish the presents of the verbs in *io*, which follow the third conjugation, e. g. *fodio, fugio, capio*, from those verbs which follow the fourth, such as *audio, erudio*.

[§ 153.] 2. In order to obtain the forms of the other tenses, we must further know the perfect and the supine; for the three tenses of the completed action in the active are derived from the perfect; and the participle perfect passive, which is necessary for the formation of the same tenses in the passive, is derived from the supine. These four principal forms, viz. Present, Perfect, Supine, and Infinitive, end thus : —

	Pres.	Perf.	Supine.	Infinit.
1.	<i>o,</i>	<i>āvi,</i>	<i>ātum,</i>	<i>āre.</i>
2.	<i>ēo,</i>	<i>ūi,</i>	<i>ītum,</i>	<i>ēre.</i>
3.	<i>o,</i>	<i>i,</i>	<i>tum,</i>	<i>ēre.</i>
4.	<i>io,</i>	<i>ivi,</i>	<i>ītum,</i>	<i>ire.</i>

3. With regard to the first, second, and fourth conjugations, no particular rule is needed as to how the perfect and supine are formed. According to the above scheme they are : —

1.	<i>laud-o,</i>	<i>laud-avi,</i>	<i>laud-atum,</i>	<i>laud-are.</i>
2.	<i>mon-eo,</i>	<i>mon-ui,</i>	<i>mon-ītum,</i>	<i>mon-ēre.</i>
4.	<i>aud-io,</i>	<i>aud-ivi,</i>	<i>aud-ītum,</i>	<i>aud-ire.</i>

[§ 154.] 4. But in the third conjugation the formation of the perfect and supine presents some difficulty. The following general rules therefore must be observed (for the details see the list of verbs of the third conjugation). When the termination of the infinitive *ēre*, or the *o* of the present tense, is preceded by a vowel, the forms of the perfect and supine are simply those mentioned above, that is, *i* and *tum* are added to the stem of the verb, or to that portion of the verb which remains after the removal of the termination, e. g. *acuēre, acū-o, acū-i, acū-tum*. The vowel becomes long in the supine, even when it is otherwise short. So also in *minuo, statuo, tribuo*, and *solvo, solūtum*, for *v* before a consonant is a vowel.

But when the *o* of the present is preceded by a consonant the perfect ends in *si*. The *s* in this termination is changed into *x* when it is preceded by *c, g, h,* or *qu* (which is equal to *c*); when it is preceded by *b,* this letter is changed into

p ; if *d* precedes, one of the two consonants must give way, and either the *d* is dropped, which is the ordinary practice, or the *s* ; e. g. *duco, duxi* ; *rego, rexi* ; *traho, traxi* ; *coquo, coxi* ; *scribo, scripsi* ; *claudio, clausi* ; but *defendo, defendi*. Verbs in *po* present no difficulty : *carpo, carpsi* ; *sculpo, sculpsi*. That *lego* makes *legi, bibo, bibi*, and *emo, emi*, is irregular ; but *figo, fixi* ; *nubo, nupsi* ; *demo, demsi* (or *dempsi*), are perfectly in accordance with the rule.

5. The supine adds *tum* to the stem of the verb, with some change of the preceding consonants : *b* is changed into *p* ; *g, h*, and *qu* into *c* ; instead of *dtum* in the verbs in *do*, we find *sum* ; e. g. *scribo, scriptum* ; *rego, rectum* ; *traho, tractum* ; *coquo, coctum* (verbs in *co* remain unchanged, as *dic-tum, ductum*) ; *defendo, defensum* ; *claudio, clausum*. The supine in *xum* is a deviation from the rule, as in *figo, fixum*, and so also the throwing out of the *n* of the stem, as in *pingo, pictum* ; *stringo, strictum* ; although this is not done without reason. Of the words in which *o* is preceded by *l, m, n, r*, or *s*, only a few in *mo* follow the ordinary rule ; e. g. *como, demo* ; perf. *comsi*, or *compsi* ; sup. *comtum* or *comptum* : all the others have mixed forms.

6. Two irregularities are especially common in the formation of the perfect of the third conjugation. The first is the addition of a syllable at the beginning of the verb, called *reduplication*, in which the first consonant of the verb is repeated either with the vowel which follows it, or with an *ē* ; e. g. *tundo, tutūdi* ; *tendo, tetendi* ; *cano, cecini* ; *curro, cucurri* ; *fallo, fefelli* ; *parco, peperci*. In the compounds of such words the reduplication is generally not used, except in those of *do, sto, disco, posco*, and in some of *curro*. The second irregularity is that many verbs of the third conjugation form their perfect like those of the second. This is the case especially with many verbs in *lo* and *mo*, as *alo, alui, alitum (altum)* ; *molo, molui, molitum* ; *gemo, gemui, gemitum*. Concerning this and other special irregularities, see the list of verbs in Chap. L.

[§ 155.] 7. The derivation of the other tenses and forms of a verb from these four (present, perfect, supine, and infinitive), which are supposed to be known, is easy and without irregularity in the detail.

From the infinitive active are formed :

a) The imperative passive, which has in all conjugations the same form as the infinitive active.

b) The imperative active, by dropping the termination *re*. It thus ends in conjugation, 1. in *ā*, 2. *ē*, 3. *ĕ*, 4. *ī*, as *ama*, *mone*, *lege*, *audi*.

c) The imperfect subjunctive active, by the addition of *m*, so that it ends in the four conjugations in *ārem*, *ērem*, *ĕrem*, *īrem*, e. g. *amarem*, *monerem*, *legerem*, *audirem*.

d) The imperfect subjunctive passive, by the addition of *r*, as in *amārer*, *monērer*, *legērer*, *audīrer*.

e) The infinitive present passive, by changing *e* into *i*, e. g. *amari*, *moneri*, *audiri*, but in the third conjugation the whole termination *ĕre* is changed into *i*, as in *legēre*, *legi*.

From the present indicative active are derived :

a) The present indicative passive, by the addition of *r*, as *amor*, *moneor*, *legor*, *audior*.

b) The present subjunctive active, by changing the *o* into *em* in the first conjugation, and in the three others into *am*; as *amem*, *moneam*, *legam*, *audiam*.

c) The present subjunctive passive, by changing the *m* of the present subjunctive active into *r*, as *amer*, *monear*, *legar*, *audiar*.

d) The imperfect indicative active, by changing *o* into *abam* in the first conjugation, in the second into *bam*, and in the third and fourth into *ebam*. A change of the *m* into *r* makes the imperfect indicative passive, e. g. *amabam*, *amabar*; *monebam*, *monebar*; *legebam*, *legebar*; *audiebam*, *audiebar*.

e) The first future active, by changing *o* into *abo* in the first conjugation, in the second into *bo*, and in the third and fourth into *am*. From this is formed the first future passive by adding *r* in the first and second conjugations, and by changing *m* into *r* in the third and fourth; e. g. *laudabo*, *laudabor*; *monebo*, *monebor*; *legam*, *legar*; *audiam*, *audiar*.

f) The participle present active, by changing *o* in the first conjugation into *ans*, in the second into *ns*, and in the third and fourth into *ens*; e. g. *laudo*, *laudans*; *moneo*, *monens*; *lego*, *legens*; *audio*, *audiens*. From this participle is derived the participle future passive, by changing *s* into *dus*; e. g. *amandus*, *monendus*, *legendus*, *audiendus*; and the gerund: *amandum*, *monendum*, *legendum*, *audiendum*.

From the perfect indicative active are derived :

a) The pluperfect indicative, by changing *i* into *eram*: *laudaveram*, *monueram*, *legeram*, *audiveram*.

b) The future perfect, by changing *i* into *ěro*: *laudavero, monuero, legero, audivero*.

c) The perfect subjunctive, by changing *i* into *ěrim*: *laudaverim, monuerim, legerim, audiverim*.

d) The pluperfect subjunctive, by changing *i* into *issem* (originally *essem*): *laudavissem, monuisssem, legissem, audivissem*.

e) The perfect infinitive active, by changing *i* into *isse* (originally *esse*): *laudavisse, monuisse, legisse, audivisse*.

From the supine are derived:

a) The participle perfect passive, by changing *um* into *us, a, um*: *laudatus, a, um*; *monitus, a, um*; *lectus, a, um*; *auditus, a, um*.

b) The participle future active, by changing *um* into *urus, a, um*: *laudaturus, a, um*; *moniturus, a, um*; *lecturus, a, um*; *auditurus, a, um*.

By means of the former participle we form the tenses of the passive, which express a completed action; and by means of the participle future we may form a new conjugation expressing actions which are to come. See Chap. XLIII.

CHAP. XLI.

THE VERB ESSE.

[§ 156.] THE verb *esse*, to be, is called an auxiliary verb, because it is necessary for the formation of some tenses of the passive voice. It is also called a substantive verb, because it is the most general expression of existence. Its conjugation is very irregular, like the English *I am*. The supine and gerund are wanting, but the inflection in the persons is regular.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Present.	
Sing. <i>Sum</i> , I am. <i>ēs</i> , thou art. <i>est</i> , he is.	Sing. <i>Sim</i> , I may be. <i>sis</i> , thou mayst be. <i>sit</i> , he may be.
Plur. <i>sumus</i> , we are. <i>estis</i> , ye are. <i>sunt</i> , they are.	Plur. <i>simus</i> , we may be. <i>sitis</i> , ye may be. <i>sint</i> , they may be.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Eram*, I was.
eras, thou wast.
erat, he was.
 Plur. *erāmus*, we were.
erātis, ye were.
erant, they were.

Sing. *Essem*, I might be.
esses, thou mightst be.
esset, he might be.
 Plur. *essemus*, we might be.
essetis, ye might be.
essent, they might be.

Future.

Sing. *Ero*, I shall be.
eris, thou wilt be.
erit, he will be.
 Plur. *erimus*, we shall be.
eritis, ye will be.
erunt, they will be.

Instead of a subjunctive, the participle *futurus* is used with *sim*.

Futurus sim, sis, &c. I may be about to be.

Perfect.

Sing. *Fui*, I have been, or I was.
fuisti, thou hast been.
fuit, he has been.
 Plur. *fuimus*, we have been.
fuistis, ye have been.
fuērunt,
fuēre, } they have been.

Sing. *Fuērim*, I may have been.
fuēris, thou mayst have been.
fuērit, he may have been.
 Plur. *fuērimus*, we may have been.
fuēritis, ye may have been.
fuērint, they may have been.

Pluperfect.

Sing. *Fuēram*, I had been.
fuēras, thou hadst been.
fuērat, he had been.
 Plur. *fuēramus*, we had been.
fuērātis, ye had been.
fuērant, they had been.

Sing. *Fuissem*, I should, or would have been.
fuissem, thou shouldst, &c.
fuisset, he should, &c.
 Plur. *fuissemus*, we should, &c.
fuissetis, ye should, &c.
fuisissent, they should, &c.

Future Perfect.

Sing. *Fuēro*, I shall have been.
fuēris, thou wilt have been.
fuērit, he will have been.
fuērimus, we shall have been.
fuēritis, ye will have been.
fuērint, they will have been.

No Subjunctive.

IMPERATIVE.

Present, Sing. *Es*, be thou.

Plur. *este*, be ye.

Future, Sing. *Esto*, thou shalt be.
esto, he shall be.

Plur. *estōte*, ye shall be.
sunto, they shall be.

INFINITIVE.

Present, state not terminated, *esse*, to be.

Perfect, terminated, *fuisse*, to have been.

Future, *futurum* (*am, um*) *esse*, or *fōre*, to be about to be.

PARTICIPLES.

Present, not terminated (*ens*), being.

Future, *futūrus, a, um*, one who is about to be.

Note. The compounds *absum, adsum, desum, insum, intersum, obsum, praesum, subsum, supersum*, have the same conjugation as *sum*. *Prosum* inserts a *d* when *pro* is followed by *e*; e. g. *prodes, prodest*, &c. The participle *ens* is not used, but appears in the two compounds *absens* and *praesens*.

CHAP. XLII.

THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

[§ 137.] I. ACTIVE VOICE.

First Conjugation.

INDICATIVE.

Sing. *Am-o*, I love.
am-ās, thou lovest.
am-at, he loves.
 Plur. *am-āmus*, we love.
am-ātis, ye love.
am-ant, they love.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

Sing. *Am-em*, I may love.
am-ēs, thou mayst love.
am-et, he may love.
 Plur. *am-ēmus*, we may love.
am-ētis, ye may love.
am-ent, they may love.

Imperfect.

Sing. *am-ābam*, I was loving,
 or I loved.
am-ābas.
am-abat.
 Plur. *am-abāmus*.
am-abātis.
am-abant.

Sing. *am-ārem*, I might love.
am-āres.
am-aret.
 Plur. *am-arēmus*.
am-aretis.
am-arent.

Future.

Sing. *am-ābo*, I shall love.
am-abis.
am-abit.
 Plur. *am-abīmus*.
am-abitis.
am-abunt.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Perfect.

Sing. *am-āvi*, I have loved, orSing. *am-avērim*, I may have loved.

I loved.

*am-avisti.**am-averis.**am-avit.**am-averit.*Plur. *am-avimus.*Plur. *am-averimus.**am-avistis.**am-averitis.**am-averunt (e).**am-averint.*

Pluperfect.

Sing. *am-avēram*, I had loved.Sing. *am-avissem*, I might have loved.*am-averās.**am-avisēs.**am-averat.**am-avisset.*Plur. *am-averāmus.*Plur. *am-avissemus.**am-averatis.**am-avissetis.**am-averant.**am-avisserint.*

Second Future, or Future Perfect.

Sing. *am-avēro*, I shall have loved.*am-averis.**am-averit.*Plur. *am-averimus.**am-averitis.**am-averint.*

IMPERATIVE.

Present, Sing. *am-ā*, love thou.Plur. *am-āte*, love ye.Future, Sing. *am-āto*, thou shalt love.Plur. *am-atōte*, ye shall love.*am-āto*, he shall love.*am-anto*, they shall love.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. and Imperf. (of an action still going on) *am-āre*, to love.Perf. and Pluperf. (of an action completed) *am-avisse*, to have loved.Future, *am-aturum esse*, to be about to love.

GERUND.

Gen. *am-andi* ; Dat. *am-ando* ; Acc. *am-andum* ; Abl. *am-ando*.

SUPINE.

am-atum ; *am-atu*.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. and Imperf. (of an action still going on) *am-ans*, loving.Future, *am-aturus*, about to love.

Second Conjugation.

INDICATIVE.

Sing. *Mon-eo*, I advise.
mon-ēs.
mon-et.
 Plur. *mon-ēmus.*
mon-ētis.
mon-ent.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

Sing. *Mon-eam*, I may advise.
mon-eūs.
mon-eat.
 Plur. *mon-eāmus.*
mon-eatis.
mon-eant.

Imperfect.

Sing. *mon-ēbam*, I was advising,
 or I advised.
mon-ebās.
mon-ebat.
 Plur. *mon-ebāmus.*
mon-ebātis.
mon-ebant.

Sing. *mon-ērem*, I might advise.
mon-erēs.
mon-eret.
 Plur. *mon-crēmus.*
mon-erētis.
mon-erent.

Future.

Sing. *mon-ēbo*, I shall advise.
mon-ebis.
mon-ebit.
 Plur. *mon-ebīmus.*
mon-ebitis.
mon-ebunt.

Perfect.

Sing. *mon-ūi*, I have advised, or
 I advised.
mon-uisti.
mon-uist.
 Plur. *mon-uīmus.*
mon-uistis.
mon-uērunt (e).

Sing. *mon-uērim*, I may have advised.
mon-ueris.
mon-uerit.
 Plur. *mon-uerīmus.*
mon-ueritis.
mon-uerint.

Pluperfect.

Sing. *mon-uēram*, I had advised.
mon-uerās.
mon-uerat.
 Plur. *mon-uerāmus.*
mon-uerātis.
mon-uerant.

Sing. *mon-uissem*, I should have ad-
mon-uissēs. [vised.
mon-uisset.
 Plur. *mon-uissēmus.*
mon-uissetis.
mon-uissent.

Second Future, or Future Perfect.

Sing. *mon-uēro*, I shall have advised.
mon-ueris.
mon-uerit.
 Plur. *mon-uerīmus.*
mon-ueritis.
mon-uerint.

IMPERATIVE.

Present, Sing. *mon-ē*, advise thou. Plur. *mon-ēte*, advise ye.
 Future, Sing. *mon-ēto*, thou shalt advise. Plur. *mon-etōte*, ye shall advise.
mon-ēto, he shall advise. *mon-ento*, they shall advise.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. and Imperf. *mon-ēre*, to advise.
 Perf. and. Pluperf. *mon-uisse*, to have advised.
 Future, *mon-iturum esse*, to be about to advise.

GERUND.

en. *mon-endi*; Dat. *mon-endo*; Acc. *mon-endum*; Abl. *mon-endo*.

SUPINE.

mon-itum; *mon-itu*.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. and Imperf. *mon-ens*, advising.
 Future, *mon-iturus*, about to advise.

Third Conjugation.

INDICATIVE.

Sing. *Leg-o*, I read.
leg-is.
leg-it.
 Plur. *leg-imus.*
leg-itis.
leg-unt.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

Sing. *Leg-am*, I may read.
leg-ās.
leg-at.
 Plur. *leg-āmus.*
leg-atis.
leg-ant.

Imperfect.

Sing. *leg-ēbam*, I was reading, or *leg-ērem*, I might read.
I read.
leg-ebās.
leg-ebat.
 Plur. *leg-ebāmus.*
leg-ebātis.
leg-ebant.
leg-ērēs.
leg-eret.
 Plur. *leg-erēmus.*
leg-eretis.
leg-erent.

Future.

Sing. *leg-am*, I shall read.
leg-ēs.
leg-et.
 Plur. *leg-ēmus.*
leg-ētis.
leg-ent.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Perfect.

Sing. <i>leg-i</i> , I have read, or I read.	Sing. <i>leg-ĕrim</i> , I may have read.
<i>leg-isti.</i>	<i>leg-eris.</i>
<i>leg-it.</i>	<i>leg-erit.</i>
Plur. <i>leg-imus.</i>	Plur. <i>leg-erĭmus.</i>
<i>leg-istis.</i>	<i>leg-eritis.</i>
<i>leg-ĕrunt (e).</i>	<i>leg-erint.</i>

Pluperfect.

Sing. <i>leg-ĕram</i> , I had read.	Sing. <i>leg-issem</i> , I should have read.
<i>leg-erās.</i>	<i>leg-issēs.</i>
<i>leg-erat.</i>	<i>leg-isset.</i>
Plur. <i>leg-erāmus.</i>	Plur. <i>leg-issĕmus.</i>
<i>leg-eratis.</i>	<i>leg-issētis.</i>
<i>leg-erant.</i>	<i>leg-issent.</i>

Second Future, or Future Perfect.

Sing. <i>leg-ĕro</i> , I shall have read.
<i>leg-eris.</i>
<i>leg-erit.</i>
Plur. <i>leg-erĭmus.</i>
<i>leg-eritis.</i>
<i>leg-erint.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

Present, Sing. <i>leg-ĕ</i> , read thou.	Plur. <i>leg-ite</i> , read ye.
Future, Sing. <i>leg-ito</i> , thou shalt read.	Plur. <i>leg-itoŕte</i> , ye shall read.
<i>leg-ito</i> , he shall read.	<i>leg-unto</i> , they shall read.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. and Imperf. <i>leg-ĕre</i> , to read.
Perf. and Pluperf. <i>leg-isſe</i> , to have read.
Future, <i>lec-turum eſſe</i> , to be about to read.

GERUND.

Gen. *leg-endi* ; Dat. *leg-endo* ; Acc. *leg-endum* ; Abl. *leg-endo*.

SUPINE.

lec-tum ; *lec-tu*.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. and Imperf. <i>leg-ens</i> , reading.
Future, <i>lec-turus</i> , about to read.

Fourth Conjugation.

INDICATIVE.

Present.

Sing. *Aud-io*, I hear.*aud-is.**aud-it.*Plur. *aud-imus.**aud-itis.**aud-iunt.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Sing. *Aud-iam*, I may hear.*aud-iās.**aud-iat.*Plur. *aud-iāmus.**aud-iatis.**aud-iant.*

Imperfect.

Sing. *aud-iēbam*, I was hearing, or I heard.*aud-iēbās.**aud-iebat.*Plur. *aud-iēbāmus.**aud-iēbātis.**aud-iebant.*Sing. *aud-irem*, I might hear.*aud-irēs.**aud-iret.*Plur. *aud-irēmus.**aud-iretis.**aud-irent.*

Future.

Sing. *aud-iam*, I shall hear.*aud-iēs.**aud-iet.*Plur. *aud-iēmus.**aud-iētis.**aud-ient.*

Perfect.

Sing. *aud-ivi*, I have heard, or I heard.*aud-ivisti.**aud-ivit.*Plur. *aud-ivimus.**aud-ivistis.**aud-ivērunt (e).*Sing. *aud-ivērim*, I may have heard.*aud-iveris.**aud-iverit.*Plur. *aud-iverimus.**aud-iveritis.**aud-iverint.*

Pluperfect.

Sing. *aud-ivēram*, I had heard.*aud-iverās.**aud-iverat.*Plur. *aud-iverāmus.**aud-iveratis.**aud-iverant.*Sing. *aud-ivissem*, I might have heard.*aud-ivissēs.**aud-ivisset.*Plur. *aud-ivissēmus.**aud-ivissētis.**aud-ivissent.*

Second Future, or Future Perfect.

Sing. *aud-ivēro*, I shall have heard.*aud-iveris.**aud-iverit.*Plur. *aud-iverimus.**aud-iveritis.**aud-iverint.*

IMPERATIVE.

Present, Sing. <i>aud-i</i> , hear thou.	Plur. <i>aud-ite</i> , hear ye.
Future, Sing. <i>aud-ito</i> , thou shalt hear. <i>aud-ito</i> , he shall hear.	Plur. <i>aud-istis</i> , ye shall hear. <i>aud-unto</i> , they shall hear.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. and Imperf. *aud-ire*, to hear.
 Perf and Pluperf. *aud-ivisse*, to have heard.
 Future, *aud-iturum esse*, to be about to hear.

GERUND.

Gen. *aud-iendi*; Dat. *aud-iendo*; Acc. *aud-iendum*; Abl. *aud-iendo*.

SUPINE.

aud-itum; *aud-itu*.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. & Imperf. *aud-iens*, hearing.
 Future, *aud-iturus*, about to hear.

[§ 158.] II. PASSIVE VOICE.

First Conjugation.

INDICATIVE.

Sing. *Am-or*, I am loved.
am-āris (e).
am-atur.
 Plur. *am-amur*.
am-amini.
am-antur.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

Sing. *Am-er*, I may be loved.
am-ēris (e).
am-etur.
 Plur. *am-emur*.
am-ementi.
am-entur.

Imperfect.

Sing. <i>am-ābar</i> , I was being loved, or I was loved. <i>am-abūris</i> (e). <i>am-abatur</i> .	Sing. <i>am-ārer</i> , I might be loved. <i>am-arēris</i> (e). <i>am-aretur</i> .
Plur. <i>am-abamur</i> . <i>am-abamini</i> . <i>am-abantur</i> .	Plur. <i>am-aremur</i> . <i>am-arenti</i> . <i>am-arentur</i> .

INDICATIVE.

Future.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Sing. *am-ābor*, I shall be loved.*am-abēris* (e).*am-abitur*.Plur. *am-abimur*.*am-abimini*.*am-abuntur*.

Perfect.

Sing. *am-ātus* (a, um) *sum*, I have
been loved, or I was loved.*am-atus es*.*am-atus est*.Plur. *am-ati* (ae, a) *sumus*.*am-ati estis*.*am-ati sunt*.Sing. *am-ātus* (a, um) *sim*, I may
have been loved.*am-atus sis*.*am-atus sit*.Plur. *am-ati* (ae, a) *simus*.*am-ati sitis*.*am-ati sint*.

Pluperfect.

Sing. *am-ātus* (a, um) *eram*, I had
been loved.*am-atus eras*.*am-atus erat*.Plur. *am-ati* (ae, a) *eramus*.*am-ati eratis*.*am-ati erant*.Sing. *am-ātus* (a, um) *essem*, I might
have been loved.*am-atus esses*.*am-atus esset*.Plur. *am-ati* (ae, a) *essemus*.*am-ati essetis*.*am-ati essent*.

Second Future, or Future Perfect.

Sing. *am-ātus* (a, um) *ero*, I shall have been loved.*am-atus eris*.*am-atus erit*.Plur. *am-ati* (ae, a) *erimus*.*am-ati eritis*.*am-ati erunt*.

IMPERATIVE.

Present, Sing. *am-are*, be thou loved.Plur. *am-amini*, be ye loved.Future, Sing. *am-ator*, thou shalt be loved.*am-ator*, he shall be loved.Pl. *am-aminor*, ye shall be loved.*am-antor*, they shall be loved.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. and Imperf. (of a passive state still going on), *am-ari*, to be loved.Perf. and Pluperf. (of a state completed), *am-ātum* (am, um) *esse*, to
have been loved.Future, *am-ātum iri*, to be about to be loved.

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect, *am-ātus*, a, um, loved.In *du* (commonly called Future, or Future of Necessity), *am-andus*, a,
um, deserving or requiring to be loved.

Second Conjugation.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

Sing. *Mon-eor*, I am advised.
mon-ēris (e).
mon-etur.
 Plur. *mon-emur.*
mon-emini.
mon-entur.

Sing. *Mon-ear*, I may be advised.
mon-eāris (e).
mon-eatur.
 Plur. *mon-eamur.*
mon-eamini.
mon-eantur.

Imperfect.

Sing. *mon-ēbar*, I was being advised, or I was advised.
mon-ebāris (e).
mon-ebatur.
 Plur. *mon-ebamur.*
mon-ebamini.
mon-ebantur.

Sing. *mon-ērer*, I might be advised.
mon-erēris (e).
mon-eretur.
 Plur. *mon-eremur.*
mon-eremini.
mon-erentur.

Future.

Sing. *mon-ēbor*, I shall be advised.
mon-ebēris (e).
mon-ebitur.
 Plur. *mon-ebimur.*
mon-ebimini.
mon-ebuntur.

Perfect.

Sing. *mon-ītus (a, um) sum*, I have been advised, or I was advised.
mon-ītus es.
mon-ītus est.
 Plur. *mon-īti (ae, a) sumus.*
mon-īti estis.
mon-īti sunt.

Sing. *mon-ītus (a, um) sim*, I may have been advised.
mon-ītus sis.
mon-ītus sit.
 Plur. *mon-īti (ae, a) simus.*
mon-īti sitis.
mon-īti sint.

Pluperfect.

Sing. *mon-ītus (a, um) eram*, I had been advised.
mon-ītus eras.
mon-ītus erat.
 Plur. *mon-īti (ae, a) eramus.*
mon-īti eratis.
mon-īti erant.

Sing. *mon-ītus (a, um) essem*, I should have been advised.
mon-ītus esses.
mon-ītus esset.
 Plur. *mon-īti (ae, a) essemus.*
mon-īti essetis.
mon-īti essent.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE,

Second Future, or Future Perfect.

Sing. *mon-itus* (*a, um*) *ero*, I shall have been advised.*mon-itus eris.**mon-itus erit.*Plur. *mon-iti* (*ae, a*) *erimus.**mon-iti eritis.**mon-iti erunt.*

IMPERATIVE.

Present, Sing. *mon-ĕre*, be thou advised. Plur. *mon-eminī*, be ye advised.Future, Sing. *mon-ĕtor*, thou shalt be advised. Plur. *mon-eminor*, ye shall be advised.*mon-ĕtor*, he shall be, &c.*mon-entor*, they shall be, &c.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. and Imperf. *mon-eri*, to be advised.Perf. and Pluperf. *mon-itum* (*am, um*) *esse*, to have been advised.Future, *mon-itum iri*, to be about to be advised.

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect, *mon-itus*, advised.In *dus* (commonly called Future, or Future of Necessity), *mon-endus*, deserving or requiring to be advised.*Third Conjugation.*

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

Sing. *Leg-or*, I am read.*leg-ĕris* (*e*).*leg-itur.*Plur. *leg-imur.**leg-imini.**leg-untur.*Sing. *Leg-ar*, I may be read.*leg-āris* (*e*).*leg-atur.*Plur. *leg-amur.**leg-amini.**leg-antur.*

Imperfect.

Sing. *leg-ĕbar*, I was being read,
or I was read.*leg-ebāris* (*e*).*leg-ebatur.*Plur. *leg-ebamur.**leg-ebamini.**leg-ebantur.*Sing. *leg-ĕrer*, I might be read.*leg-erĕris* (*e*).*leg-eretur.*Plur. *leg-eremur.**leg-eremini.**leg-erentur.*

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Future.

Sing. *leg-ar*, I shall be read.*leg-ēris* (e).*leg-ētur*.Plur. *leg-ēmur*.*leg-ēmini*.*leg-entur*.

Perfect.

Sing. *lec-tus* (a, um) *sum*, I have been read, or I was read.*lec-tus es*.*lec-tus est*.Plur. *lec-ti* (ae, a) *sumus*.*lec-ti estis*.*lec-ti sunt*.Sing. *lec-tus* (a, um) *sim*, I may have been read.*lec-tus sis*.*lec-tus sit*.Plur. *lec-ti* (ae, a) *simus*.*lec-ti sitis*.*lec-ti sint*.

Pluperfect.

Sing. *lec-tus* (a, um) *eram*, I had been read.*lec-tus eras*.*lec-tus erat*.Plur. *lec-ti* (ae, a) *eramus*.*lec-ti eratis*.*lec-ti erant*.Sing. *lec-tus* (a, um) *essem*, I should have been read.*lec-tus esses*.*lec-tus esset*.Plur. *lec-ti* (ae, a) *essemus*.*lec-ti essetis*.*lec-ti essent*.

Second Future, or Future Perfect.

Sing. *lec-tus* (a, um) *ero*, I shall have been read.*lec-tus eris*.*lec-tus erit*.Plur. *lec-ti* *erimus*.*lec-ti eritis*.*lec-ti erunt*.

IMPERATIVE.

Present, Sing. *leg-ēre*, be thou read.Plur. *leg-imini*, be ye read.Future, Sing. *leg-itor*, thou shalt be read.Plur. *leg-iminor*, ye shall be read.*leg-itor*, he shall be read.*leg-untor*, they shall be read.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. and Imperf. *leg-i*, to be read.Perf. and Pluperf. *lec-tum* (am, um) *esse*, to have been read.Future, *lec-tum iri*, to be about to be read.

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect, *lec-tus*, read.In *dus* (commonly called Future, or Future of Necessity), *leg-endus*, deserving or requiring to be read.

Fourth Conjugation.

INDICATIVE.

- Sing. *Aud-ior*, I am heard.
aud-īris (e).
aud-itur.
 Plur. *aud-īmur*.
aud-imini.
aud-iuntur.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

- Sing. *Aud-iar*, I may be heard.
aud-iāris (e).
aud-iaur.
 Plur. *aud-iamur*.
aud-iamini.
aud-iantur.

Imperfect.

- Sing. *aud-iēbar*, I was being heard, or I was heard.
aud-iebāris (e).
aud-iebatur.
 Plur. *aud-iebamur*.
aud-iebamini.
aud-iebantur.
 Sing. *aud-īrer*, I might be heard.
aud-irēris (e).
aud-iretur.
 Plur. *aud-iremur*.
aud-iremini.
aud-irentur.

Future.

- Sing. *aud-iar*, I shall be heard.
aud-iēris (e).
aud-iētur.
 Plur. *aud-iēmur*.
aud-iemini.
aud-ientur.

Perfect.

- Sing. *aud-itus* (a, um) *sum*, I have been heard, or I was heard.
aud-itus es.
aud-itus est.
 Plur. *aud-iti* (ae, a) *sumus*.
aud-iti estis.
aud-iti sunt.
 Sing. *aud-itus* (a, um) *sim*, I may have been heard.
aud-itus sis.
aud-itus sit.
 Plur. *aud-iti* (ae, a) *simus*.
aud-iti sitis.
aud-iti sint.

Pluperfect.

- Sing. *aud-itus* (a, um) *eram*, I had been heard.
aud-itus eras.
aud-itus erat.
 Plur. *aud-iti* (ae, a) *eramus*.
aud-iti eratis.
aud-iti erant.
 Sing. *aud-itus* (a, um) *essem*, I might have been heard.
aud-itus esses.
aud-itus esset.
 Plur. *aud-iti* (ae, a) *essemus*.
aud-iti essetis.
aud-iti essent.

Second Future, or Future Perfect.

Sing. *aud-itus* (*a, um*) *ero*, I shall have been heard.*aud-itus eris.**aud-itus erit.*Plur. *aud-iti* (*ae, a*) *erimus.**aud-iti eritis.**aud-iti erunt.*

IMPERATIVE.

Present, Sing. *aud-ire*, be thou heard.Plur. *aud-imini*, be ye heard.Future, Sing. *aud-itor*, thou shalt be heard.Plur. *aud-iminor*, ye shall be heard. [be, &c.*aud-itor*, he shall be heard.*aud-iuntor*, they shall,

INFINITIVE.

Pres. and Imperf. *aud-iri*, to be heard.Perf. and Pluperf. *aud-itum* (*am, um*) *esse*, to have been heard.Future, *aud-itum iri*, to be about to be heard.

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect, *aud-itus*, heard.In *dus* (commonly called Future, or Future of Necessity), *aud-iendus*, deserving or requiring to be heard.

III. DEPONENTS.

[§ 159.] The conjugation of deponents differs from the passive only by the fact that it has both the participles of the active and of the passive voice, that is, for all the three states of an action: that in *ns* for an action not completed; that in *us, a, um* for an action completed; and that in *urus, a, um* for one about to take place. The fourth participle in *ndus* with a passive signification is an irregularity, and is used only in those deponents which have a transitive signification; e. g. *hortandus*, one who should be exhorted. Of deponents which have an intransitive meaning, e. g. *loqui*, this participle is used only sometimes, chiefly in the neuter gender (often, but erroneously, called the gerund), and in a somewhat different sense, e. g. *loquendum est*, there is a necessity for speaking. It will be sufficient in the following table to give the first persons of each tense, for there is no difficulty, except that these verbs with a passive form have an active meaning.

A. INDICATIVE.

1st Conjug. 2d Conjug. 3d Conjug. 4th Conjug.

Present.

S. *hort-or*, I exhort. *ver-eor*, I fear. *sequ-or*, I follow. *bland-ior*, I flatter.
 P. *hort-amur*. *ver-emur*. *sequ-imur*. *bland-imur*.

Imperfect.

S. *hort-abar*. *ver-ebar*. *sequ-ebar*. *bland-iebar*.
 P. *hort-abamur*. *ver-ebamur*. *sequ-ebamur*. *bland-iebamur*.

First Future.

S. *hort-abor*. *ver-ebor*. *sequ-ar*. *bland-iar*.
 P. *hort-abimur*. *ver-ebimur*. *sequ-ēmur*. *bland-iēmur*.

Perfect.

S. *hort-atus* (a, um) *sum*. *ver-itus* (a, um) *sum*. *secū-tus* (a, um) *sum*. *bland-itus* (a, um) *sum*.
 P. *hort-ati* (ae, a) *sumus*. *ver-iti* (ae, a) *sumus*. *secū-ti* (ae, a) *sumus*. *bland-iti* (ae, a) *sumus*.

Pluperfect.

S. *hort-atus* (a, um) *eram*. *ver-itus* (a, um) *eram*. *secu-tus* (a, um) *eram*. *bland-itus* (a, um) *eram*.
 P. *hort-ati* (ae, a) *eramus*. *ver-iti* (ae, a) *eramus*. *secu-ti* (ae, a) *eramus*. *bland-iti* (ae, a) *eramus*.

Future Perfect.

S. *hort-atus* (a, um) *ero*. *ver-itus* (a, um) *ero*. *secu-tus* (a, um) *ero*. *bland-itus* (a, um) *ero*.
 P. *hort-ati* (ae, a) *erimus*. *ver-iti* (ae, a) *erimus*. *secu-ti* (ae, a) *erimus*. *bland-iti* (ae, a) *erimus*.

B. SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

S. *hort-or*. *ver-eor*. *sequ-ar*. *bland-iar*.
 P. *hort-emur*. *ver-eamur*. *sequ-amur*. *bland-iamur*.

Imperfect.

S. *hort-ārer*. *ver-ērer*. *sequ-ērer*. *bland-irer*.
 P. *hort-āremur*. *ver-ēremur*. *sequ-ēremur*. *bland-iremur*.

Perfect.

S. *hort-atus* (a, um) *sim*. *ver-itus* (a, um) *sim*. *secu-tus* (a, um) *sim*. *bland-itus* (a, um) *sim*.
 P. *hort-ati* (ae, a) *simus*. *ver-iti* (ae, a) *simus*. *secu-ti* (ae, a) *simus*. *bland-iti* (ae, a) *simus*.

1st Conjug.	2d Conjug.	3d Conjug.	4th Conjug.
Pluperfect.			
S. <i>hort-atus</i> (a, um) <i>essem.</i>	<i>ver-itus</i> (a, um) <i>essem.</i>	<i>secu-tus</i> (a, um) <i>essem.</i>	<i>bland-itus</i> (a, um) <i>essem.</i>
P. <i>hort-ati</i> (ae, a) <i>essemus.</i>	<i>ver-iti</i> (ae, a) <i>essemus.</i>	<i>secu-ti</i> (ae, a) <i>essemus.</i>	<i>bland-iti</i> (ae, a) <i>essemus.</i>

C. IMPERATIVE.

Present.

S. 2. <i>hort-are.</i>	<i>ver-ĕre.</i>	<i>sequ-ĕre.</i>	<i>bland-ĕre.</i>
P. 2. <i>hort-amini.</i>	<i>ver-emini.</i>	<i>sequ-imini.</i>	<i>bland-imini.</i>

Future.

S. 2. <i>hort-ator.</i>	<i>ver-ĕ'or.</i>	<i>sequ-itor.</i>	<i>bland-itor.</i>
3. <i>hort-ator.</i>	<i>ver-ĕtor.</i>	<i>sequ-itor.</i>	<i>bland-itor.</i>
P. 2. (is wanting, but is supplied by the Future Indicative.)			
3. <i>hort-antor.</i>	<i>ver-entor.</i>	<i>sequ-antor.</i>	<i>bland-iantor.</i>

D. INFINITIVE.

Present and Imperfect.

<i>hort-ari.</i>	<i>ver-ĕri.</i>	<i>sequ-i.</i>	<i>bland-iri.</i>
------------------	-----------------	----------------	-------------------

Perfect and Pluperfect.

<i>hort-atum</i> (am, um) <i>esse.</i>	<i>ver-itum</i> (am, um) <i>esse.</i>	<i>secu-tum</i> (am, um) <i>esse.</i>	<i>bland-itum</i> (am, um) <i>esse.</i>
--	---------------------------------------	---------------------------------------	---

Future.

<i>hort-aturum</i> (am, um) <i>esse.</i>	<i>ver-iturum</i> (am, um) <i>esse.</i>	<i>secu-turum</i> (am, um) <i>esse.</i>	<i>bland-iturum</i> (am, um) <i>esse.</i>
--	---	---	---

E. GERUND.

Gen. <i>hort-andi.</i>	<i>ver-endi.</i>	<i>sequ-endi.</i>	<i>bland-iendi.</i>
Dat. <i>hort-ando.</i>	<i>ver-endo.</i>	<i>sequ-endo.</i>	<i>bland-iendo.</i>
Acc. <i>hort-andum.</i>	<i>ver-endum.</i>	<i>sequ-endum.</i>	<i>bland-iendum.</i>
Abl. <i>hort-ando.</i>	<i>ver-endo.</i>	<i>sequ-endo.</i>	<i>bland-iendo.</i>

F. PARTICIPLES.

Present and Imperfect.

<i>hort-ans.</i>	<i>ver-ens.</i>	<i>sequ-ens.</i>	<i>bland-iens.</i>
------------------	-----------------	------------------	--------------------

Perfect and Pluperfect.

<i>hort-atus, a, um.</i>	<i>ver-itus, a, um.</i>	<i>secu-tus, a, um.</i>	<i>bland-itus, a, um.</i>
--------------------------	-------------------------	-------------------------	---------------------------

Future.

<i>hort-aturus, a, um.</i>	<i>ver-iturus, a, um.</i>	<i>secu-turus, a, um.</i>	<i>bland-iturus, a, um.</i>
----------------------------	---------------------------	---------------------------	-----------------------------

1st Conjug.	2d Conjug.	3d Conjug.	4th Conjug.
Future, with Passive Signification.			
<i>hort-andus, a, um.</i>	<i>ver-endus, a, um.</i>	<i>sequ-endus, a, um.</i>	<i>bland-iendus, a, um.</i>

G. SUPINE.

1. <i>hort-atum.</i>	<i>ver-itum.</i>	<i>secū-tum.</i>	<i>bland-itum.</i>
2. <i>hort-atu.</i>	<i>ver-itu.</i>	<i>secū-tu.</i>	<i>bland-itu.</i>

CHAP. XLIII.

REMARKS ON THE CONJUGATIONS.

[§ 160.] 1. IN the terminations *avi*, *evi*, and *ivi* of the tenses expressing a completed action, viz. of the perfect and pluperfect, indicative and subjunctive, and of the future perfect, as well as of the infinitive perfect active, a syncopation often takes place.

a) In the first conjugation the *v* is dropped and the vowels *a-i* and *a-e* are contracted into a long *a*. This is the case wherever *avi* is followed by an *s*, or *ave* by an *r*; e. g. *amavisti*, *amâsti*; *amavissem*, *amâssem*; *amavisse*, *amâsse*; *amaverunt*, *amârunt*; *amaverim*, *amârim*; *amaveram*, *amâram*; *amavero*, *amâro*, &c.

b) The termination *evi* in the second and third conjugations is treated in the same manner; e. g. *neo*, I spin, *nevi*, *nêsti*, *nêstis*, *nêrunt*. Thus we often find *complêssem*, *delêram*, and in the third conjugation *consuerunt* for *consueverunt*, *quîêssem*, *decrêssem*, *decrêsse* for *decrevisse*. The termination *ovi* however is contracted only in *novi*, *novisse*, with its compounds, and in the compounds of *moveo*, *movi*; e. g. *norunt*, *nôsse*, *cognôram*, *cognôro*, *commôssem*.

c) In the fourth conjugation *ivi* is frequently contracted before *s*; hence instead of *audivisse*, *audivisti*, *audivissem*, we find *audîsse*, *audîsti*, *audîssem*. In those forms where *i* and *e* meet, the *v* is frequently thrown out; e. g. *audierunt*, *desierunt*, *definieram*, *quaesieram*.

[§ 162.] 2. The *e* in the termination of the imperfect of the fourth conjugation is sometimes thrown out, e. g. *nutribam*, *lenibam*, *scibam*, *largibar*, for *nutriebam*, *leniebam*, *sciebam*, *largiebam*,—and the future of the same conjugation

is formed in *ibo* instead of *iam*; e. g. *scibo*, *servibo*, for *sciam*, *serviam*; but these contractions are antiquated, and are retained only in the irregular verb *ire*.

[§ 163.] 3. For the third person plural of the perfect active in *erunt* there is in all the conjugations another form, *ēre*.

[§ 164.] 4. The four verbs *dicere*, *ducere*, *facere*, and *ferre*, usually reject the *e* in the imperative; hence we say *dic*, *duc*, *fac*, *fer*, and so also in their compounds, as *educ*, *effer*, *perfer*, *calefac*, with the exception of those compounds of *facere* which change *a* into *i*; e. g. *confice*, *perfice*.

Of *scire* the imperatives *sci* and *scite* are not in use, and their place is supplied by the imperative future *scito*, *scitote*.

[§ 165.] 5. The quantity of the *i* in the terminations *rimus* and *ritis*, in the future perfect and the perfect subjunctive, is uncertain. The poets frequently use it long.

[§ 166.] 6. Instead of the termination *ris* in the second person in the passive, *re* is also used, especially in the present and imperfect subjunctive, and in the imperfect and future indicative, as *amere*, *moneare*, *loquare*, *audiare*; *amarere*, *amabare*, *amabère*, *monerère*, *loquerère*, &c. But, generally speaking, these forms do not occur in the present indicative.

[§ 167.] 7. The participle future passive of the third and fourth conjugations (including the deponents) is formed also in *undus* instead of *endus*, especially when *i* precedes. In the verb *potior*, *potiundus* is the usual form.

[§ 168.] 8. The *conjugatio periphrastica*, or the conjugation by circumlocution, is formed by means of the two participles future, in the active and passive, and of the verb *esse*, for a conjugation made up of the participle present and *esse* does not occur in Latin, (e. g. *amans sum* would be the same as *amo*,) and the combinations of the participle perfect passive with *sum*, *sim*, *eram*, *essem*, *ero*, *esse*, are considered as a part of the ordinary conjugation of a verb in the passive voice, as for example *amatus eram*, which is the pluperfect passive of *amo*. But it must be observed, that in the conjugation of the passive the perfects of *esse* are sometimes used instead of the above-mentioned forms *sum*, *eram*, *ero*, &c. *Amatum fuisse*, therefore, is equal to *amatum esse* as an infinitive perfect passive; *amatus fueram* is equivalent to *amatus eram*, and *amatus fuero* to *amatus ero*. *Amatus fuero*, in particular, is used so frequently for *amatus ero*, that it may be looked upon as the ordinary future perfect passive.

[§ 169.] But by the combination of the participle future active with the tenses of *esse*, a really new conjugation is formed, denoting an intention to do something. This intention may arise either from the person's own will, or from outward circumstances, so that, e. g., *scripturus sum* may either mean "I have a mind to write," or "I am to write," or "I have to write." The former sense is also expressed by "I am on the point of writing," or "I am about to write," and this signification is carried through all the tenses of *esse*.

Scripturus sum, I am about to write. *Scripturus fui*, I was or have been about to write.

Scripturus eram, I was about to write. *Scripturus fuerum*, I had been about to write.

Scripturus ero, I shall be about to write. *Scripturus fuero*, I shall have been about to write.

The subjunctive occurs in the same manner.

Scripturus sim.

Scripturus fuerim.

Scripturus essem.

Scripturus fuissem.

Scripturus sim and *scripturus essem* serve at the same time as subjunctives to the future *scribam*; but *scripturus fuerim* and *scripturus fuissem* are not used as subjunctives to the future perfect, *scripsero*. The infinitive *scripturum fuisse* denotes an action to which a person was formerly disposed, and answers to the English "I should have written," so that in hypothetical sentences it supplies the place of an infinitive of the pluperfect subjunctive; e. g. *Pollio Asinius Caesarem existimat suos rescripturum et correcturum commentarios fuisse*, that is, that he would have re-written and corrected, if he had lived longer. The infinitive with *esse* likewise originally denotes an intention; *scripturum esse*, to intend writing, or to be on the point of writing; but it then assumes, in ordinary language, the nature of a simple infinitive future, for which reason it is incorporated in the table of conjugations. For the particulars, see the Syntax, Chap. LXXVI.

[§ 170.] The participle future passive expresses (in the nominative) the necessity of suffering an action, and in combination with the tenses of *esse* it likewise forms a new and complete conjugation (*tempora necessitatis*); e. g. *amandus sum*, I must be loved; *amandus eram*, it was necessary for me to be loved, and so on with all the tenses of *esse*. Its neuter combined with *esse* and the dative of a person ex-

presses the necessity of performing the action on the part of that person, and may likewise be carried through all the tenses, as,

<i>mihi, tibi, illi scribendum est,</i>	<i>mihi scribendum fuit,</i>	I have
I, thou, he must write.	been, or was obliged to write.	
<i>mihi scribendum erat,</i>	<i>mihi scribendum fuerat,</i>	I had
obliged to write.	been obliged to write.	
<i>mihi scribendum erit,</i>	<i>mihi scribendum fuerit,</i>	I shall
be obliged to write.	have been obliged to write.	

And so also in the subjunctive and infinitive; *mihi scribendum esse*; *mihi scribendum fuisse*.

LIST OF VERBS

WHICH ARE

IRREGULAR IN THE FORMATION OF THEIR
PERFECT AND SUPINE.

CHAP. XLIV.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

[§ 171.] THE irregularity of the verbs of this conjugation consists chiefly in their taking *ui* in the perfect, and *itum* in the supine, like verbs of the second; the *i*, however, is sometimes thrown out. It will be seen from the following list that some verbs, in some form or other, again incline towards a regular formation of their tenses.

Crēpo, crepui, crepītum, make a noise, rattle, creak.

Compounds: *concrēpo*, make an intense noise; *discrēpo*, differ; *incrēpo*, chide, rattle.

Cūbo, cubui, cubītum, cubare, lie.

Compounds: *accūbo*, recline at table; *excūbo*, keep watch; *incubo*, lie upon; *recubo*, lie upon the back; *secubo*, lie apart, and some others.

When the compounds take an *m* before *b*, they are conjugated after the third, but keep their perfect and supine in *ui*, *itum*. (See § 191.)

Domo, *ui*, *itum*, tame, subdue.

Edōmo and *perdōmo* strengthen the meaning.

Sono, *ui*, *itum*, resound. (Participle *sonaturus*.)

Consōno, agree in sound; *dissōno*, disagree in sound; *persōno*, sound through; *resōno*, resound.

Tōno, *ui*, (*itum*), thunder.

Attōno (active), strike with astonishment; *intōno*, commonly intransitive, make a sound; *circumtōno*.

Vēto, *ui*, *itum*, forbid.

Frico, *fricui*, *fricatum*, and *frictum*, rub.

Defrico, *infrico*, *perfrico*, *refrico*, are conjugated in the same way.

Mico, *ui*, (without supine,) dart out, glitter.

Emico, *ui*, *atum*, dart forth rays; but *dimico*, fight, makes *dimicavi*, *atum*.

Seco, *ui*, *sectum*, cut. (Part. *secaturus*.)

Deseco, *reseco*, cut off; *disseco*, cut in parts.

Jūvo, *jūvi*, support, assist. (Part. *juvaturus*.)

So also the compound *adjūvo*, *adjūvi*, *adjūtum*, participle *adjuturus* and *adjuvaturus*.

Lāvo, *lāvi*, *lavatum*, *lautum*, *lotum*, *lavare*, wash, or bathe.

Nēco, kill, is regular; but from it are formed, with the same meaning, *enēco*, *avi*, *atum*, and *enecui*, *enectum*; the participle is usually *enectus*.

From *Plico*, fold, are formed *applicō*, *avi*, *atum*, and *ui*, *itum*; so *explico*, *avi*, *atum*, unfold, explain; *implico*, implicate. The perfect *ui* and the supine *atum* are most common. But those derived from nouns in *plex* form the perf. and sup. regularly: *supplicō*, *duplicō*, *multiplicō*.

Pōto, drink, is regular, except that the supine usually, instead of *potatum*, is *potum*, whence *potus*, which is both active and passive, having been drunk, and having drunk. Compounds, *appōtus*, active; and *epōtus*, passive.

Do, *dēdi*, *dātum*, *dāre*, give.

Circundo, surround; *pessundo*, ruin; *satisdo*, give security; *venundo*, sell; are formed like *do*. The other compounds *addo*, *condo*, *reddo*, belong to the third conjugation. (See § 187.)

Sto, stēti, stātum, stāre, stand.

The compounds have *īti* in the perfect; e. g. *adsto*, stand near; *consto*, consist of; *exsto*, exist or am visible; *insto*, insist; *obsto*, hinder; *persto*, persevere; *praesto*, surpass; *resto*, remain over and above. Only those compounded with a preposition of two syllables retain *ēti* in the perfect, viz. *antesto*, *circumsto*, *intersto*, *supersto*. The supine does not exist in all the compounds, but wherever it is found it is *ātum*. *Praesto* however has *praestitum* and *praestaturus*.

The active verbs *juro* and *coeno* have a participle with a passive form, but an active signification: *juratus* (with the compounds *conjuratus* and *injuratus*), one who has sworn; and *coenatus*, one who has dined.

CHAP. XLV.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

[§ 172.] THE irregularity of verbs of the second conjugation consists partly in their being defective in their forms, and partly in their forming the perfect and supine, or one of them, like verbs of the third conjugation. With regard to the first irregularity, there are a great many verbs in this conjugation which have no supine, that is, which not only have no participle perfect passive (which cannot be a matter of surprise, since their meaning does not admit of it), but also no participle future active. The regular form of the perfect is *ūi*, and of the supine *ītum*; but some verbs throw out the short *i* in the supine; and all verbs which in the present have a *v* before *eo* undergo a sort of contraction, since, e. g., we find *cāvi*, *cautum*, instead of *cāvui*, *cāvitum*, from *caveo*, but this can scarcely be considered as an irregularity, since *v* and *u* was only one letter with the Romans. Respecting the lengthening of the vowel in dissyllabic perfects, see § 18.

We shall subjoin a list of the regular verbs of this conjugation as exercises for the beginner, confining ourselves to the form of the present.

Cāleo, am warm.
Inchoat. calesco.
Cāreo, am without.
Debo, owe.

Dōleo, feel pain.
Hābeo, have
 Compounds: *adhibeo*, *cohabeo*,
 &c., a being changed into *i*.

Jūceo, lie; comp. *adjaceo*.*Līceo*, am to be sold.

Not to be confounded with the

impersonal *licet*, it is permitted.

See Chap. LX.

Mēreo, merit. ©*Mōneo*, admonish.*Nōceo*, injure.*Pāreo*, obey (appear).Compound: *appāreo*, appear.*Plūceo*, please.*Praegeo*, offer, afford.*Tāceo*, am silent.*Terreo*, terrify.*Vāleo*, am well.

To these regular verbs we may first add: —

[§ 173.] a) *Those which make the Perfect in vi instead of vui.**Cāveo*, *cāvi*, *cautum*, *cavere*, take care.*Fāveo*, *fāvi*, *fautum*, am favourable.*Fōveo*, *fōvi*, *fotum*, cherish.*Mōveo*, *mōvi*, *mōtum*, move.*Commōveo* and *permōveo* strengthen the meaning; *anōveo* and *submōveo*, remove; *admōveo*, bring to; *promōveo*, bring forwards; *remōveo*, bring back, or remove.*Pāveo*, *pāvi*, (no supine,) dread.The compound inchoat. *expavesco*, *expavi*, is more commonly used, especially in the perfect, than the simple verb.*Vōveo*, *vōvi*, *vōtum*, vow; *devoveo*, devote with imprecation.*Ferveo*, *fervi*, and *ferbui*, (no supine,) glow, am hot.The inchoatives of the third conjugation *effervesco*, *reservesco*, and *confervesco*, have more frequently *bui* in the perfect.*Connīveo*, *nīvi*, and *nīxi*, (no supine,) close the eyes.[§ 174.] b) *Those which make the Perfect in ēvi instead of ui.**Deleo*, *delēvi*, *delētum*, extinguish, destroy.*Fleo*, *flevi*, *fletum*, weep.*Neo*, *nevi*, *netum*, spin.

(From *Pleo*), *compleo*, *complevi*, *completum*, fill up; *expleo*, *impleo*.

(From *ōleo*, grow,) we have the compounds: *aboleo*, abolish; *abolesco*, cease; *adoleo*, *adolesco*, grow up; *exoleo* or *exolesco* and *obsoleo* or *obsolesco*, grow obsolete; all of which have *ēvi* in the perfect; but the supine of *aboleo* is *abolitum*, of *adolesco*, *adultum*, and the rest have *ētum*: *exoletum*, *obsoletum*. Besides *abolitum*, however, there exist only the adjectives *adultus*, *exoletus*, *obsoletus*.

[§ 175.] *c) Those which throw out the short i in the Supine.*

Dōceo, *docui*, *doctum*, teach.

Compounds: *edocceo* and *perdocceo*, strengthen the meaning; *dedocceo*, teach otherwise.

Tēneo, *tenui*, (*tentum*, rare,) hold, keep.

Abstīneo, abstain; *attīneo*, keep occupied by or at a thing; *contīneo*, keep together; *detīneo*, keep back; *distīneo*, keep asunder; *retīneo*, retain; *sustīneo*, keep upright. All these have in the supine *tentum*. *Pertīneo*, belong to, has no supine.

Misceo, *miscui*, *mixtum* or *mistum*, mix.

Compounds are, *admisceo*, *commisceo*, *immisceo*, *permisceo*.

Torreo, *torrui*, *tostum*, roast.

To these we may add—

Censeo, *censui*, *censum* (participle also *censitus*), estimate, believe.

Percenseo, enumerate, without supine. Of *accenseo*, reckon with, we find *accensus*; of *succenseo*, am angry, *succensusus*; and *recenseo*, examine, makes both *recensum* and *recensitum*.

[§ 176.] *d) Those which make the Perfect regularly in ui, but have no Supine.*

Arceo, *arcui*, *arcere*, keep off.

But the compounds *coerceo*, *coerce*; *exerceo*, *exercise*; have a supine in *itum*.

Calleo, have a hard skin, am skilled in (*callidus*).

Candeo, shine, glow (*candidus*).

Egeo, want. Compound, *indigeo*.

(From *mineo*), *emineo*, stand forth.

Floreo, flourish.

Frondeo, have foliage; *effrondui*.

Horreo, shudder, am horrified (*horridus*).

Compounds: *abhorreo*, and a number of inchoatives, as *horresco*, *perhorresco*.

Languéo, am languid (*languidus*).

Lăteo, am concealed.

Compounds: *interluteo*, *perluteo*, *subluteo*.

Mădeo, am wet (*madidus*).

Niteo, shine (*nitidus*).

Compounds: *eniteo*, *interniteo*, *praeniteo*.

Oleo, smell.

Compounds: *aboleo* and *redoleo*, have the smell of; *suboleo*, smell a little.

Palleo, am pale.

Păteo, am open.

Rıgeo, am stiff (*rigidus*).

Rübeo, am red (*rubidus*).

Sıleo, am silent.

Sorbeo, *sorbui*, sip.

Compounds: *absorbeo* and *exsorbeo*.

Sordeo, am dirty (*sordidus*).

Splendeo, am splendid (*splendidus*).

Stüdeo, endeavour, study.

Stüpeo, am startled, astonished (*stupidus*).

Tımeo, fear (*timidus*).

Torpeo, am torpid.

Tümeo, swell, am swollen (*tumidus*).

Vıgeo, am animated.

Vireo, am green or flourish.

Besides these, there is a number of similar intransitive verbs which occur more rarely, and chiefly in the form of inchoatives. (See § 204.) Compare § 235. respecting their derivation from adjectives.

The following are really irregular verbs, and follow the analogy of the third conjugation : —

[§ 177.] 1. *Verbs which make the Perfect in si and the Supine in sum.*

Ardeo, arsi, arsum, ardere, burn.

Haereo, haesi, haesum, cleave.

Compounds: *adhaereo, cohaereo, inhaereo*.

Jūbeo, jussi, jussum, command.

Māneo, mansi, mansum, remain. (But *māno, as*, flow).

Permāneo (*permānes*), wait; *remaneo*, remain behind.

Mulceo, mulsi, mulsum, stroke, caress.

The compounds *demulceo* and *permulceo* strengthen the meaning.

Mulgeo, mulsi, mulsum, milk.

Rīdeo, risi, risum, laugh.

Compounds: *arrideo* (*arrides*), smile upon or please: *derideo* and *irrideo*, laugh at, scorn; *subrideo*, smile.

Suadeo, suasi, suasum, advise.

Dissuadeo, dissuade; *persuadeo*, persuade.

Tergeo, tersi, tersum, tergēre, wipe; is used also as a verb of the third conjugation: *tergo, tersi, tersum, tergēre*.

[§ 178.] 2. *Verbs which make the Perfect in si, but have no Supine.*

Algeo, alsi, algere, shiver with cold.

Fulgeo, fulsi, fulgere, shine, am bright.

Turgeo, tursi, swell.

Urgeo or *urgueo, ursi*, press.

3. *Verbs with the Perfect in si and the Supine in tum.*

Indulgeo, indulsi, indultum, indulge.

Torqueo, torsi, tortum, twist.

Compounds: *contorqueo*, twist together; *distorqueo*, twist away; *extorqueo*, wrest out or from.

4. *Verbs with the Perfect in xi and the Supine in tum.*

Augeo, auxi, auctum, increase.

Lūceo, luxi, lucere, shine; has no supine.

Lūgeo, luxi, lugere, mourn; has no supine.

Frīgeo, frīxi, frigere, am cold; has no supine.

[§ 179.] 5. *Verbs with the Perfect in i and the Supine in sum.*

Prandeo, prandi, pransum, dine. The participle *pransus* has an active signification: one who has dined.

Sēdeo, sēdi, sessum, sit.

Assideo (assides), sit by; *desideo*, sit down; *circumsedeo* or *circumsideo*, surround; *insideo*, sit upon; *supersedeo*, do without; *possideo*, possess; *dissideo*, dissent; *praesideo*, preside; *resideo*, settle down. The last three have no supine.

Vīdeo, vīdi, visum, see.

Invideo (invidēs), envy; *pervideo*, see through; *praevideo*, foresee; *provideo*, provide.

Strīdeo, strīdi, without supine.

6. *Verbs with a Reduplication in the Perfect.*

Mordeo, mōmordi, morsum, bite.

Pendeo, pēpendi, pensum, am suspended.

Dependeo, depend, and *impendeo*, soar above, am impending, lose the reduplication.

Spondeo, spōpōndi, sponsum, vow.

Despondeo, despondi, promise; *respondeo, respondi*, answer, are without the reduplication.

Tondeo, tōtōndi, tonsum, shear.

The compounds lose the reduplication, as *attondeo*, *detondeo*.

[§ 180.] 7. *Verbs without Perfect and Supine.*

Aveo, desire.

Calveo, am bald, (*calvus*).

Cāneo, am grey (*canus*).

Flāveo, am yellow (*flavus*).

Foeteo, stink (*foetidus*).

Hēbeo, am dull, stupid (*hebes*).

Hūmeo, am damp (*humidus*).

Līveo, am pale or envious (*lividus*).

(*Mīneo*) *immineo*, to be imminent, threatening. *Promīneo*,
am prominent.

Maereo, mourn (*maestus*).

Polleo, am strong.

Renīdeo, shine, smile.

Scāteo, gush forth (*Scatēre* in Lucretius).

Squāleo, am dirty (*squalidus*).

Vēgeo, am gay (*vegētus*).

Cieo, *ciēre*, is the same word as the rare and obsolete *cio*,
cire, stir up; both make the perfect *civi*, according to the
fourth conjugation; in the supine they differ in quantity,
cieo making *cĭtum*, and *cio*, *cĭtum*.

Note. In the compounds too, e. g. *concieo*, *excieo*, the forms of the
second and fourth conjugation cannot be separated; but in the signifi-
cation of "to call," the forms of the fourth are preferred, e. g. imperf.
cibam, *cirem*; infinit. *ciri*; the participles *concĭtus*, *excĭtus*, and *incĭtus*,
signify "excited;" whereas *excĭtus* means "called out." *Percieo* and
incieo retain the signification of "to excite;" but *accĭre*, to call towards,
summon or invite (of which the present indicative does not occur),
has only *accĭtus*. Derived from *cĭtum* are: *cĭto*, quick; the frequenta-
tive *cĭtare*, and hence *excĭto*, *incĭto*, and *suscĭto*.

[§ 181.] 8. *Semideponents.* (See above § 148.)

Audeo, *ausus sum*, venture. (Partic. future *ausurus*.)

The ancient future subjunctive *ausim*, *ausis*, *ausit*, *ausint*, are rem-
nants of the obsolete perfect *ausi*, and are contractions from *ausurim*.

Gaudeo, gavisus sum, rejoice.

Soleo, solitus sum, am accustomed (to do something).

The impersonal compound *assōlet*, signifies "it usually happens."

CHAP. XLVI.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

[§ 182.] In the list of verbs of this conjugation it is still more necessary, than in the preceding one, to include those verbs which, according to Chapter XL., form their perfect and supine regularly. We divide them into several classes according to the characteristic letter which precedes the *o* in the present.

1. Verbs which have a Vowel before *o* including those in *vo*.

The following have the Perfect and Supine regular :

Acūo, acūi, acūtum, sharpen.

Exacuo and *peracuo*, strengthen the meaning; *praeacuo*, sharpen at the end.

Arguo, accuse, convict of (perf. passive in the latter sense usually *convictus*, from *convincere*).

Coarguo, the same; *redarguo*, refute a charge.

Imbuo, to dip, imbue.

Induo, put on; *exuo*, strip off.

Luo (participle *luiturus*), pay, atone for.

Abluo and *eluo*, wash off; *polluo*, defile; *diluo*, refute; are derived from another *luo* (*lavo*) and all make the supine in *lūtum*.

Minuo, lessen.

Comminuo, deminuo, diminuo, inminuo, perminuo, strengthen the meaning.

(*Nuo*, *nod*, does not occur; from it are formed)

Abnuo, refuse; *annuo*, assent; *innuo*, allude, or refer to; *renuo*, decline; all of which have no supine; *abnuo* alone has a participle future, *abnuiturus*.

Ruo (supine *ruitum*—*ruiturus* at least is derived from it; *rūtum* occurs only in compounds), fall.

Dirūo, *dirūi*, *dirūtum*, destroy; *obruo*, overwhelm; *proruo*, rush forwards. *Corruo*, fall down, and *irruo*, rush on, have no supine.

Spuo, spit.

Conspuo, spit on; *despuo*, reject with disgust.

Statuo, establish.

Constituo and *instituo*, institute; *restituo*, re-establish; *substituo*, establish instead of; *destituo*, abandon.

Sternuo, sneeze (without supine); the frequentative *sternūto* is more commonly used.

Suo, sew.

Consuo, sew together; *dissuo* and *resuo*, unsew.

Tribuo, allot to.

Attribuo, the same; *distribuo*, divide; *contribuo*, contribute.

Solvo, *solvi*, *solūtum*, loosen.

Absolvo, acquit; *dissolvo*, dissolve; *exsolvo*, release; *persolvo*, pay.

Volvo, roll (frequentative *volūto*).

Evolvo, unroll; *insolvo*, roll up; *pervolvo*, read through.

The following are without a Supine :

Congruo, *congrui*, agree, and *ingruo*, penetrate. The simple verb does not exist.

Metuo, *metui*, fear. (*Timeo* is likewise without a supine.)

Pluo, *pluvi*, usually impersonal, it rains. Comp. *impluo*, *impluvi*, or *implui*. *Compluo* and *perpluo* do not occur in the perfect.

The following are irregular :

[§ 183.] *Cāpio*, *cēpi*, *captum*, *capere*, take hold of.

Accipio, receive; *excipio*, receive as a guest, succeed; *recipio*, recover; *suscipio*, undertake; *decipio*, deceive; *percipio*, comprehend; *praecipio*, give a precept.

Fācio, *fēci*, *factum*, do, make.

Arefacio, dry up; *assuefacio* and *consuefacio*, accustom; *calefacio* and *tepefacio*, warm; *frigefacio*, cool; *labefacio*, make to totter; *patefacio*,

open; *satisfacio*, satisfy. These have in the passive *-fio*, *-factus sum*, *-fieri*. But those which change *a* into *i* form their own passive in *-fior*, and make the supine in *-fectum*: *afficio*, affect; *conficio* and *perficio*, complete; *deficio*, fall off, am wanting; *interficio*, kill; *proficio*, make progress; *reficio*, revive, repair; *officio*, stand in the way, injure.

Other compounds of *facio* follow the first conjugation: *amplifico*, *sacrifico*, and the deponents *gratificor*, *ludificor*.

Jacio, jēci, jactum, throw.

The compounds change *ā* into *i*, and in the supine into *e*. *Abjicio*, throw away; *adjicio*, add; *deicio*, throw down; *ejicio*, throw out; *inijicio*, throw in; *objicio*, throw against; *reicio*, throw back; *transicio* or *trajicio*, throw or carry across.

[§ 184.] The following have *x* in the Perfect :

(From the obsolete *lacio*, entice, of which *lacto* is the frequentative), *allicio, exi, ectum*, allure; *illicio*, entice in; *pellicio*, lead astray; but *elicio* makes *elicui, elicitedum*, draw out.

(From *specio, xi, ctum*, see, of which the frequentative is *specto*) *aspicio, exi, ectum*, look on; *conspicio*, the same; *despicio*, look down, despise; *dispicio* and *perspicio*, understand; *inspicio*, look into; *respicio*, look back; *suspicio*, look up, reverence.

Fluo, fluxi, fluctum, flow.

Affluo, flow in; *confluo*, flow together; *effluo*, flow out; *interfluo*, flow between.

Struo, struxi, structum, build, pile.

Construo and *exstruo*, build up; *destruo*, pull down; *instruo*, set in order.

Vivo, vixi, victum, live.

[§ 185.] Other Irregularities.

Fōdio, fōdi, fossum, dig.

Effōdio, dig out; *confodio* and *perfodio*, dig, pierce through; *suffodio*, undermine.

Fūgio, fūgi, fugitum, flee.

Aufugio and *effugio*, flee away, escape, *confugio* and *perfugio*, take refuge.

Cūpio, -ivi, -itum, desire.

Discupio, percupio, concupio, strengthen the meaning.

Răpio, rapui, raptum, rob, snatch.

Arripio, arripui, arreptum, seize; *abripio* and *eripio*, snatch away; *deripio*, plunder; *surripio*, steal clandestinely.

Părio, pepëri, partum, bring forth. (But the particip. fut. act. *pariturus*.)

Quătio, (*quassi* is not found,) *quassum*, shake.

Concătio, ussi, ussum, shake violently; *discutio*, shake asunder; *excutio*, shake out, off (fig. examine); *incutio*, drive into; *percutio*, strike; *repercutio*, rebound.

Săpio, ivi, and ui, (no supine,) am wise.

Desăpio, am foolish; *resăpio*, have a taste of, or become wise again.

(From the obsolete present *coepio*,) *coepi* and *coeptus sum*, *coeptum*, (*coepere*,) have begun.

CHAP. XLVII.

[§ 186.] 2. VERBS IN *DO* AND *TO*.

The following are regular :

Claudo, clausi, clausum, claudere, close.

Conclūdo, shut up, conclude; *excludo* and *secludo*, shut out; *includo*, shut in.

Divīdo, divīsi, divīsum, divide.

Laedo, injure.

Allīdo, strike against; *illīdo*, strike upon; *collīdo*, strike together; *elīdo*, strike out.

Lūdo, sport.

Collūdo, play with; *allūdo*, play upon: *eludo*, *deludo*, and *illudo*, ridicule.

Plaudo, si, sum, clap.

Applaudo, applaud. The other compounds (with a different pronunciation) have *-ōdo*, *-ōsi*, *-ōsum*; as *explodo*, explode; *complodo*, clap the hands; *supplodo*, stamp with the feet.

Rādo, shave, scrape; so in *abrādo*, *circumrādo*, *derādo*, *erādo*; *corrādo*, scrape together.

Rōdo, gnaw.

Abrōdo and *derodo*, gnaw off; *arrodo*, nibble; *circumrodo*, nibble all round; *perrodo*, gnaw through.

Trūdo, thrust, with its compounds: *detrudo*, thrust down; *extrudo*, thrust out; *protrudo*, thrust forwards.

Vādo, (no perfect or supine,) go.

But *evādo*, *evasi*, *evasum*, escape; *invado*, attack; *pervado*, go through.

[§ 187.] The following are irregular:

a) *With a Reduplication in the Perfect.*

Cādo, *cecīdi*, *cāsum*, fall.

Of the compounds, these have a supine: *incīdo*, *inctīdi*, *incāsum*, fall in or upon; *occīdo*, set; *recīdo*, fall back. The rest have none; *concīdo*, sink together; *decīdo*, fall down; *excīdo*, fall out of; *accīdit*, it happens (used most commonly of a misfortune).

Caedo, *cecīdi*, *caesum*, cut.

Abscīdo, *abscīdi*, *abscisum*, cut off; *concīdo*, cut to pieces; *incīdo*, cut into; *occīdo*, kill; *recīdo*, cut away. So *decīdo*, *excīdo*, *praecīdo*, and others.

Pendo, *pependi*, *pensum*, weigh.

Appendo, *appendi*, *appensum*, weigh out to; *expendo*, spend, also consider, like *perpendo*; *suspendo*, hang from; *dependo*, pay; *impendo*, employ upon or in something.

Tendo, *tetendi*, *tensum*, and *tentum*, stretch.

Extendo, *ostendo*, *protendo*, and *retendo*, have both supines; but *ex-* and *protentum* are more frequent. The other compounds have only *tum* in the supine: *attendo* (sc. *animum*), attend; *contendo*, (sc. *me*), strive; *distendo*, separate or enlarge by stretching; *intendo*, strain; *obtendo* and *praetendo*, commonly used in the figurative sense of alleging; *subtendo*, stretch beneath,

Tundo, *tutūdi*, *tunsum*, and *tūsum*, beat, pound.

The compounds have only *tūsum*; *contundo*, *contūdi*, *contusum*, pound small; *extundo*, (figurative) elaborate; *obtundo* and *retundo*, blunt.

Crēdo, *credīdi*, *credītum*, believe,

Accrēdo, *accredīdi*, give credit to.

The compounds of *do*, except those mentioned in § 171.

Condo, *condīdi*, *condītum*, build, conceal; *abdo*, *abdīdi*, *abditum*, hide.

So *addo*, add; *dedo*, give up; *edo*, give out, publish; *perdo*, ruin, lose; *reddo*, give back, render; *trado*, deliver; *vendo*, sell. But *abscondo* appears in the perfect more frequently without the reduplication, *abscondi*, than with it, *abscondidi*. Instead of the passive, *veneo* is used (see § 215.), except the participles *venditus* and *vendendus*.

[§ 188.] *b) Making di in the Perfect, and sum in the Supine.*

Accendo, incendo, succendo, -cendi, -censum, light, kindle.

Cūdo, forge.

Defendo, defend, ward off.

Edo, eat. See § 212.

Exēdo and *comēdo, -ēdi, -ēsum*, (but also *comestus*), consume. *Ibid.*

Mando (perfect very rare), chew.

Offendo, offend.

Prehendo, seize; frequently contracted into *prendo*.

Apprehendo, comprehendo, lay hold of, (figurative) understand; *deprehendo*, detect, seize in the fact; *reprehendo*, blame.

Scando, climb.

Ascendo and *escendo*, climb up; *descendo*, descend; *conscendo* and *inscendo*, mount, embark.

Strido (also *strideo*), *stridi* (no supine), grate, make a harsh noise.

Fundo, fūdi, fūsum, pour.

Diffundo, pour out, spread abroad; *offundo*, pour over; *profundo*, waste; *affundo, confundo, effundo, infundo*.

[§ 189.] *c) Other Irregularities, especially that of a double s in the Supine.*

Cēdo, cessi, cessum, yield, go.

Abscēdo, go away; *accēdo*, go to; *antecedo*, surpass; *concedo*, give way; *decedo*, go away; *discedo*, separate myself; *excedo*, go out; *incedo*, march; *intercedo*, come between, interpose; *recedo*, retreat; *succedo*, come into one's place.

Findo, fidi, fissum, split.

Diffindo, diffidi, split asunder.

Scindo, scīdi, scissum, cut.

Conscindo, conscīdi, conscissum, tear to pieces ; e. g. *vestem, epistolam* ; *discindo, interscindo* (e. g. *pontem*), *perscindo*, and *proscindo* have similar meanings. *Rescindo*, annul. Respecting the forms of *abscindo*, cut off, and *excindo*, destroy, there is considerable doubt ; but the forms *abscissum* and *excissum* do not exist at all, because in pronunciation, they are the same as *abscisum* and *excisum*, from *abscidere* and *excidere* ; and the perfect *excīdi* also is not founded on any authority, since the *s* by which it is distinguished is not heard in pronunciation, and is better not introduced in writing.

Frendo (frendi), fressum and fresum, gnash with the teeth ; also *frendeo, frendēre*.

Mēto, messui, messum, cut, reap.

Mitto, misi, missum, send.

Admitto, admit, commit ; *amitto*, lose ; *committo*, intrust commit a fault ; *demitto* and *dimitto*, dismiss ; *emitto*, send forth ; *immitto*, send in, against ; *intermitto*, omit ; *omitto* and *praetermitto*, leave out ; *permitto*, permit ; *promitto*, promise ; *remitto*, send back ; *submitto*, send up, send aid.

Pando, pandī, passum (pansum rare), spread abroad.

Expando has *expansum* and *expassum* ; *dispando* only *dispansum*.

Pēto, petivi, (in poetry petii), petitum, ask, seek.

Appēto and *expēto*, strive for ; *oppeto*, encounter ; *repeto*, repeat, seek again.

Sido (the perfect and supine usually from *sedeo*), sit down.

The compounds, too, usually take the perfect and supine from *sedeo* : *consido, consēdi, consessum* ; so *assido*, seat myself beside ; *subsido*, sink ; *insido*, sit upon ; *desido* and *resido*, seat myself down.

Sisto, stīti, stātum, stop (whence *stātus*), but *sisto*, in a neutral sense, makes the perfect and supine from *stare*.

The compounds are all intransitive, and have *stīti, stītum* ; *subsisto, substīti, substītum*, stand still ; *absisto* (no supine) and *desisto*, desist ; *assisto*, place myself beside ; *consisto*, halt, consist ; *existo*, come forth (perf. exist) ; *insisto*, tread upon ; *obsisto* and *resisto*, resist ; *persisto*, persist.

Sterto, stertui, (no supine), snore.

Verto, verti, versum, turn.

Adverto and *converto*, turn towards ; *animadverto (animum adverto)*, turn attention to ; *averto*, turn from ; *everto*, destroy ; *perverto* and *subverto*, overturn.

Deverto, turn in to a house of entertainment ; *praeverto*, anticipate ; and *reverto*, turn back ; are used in the present, imperfect, and future as deponents more commonly than as actives.

Fido, fīsus sum, fidere, trust.

So *confido*, confide ; *diffido*, distrust.

CHAP. XLVIII.

[§ 190.] 3. VERBS IN *BO* AND *PO*.

Regular are :

Glūbo (*glupsi*), *gluptum* (at least *degluptum*), *glubere*, peel.*Nūbo*, cover, am married (applied only to the female), participle *nupta*, one who is married.*Scribo*, write.*Describo*, copy ; *ascribo*, *inscribo*, *perscribo*, *praescribo*.*Carpō*, pluck.*Concerpo*, and *discerpo*, tear asunder ; *decerpo*, gather.*Rēpo*, creep.*Arrēpo*, creep up to ; *irrēpo*, *obrepo*, *subrepo*, *prorēpo*.*Scalpo*, grave with a pointed tool, or scratch with the finger.*Sculpo*, work with the chisel.*Exculpo*, cut out ; *insculpo*, engrave.*Serpo*, creep : *inserpo*, *proserpo*.

[§ 191.] The following are irregular :

The compounds of *cubare*, to lie, which take an *m* with a change of meaning.*Accumbo*, -*cubui*, -*cubitum*, recline at table ; *incumbo*, lean upon, apply to something ; *procumbo*, lie down ; *succumbo*, fall under ; *occumbo* (suppl. *mortem*), die.*Bibo*, *bibi*, *bibitum*, drink.*Ebibō*, *imbibō*.*Lambo*, *lambi*, (*lambitum*), *lambere*, lick.*Rumpo*, *rūpi*, *ruptum*, break, tear.*Abrumpo*, break off ; *erumpo*, break out ; *corrumpo*, destroy ; *interumpo*, interrupt ; *irumpo*, break in ; *perrumpo*, break through ; *prorumpo*, break forth.*Scābo*, *scabi*, *scabere*, scratch with the finger.*Strepo*, *strepui*, *strepitum*, make a noise.

CHAP. XLIX.

[§ 192.] 4. VERBS WITH A PALATAL LETTER *G, C, CT, H, QU, AND GU* (IN WHICH *U* IS NOT CONSIDERED AS A VOWEL), BEFORE *O*.

Regular are :

Cingo, cinxi, cinctum, cingere, gird, surround.

Accingor, the passive (or *accingo me*), has the same meaning ; *discingo*, ungird ; and others.

From *fligo*, which rarely occurs, are formed :

Affligo, strike to the ground ; *confligo*, fight ; *infligo*, strike upon. *Profligo* belongs to the first conjugation.

Frigo (supine regular, *frictum*, rarely *frixum*), roast, parch.

Jungo, join.

Adjungo and *conjungo*, join to, with ; *disjungo* and *sejungo*, separate ; *subjungo*, annex.

Lingo, lick. (Hence *ligurio* or *ligurrio*.)

Mungo, blow the nose (rare) ; *emungo*.

Plango, beat, lament.

Rẽgo, rule, guide.

Arrigo, arrexi, arrectum, and *erigo*, raise on high ; *corrigo*, amend ; *dirigo*, direct ; *porrigo*, stretch out. *Pergo* (for *perrigo*), *perrexi, perrectum*, go on ; *surgo* (for *surrigo*), *surrexi, surrectum*, rise ; and hence *assurgo, consurgo, exurgo, insurgo*.

Sũgo, suck, *exugo*.

Tẽgo, cover.

Contẽgo and *obtẽgo*, cover up ; *detego* and *retego*, uncover ; *protego*, protect.

Tingo, or *tinguo*, dip, dye.

Ungo or *unguo*, anoint.

Perungo, strengthens the meaning ; *inungo*, anoint.

Stinguo, put out (has no perfect or supine, and is of rare occurrence.)

Compounds : *extinguo*, and *restinguo*, -*inxi, -inctum* ; so also *distinguo*.

Trāho, draw.

Pertrāho, strengthens the meaning: *attraho*, *contraho*, *detraho*, *extraho*, *protraho*, *retraho*; *subtraho*, withdraw secretly.

Vēho, carry (active); frequent. *vecto*, -as.

Advēho, carry to; *invehō*, carry or bring in. The passive of this verb *vehor*, *vectus sum*, *vehi*, is best rendered by a neuter verb of motion. So *circumvēhor*, travel round; *praetervēhor*, sail past; *invēhor*, inveigh against. These verbs therefore are classed among the deponents.

Dico, say.

Addico, adjudge; *contradico*, *edico*, *indico*; *interdico*, *praedico*.

Dūco, guide, lead, draw.

Abdūco, *adduco*, *circumduco*; *conduco*, hire: *deduco*, *diduco*, *educō*, *induco*, *introduco*, *obduco*, *perduco*, *produco*, *reduco*; *seduco*, lead aside; *subduco*, *traduco*.

Cōquo, *coxi*, *coctum*, dress; *concoquo*, digest.

[§ 193.] Irregular in the Supine, throwing out *n*, or assuming *x*.

Fingo, *finxi*, *fictum*, feign.

Confingo, the same; *affingo*, falsely ascribe; *effingo*, imitate; *refingo*, fashion anew.

Mingo (a more common form of the present is *meio*), *minxi*, *mictum*, make water.

Pingo, *pinxi*, *pictum*, paint.

Depingo, represent by painting; *appingo*, *expingo*.

Stringo, *strinxi*, *strictum*, squeeze together.

Astringo, draw close; *constringo*, draw together; *destringo*, draw out; *distringo*, draw asunder; *obstringo*, bind by obligation.

Figo, *fixi*, *fixum*, fasten.

Affigo, affix; *transfigo*, pierce through.

Verbs in cto, in which t only strengthens the form of the Present.

Flecto, *flexi*, *flexum*, bend. Comp. *inflecto*.

Necto, *nexi* and *nexui*, *nexum*, bind.

Pecto, pexi, pexum, comb.

Plecto, without perfect and supine, usually only in the passive, *plector*, am punished, smart for. Another *plecto*, twist, is obsolete as an active, but forms the foundation of the deponents: *amplector, complector*; participle *amplexus, complexus*.

Of *ango, anxī*, torment; and *ningo, ninxi*, snow, no supine is found.

Of *clango*, ring loudly, neither perfect nor supine exists; according to analogy the former would be *clanxi*.

[§ 194.] The following are irregular in the formation of the Perfect.

a) *Taking a Reduplication.*

Parco, peperci, parsum, spare; *parsi* is rare; *parcitur* is uncertain; but we have the compound *comparsi*, or *compersi*.

Pungo, pupŭgi, punctum, pierce.

The compounds have in the perfect *punxi*; as *compungo, dispungo*, and *interpungo*, distinguish with points.

Tango, tetĭgi, tactum, touch.

Attingo and *contingo*, -*tĭgi*, -*tactum*, touch; *contingit, contigit; obtingit, obtingit* (as impersonals), it falls to the lot; usually in a good sense.

Pango, in the sense of strike, drive in, *panxi, pactum*; in the sense of bargain, *pepĭgi, pactum*. In this sense *paciscor* is employed in the present.

The compounds have *pĕgi, pactum*; as *compingo*, fasten together; *impingo*.

[§ 195.] b) *Without changing the Characteristic Letter.*

Ago, ĕgi, actum, agere, drive.

Cŏgo (coāgo), cŏĕgi, coactum, drive together, force; *perāgo*, carry through; *abĭgo*, drive away; *adĭgo, exĭgo, redĭgo, subĭgo, transĭgo*.

Dĕgo, dĕgi (rare), no supine, spend (*vitam, aetatem*).

Frango; frĕgi, fractum, break.

Confringo and *perfringo* strengthen the meaning; *effringo* and *refringo*, break open.

Lēgo, lēgi, lectum, read. (But *lēgo, as*, send off.)

So *perlēgo, praelēgo*, with those changing *ē* into *i*, as *colligo, deligo, eligo*, and *seligo*, are conjugated. But *diligo, intelligo* (obsolete *intellēgo*), and *negligo* (obsolete *neglēgo*), have *-eri* in the perfect.

Ico, or icio, īci, ictum, strike, in connection with *foedus*.

Vinco, vīci, victum, conquer.

Convinco, persuade; *devinco*, overcome; *evinco*, carry a point.

Linguo, liqui, leave (no supine), chiefly used in poetry.

The compounds *relinquo, derelinquo, delinquo*, have *lictum* in the supine.

[§ 196.] c) *Perfect si, Supine sum*.

Mergo, mersi, mersum, dip.

Emergo, demergo, immergo, submergo.

Spargo, sparsi, sparsum, scatter.

Aspergo, conspergo, and respergo, besprinkle; *expergo*, sprinkle abroad.

Tergo, tersi, tersum, wipe; sometimes follows the second conjugation. (See above, § 177.)

So also the compounds *detergere, extergere*.

Vergo, vergere, incline towards, without perfect and supine.

CHAP. L.

[§ 197.] 5. VERBS WHICH HAVE *L, M, N, R*, BEFORE *a*,

Regular verbs in *mo*.

Cōmo, cōmpsi, comptum, comere, adorn.

Dēmo, take away.

Prōmo, bring out. *Deprōmo, exprōmo*, the same in signification.

Sūmo, take.

Absūmo and *consumo*, consume; *assumo, desumo*.

Temno, temnere, despise (poetical).

Contemno, contempsi, contemptum, the same meaning.

Irregular.

[§ 198.] a) *Conjugated according to the Analogy of the Second Conjugation.*

Alo, alui, alitum (or *altum*), *alere*, nourish.

Cōlo, colui, cultum, till.

Excōlo and *percolo* strengthen the meaning; *incōlo*, inhabit a country.

Consūlo, consului, consultum, ask advice.

Mōlo, molui, molitum, grind.

Occūlo, occului, occultum, conceal.

Frēmo, fremui, fremitum, murmur. *Adfrēmo, confrēmo*.

Gēmo, gemui, gemitum, groan.

Congēmo (*congemisco*), *ingēmo* (*ingemisco*), *ui*, no supine, lament.

Trēmo, tremui (no supine), tremble. *Contrēmo* strengthens the meaning.

Vōmo, vomui, vomitum, vomit. *Evōmo, revōmo*.

Gigno, beget (from the obsolete *gēno*), *genui, genitum*.

Ingigno, implant; *progigno*, bring forth.

Pōno, pōsui, pōsitum, place.

Antepōno, prefer; *appono*, place by; *compono*, arrange; *depono*, lay down; *dispono*, set out, or in order; *expono*, explain; *oppono*, oppose; *postpono*, to place after; *praepono*, prefer; *sepono*, set on one side. Respecting the short *o* in the perfect and supine see § 18. 3.

(From the obsolete *cello*)—

Antecello, excello, praecello, ui, (without supine,) surpass; but *percello, percūli, percusum*, strike down.

[§ 199.] b) *Forming the Perfect with Reduplication.*

Cāno, cecīni, cantum, canere, sing.

Succīno, succinui, succentum, sing to; so *occīno*, sing, sound against; *concīno*, harmonize.

Curro, cucurri, cursum, run.

The compounds, *accurro, decurro, excurro, incurro, percurro, praecurro*, and others, sometimes retain, but more frequently drop the reduplication in the perfect.

Fallo, fefelli, falsum, cheat.

Pello, pepŭli, pulsum, drive away.

Appello, appŭli, appulsum, come to land. In the same way are conjugated *compello*, urge, compel; *depello, propello, repello*, drive away; *expello*, drive out; *impello* and *perpello*, urge on.

[§ 200.] c) *Making vi in the Perfect.*

Cerno, crevi, cretum, separate. In the sense of seeing, perceiving, it has neither perfect nor supine.

Compounds: *Decerno, decrevi, decretum*, decree; so *discerno, excerno, secerno*, separate, distinguish.

Lino, lēvi (or *livi*), *litum*, smear. *Linio* belongs to the fourth conjugation.

Collino, illino, perlino, obliuo (participle *oblŭtus*, not to be confounded with *oblŭtus* from *obliviscor*), *perlino*, besmear.

Sino, sivi, sŭtum, allow.

Desino, desivi, and desii, desŭtum, cease.

Sperno, spreui, spretum, despise.

Sterno, strāvi, stratum, stretch out on the ground.

Consterno, insterno, spread out; *prosterno*, throw down.

Sēro, in the sense of sowing, has *sēvi, sŭtum*; in that of arranging and connecting together it has *serui, sertum*.

The compounds *consēro* and *insēro* make *-ui -ertum*, in the sense of joining; *-evi, -itum*, in the sense of sowing. The following compounds are used only in the sense of joining:—*Desero, dissero, exsero*, and accordingly make only *serui, sertum*.

Tēro, trivi, tritum, rub.

Contero, rub to pieces; *attēro*, rub away, injure.

[§ 201.] d) *Other Irregularities.*

Vello, velli, and vulsi (but more rarely), *vulsum*, pluck out.

The compounds *convello, revello, and divello*, have only *veli* in the perfect, but *avello* and *evello* have also *avulsi* and *evulsi*.

Psallo, psalli, psallere, play on a stringed instrument.

Emo, emi, emptum, buy.

Coēmo, collect by purchase; *redimo*, purchase back. The signification "take" appears in the compounds *adimo*, take away; *dirimo*, divide; *eximo*, take out; *interimo*, take away, kill; *perimo*, destroy.

Præmo, pressi, pressum, press.

Comprimo, press together; *deprimo, opprimo, supprimo*, press down; *exprimo*, press out.

Gëro, gessi, gestum, carry, transact.

Congëro, bring together; *digero*, arrange; *ingero*, introduce.

Uro, ussi, ustum, burn.

Adûro, kindle; *combûro*, consume by fire; *inûro*, burn in, brand; *exûro*, burn out.

Verro, verri, versum, sweep out.

Quaero, quæsivi, quæsitum, seek.

Acquiro, acquire; *conquiro*, collect; *anquiro, exquiro, inquiro, perquiro*, examine; *requiro*, miss, require.

(*Fûro*), *furere*, rage (without perfect or supine); *insanivi*, is used as a perfect instead.

Fëro, tûli, lâtum, ferre, is irregular in several points. See below, § 213.

CHAP. LL.

[§ 202.] 6. VERBS IN *so* AND *xo*.

Depso, depsui, depsitum and *depstum*, knead.

Pinso, pinsui and *pinsi, pinsitum* and *pistum*, pound, grind.

Viso, visi, visëre, visit. The supine *visum* belongs to *vidëre*, from which *visere* itself is derived.

Texo, texui, textum, weave.

Compounds frequently with a figurative signification: *attexo*, add; *contero*, put together; *obtexo*, cover; *pertexo*, carry out; *praetexo*, add a hem; *retexo*, to undo that which is woven, destroy.

After the Analogy of the Fourth Conjugation

Arcesso, or *accerso*, -*ivî*, -*itum*, summon.

Capesso, undertake.

Facesso, give trouble.

Incesso, attack ; no supine.

Lacesso, provoke.

[§ 203.] 7. *Verbs in sco, either not Inchoatives, or of which the Simple is not found.*

Cresco, crēvi, crētum, grow.

So also *con-*, *de-*, *exresco*, and without a supine: *acresco, increso*, grow up, and *succresco*, grow up gradually.

Nosco, nōvi, nōtum, become acquainted with. The original form is *gnosco*, and the *g* reappears in the compounds, if possible.

The perfect *novi* takes the signification of the present, "I know" (§ 221.). The comp. *agnosco*, recognise, *cognosco* (perf. *cognovi*, I know), and *recognosco*, recognise, have in the supine *agnitum, cognitum, recognitum*.

Pasco, pavi, pastum, feed.

Depasco, feed down.

Quiesco, quiēvi, quietum, rest.

Acquiesco, repose with satisfaction ; *conquiesco, requiesco*, rest.

Suesco, suevi, suetum, mostly intransitive, grow accustomed, or, more rarely, accustom another.

So also *assuesco, consuesco, insuesco*, generally accustom one's self ; *desuesco*, disaccustom one's self.

Compesco, compescui, (no supine,) restrain.

Dispesco, dispescui, (no supine,) divide.

Disco, didici, (no supine ; *disciturus* in Appuleius,) learn.

Addisco, addidici, learn in addition ; *dedisco*, unlearn ; *edisco*, learn by heart.

Posco, poposci, (no supine,) demand.

Deposco, depoposci, and *reposco*, demand back ; *exposco, expoposci*, challenge.

Glisco, gliscere, increase.

Hisco, hiscere, open the mouth, gape.

CHAP. LII.

INCHOATIVES.

[§ 204.] THE inchoatives in *sco* are partly formed from verbs (chiefly of the second conjugation), and partly from nouns (substantives or adjectives), and are accordingly called *inchoativa verbalia* or *inchoativa nominalia*, that is, verbal or nominal inchoatives. The first have no other perfect than that of the simple verb; the others either have none, or form it in a similar way in *ui*. Few of the verbal inchoatives have the supine of the simple verb,

1. *Verbal Inchoatives with the Perfect of the Simple Verb.*

Acesco (*aceo*), *acui*, grow sour; *coacesco*, *peracesco*.

Albesco, and *exalbesco* (*albeo*), *exalbei*, grow white.

Aresco (*areo*), *arui*, grow dry.

Calesco (*caleo*), *calui*, become warm.

Canesco (*caneo*), *canui*, become grey.

Conticesco (*taceo*), *conticui*, am reduced to silence.

Contremisco (*tremo*), *contremui*, tremble.

Defervesco (*ferveo*), *deferbui*, gradually lose my heat.

Delitesco (*lateo*), *delitui*, lurk.

Effervesco (*ferveo*), *efferbui*, grow hot.

Excandesco (*candeo*), *excandui*, grow of a white heat; figuratively, am enraged.

Extimesco, *pertimesco* (*timeo*), *extimui*, am terrified.

Floresco, *de-*, *effloresco* (*floreo*), *efflorui*, bloom.

Haeresco, and *ad-*, *inhaeresco* (*haereo*), *ad-*, *inhaesi*, adhere to.

Horresco, *exhorresco*, *perhorresco* (*horreo*), *exhorruui*, am struck with horror.

Ingemisco (*gemo*), *ingemui*, groan.

Intumesco (*tumeo*), *intumui*, swell up.

Irraucesco (*raucio*), *irraui*, become hoarse.

Languesco, *elanguesco*, *relanguesco* (*languo*), *elanguui*, become feeble.

Liquesco (*liqueo*), *licui*, melt away.

Mudesco (*madeo*), *madui*, become wet.

Maresco (*marceo*), comp. *commarcesco*, *emaresco*, *emarcui*, fade.

Occallesco (*calleo*), *occalui*, acquire a callous surface.

Pallesco, *expallesco* (*paleo*), *pallui*, turn pale.

Putresco (*putreo*), *putrui*, moulder.

Resipisco (*sapio*), *resipui* and *resipivi*, recover wisdom.

Rubesco, *erubesco* (*rubeo*), grow red, blush.

Senesco, *consenesco* (*seneo*), *consenui*, grow old. The participle *senectus*, grown old, is little used.

Stupesco and *obstupesco* (*stupeo*), *obstupui*, am struck.

Tabesco (*tabeo*), *tabui*, pine, waste away.

Tepesco (*tepeo*), *tepui*, grow lukewarm.

Viresco, comp. *conviresco*, *eviresco*, *reviresco* (*vireo*), *virui*, grow green.

2. Verbal Inchoatives which have the Supine as well as Perfect of the Simple Verb.

{ *Abolesco*, *abolevi*, *abolitum*, cease, am annihilated.
 { *Exolesco*, *exolevi*, *exolētum*, grow useless by age. So also *obsolesco*.
 { *Adolesco*, *adolevi*, *adultum*, grow up. See § 174. *Oleo*.

Coalesco (*alēre*), *coalui*, *coalitum*, grow together.

Concupisco (*cupēre*), *concupivi*, *concupitum*, desire.

Convalesco (*valēre*), *convalui*, *convallitum*, recover health.

Exardesco (*ardēre*), *exarsi*, *exarsum*, am inflamed.

Indolesco (*dolēre*), *indolui*, *itum*, feel pain.

Inveterasco (*inveterare*), *inveteravi*, *atum*, grow old.

Obdormisco (*dormire*), *ivi*, *itum*, fall asleep; *edormisco*, sleep out.

Revivisco (*vivēre*), *revixi*, *revictum*, recover life.

Scisco (*scire*), *scivi*, *scitum*, resolve, decree. Hence *plebiscitum*, *populiscitum*,

[§ 205.] 3. Inchoatives derived from Nouns.

a) Without a Perfect.

Aegresco (*aeger*), grow sick.

Ditesco (*dives*), grow rich.

Dulcesco (*dulcis*), grow sweet.

Grandesco (*grandis*), grow large.

Gravesco and *ingravesco* (*gravis*), grow heavy.

Incurvesco (*curvus*), become crooked.

Integrasco (*integer*), become renovated.

Juvenesco (*juvenis*), grow young.

Mitesco (*mitis*), grow mild.

Mollesco (*mollis*), grow soft.

Pinguesco (*pinguis*), grow fat.

Plumesco (*pluma*), get feathers.

Puerasco, *repuerasco* (*puer*), become a child (again).

Sterilesco (*sterilis*), become barren.

Teneresco, *tenerasco* (*tener*), become tender.

b) With a Perfect.

Crebresco, *increbresco*, and *percrebresco* (*creber*), *crebui*, grow frequent of current.

Duresco, *obduresco* (*durus*), *durui*, grow hard.

Evanesco (*vanus*), *evanui*, disappear.

Innotesco (*notus*), *innotui*, become known.

Macresco (*macer*), *macrui*, grow lean.

Mansuesco (*mansuetus*), *mansuevi*, grow tame,

Maturesco (*maturus*), *maturui*, grow ripe.

Nigresco (*niger*), *nigrui*, grow black.

Obmutesco (*mutus*), *obmutui*, become dumb.

Obsurdesco (*surdus*), *obsurdui*, become deaf.

Recrudesco (*crudus*), *recrudui*, to open again (of a wound that had been closed).

Vilesco and *evilesco* (*vilis*), *evilui*, become cheap or worthless.

CHAP. LIII.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

[§ 206.] THE *desiderative* verbs in *ŭrio*, e. g. *coenaturio*, *dormiturio*, *empturio*, have neither perfect nor supine with the exception of *esurio*, desire to eat.

The following verbs differ, either in the perfect or in the supine, or in both, from the regular form (*ivi*, *itum*).

Cio, *civi*, *citum*, regular; but see § 180.

Eo, *ivi*, *itum*, with its compounds. See Defective Verbs, § 215.

Farcio, *farsi*, *fartum*, *farcire*, stuff.

Confercio and *refercio*, *fersi*, *fertum*, fill up; *effercio*, *infercio* are conjugated like the simple verb.

Fulcio, *fulsi*, *fultum*, *fulcire*, prop.

Haurio, *hausi*, *haustum* (the part. fut. however, is also *haururus*), *haurire*, draw.

Queò, *quivi* or *quii*, *quĭtum*, *quire*. See § 216.

Raucio, *rausi*, *rausum*, *raucire*, am hoarse (*raucus*).

Saepio, *saepsi*, *saeptum*, *saepire*, hedge in.

Sălio, *salui*, *saltum*, *salire*, spring.

The regular verb *salire*, salt, must not be confounded with *salire*, spring. The compounds *desilio*, *exilio*, *insilio*, make the perfect in *silui*; the supine does not occur, but it might be formed by the termination *sultum*.

Sancio, *sanxi*, *sancitum* and *sanctum*, *sancire*, decree, sanction.

Sarcio, sarsi, sartum, sarcire, patch.

Sentio, sensi, sensum, sentire, feel, think.

Consentio, agree; *dissentio*, disagree; *praesentio*, perceive beforehand.
The compound *assentio* is not as common as the deponent *assentior*.

Sepelio, -ivi, sepultum, sepelire, bury.

Venio, vēni, ventum, venire, come.

Advenio, arrive; *convenio*, meet; *obvenio*, encounter; *pervenio*, reach;
invenio, find.

Vincio, vinxi, vinctum, vincere, bind.

Amicio, amictum, amicare, clothe.

Aperio, ui, rtum, aperire, open.

So *operio* and *cooperio*, cover. But *comperio* makes *compēri, comper-tum, comperire* (is used in the present and infinitive, also as a deponent, *comperior, comperiri*), experience, and *reperio, repēri* (or *repperi*), *reper-tum*, find.

Ferio — *ferire*, strike. (In the active *percussi* is used as a perfect, and in the passive *ictus sum*.)

Ferocio — *ferocire*, am wild or insolent.

CHAP. LIV.

LIST OF DEPONENT VERBS.

[§ 207.] DEPONENT VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

Adminiculator, aid.

Adversor, oppose myself.

Adūlor, flatter.

Aemulor, rival.

* *Altercor*, quarrel.

Alucinor (also *alluc.* and *halluc.*),
dote, talk idly.

Amplexor, embrace.

Ancillor, am a handmaid.

Apricor, sun myself.

* The words to which an asterisk is prefixed are used also as actives, but better as deponents. Some deponents have been omitted in the list, which are either of very rare occurrence or more commonly used as actives. Respecting the latter see the note at the end.

- Aquor*, fetch water; *frumentor*, collect corn; *lignor*, collect wood; *materior*, fell timber; *pabulor*, forage.
Arbitror, think.
Architector, build (*architectus*).
Argumentor, prove.
Argutor, chatter, am *argutus*.
Aspernor, despise.
Assentor, agree, flatter.
Auctōnor, sell at auction.
Aucūpor, catch birds, am *auceps*.
Aversor, dislike, avoid with horror.
Auguror (*augur*),
** Auspicor* (*auspex*), } practise
Hariolor (*hariolus*), } soothsaying.
Vaticinor (*vates*), }
Auxilior, aid.
Bacchor, revel as a Bacchanal.
Calumniōr, cavil.
Cavillor, ridicule.
Caupōnor, deal, retail.
Causor, allege.
Circulor, form a circle around me.
Comissor, feast.
Comitor, accompany (*comes*, active only in the poets).
Commentor, reflect upon, dispute.
Concionor, harangue.
** Conflictor*, contend.
Conor, attempt.
Consilior, advise.
Conspicor, behold.
Contemplor, contemplate.
Convicior, revile.
Convivor, feast (*conviva*).
Cornicor, chatter as a crow.
Criminor, accuse.
Cunctor, delay.
Depecūlor, plunder.
Despicor, despise; *despicio*, but *despicatus* is passive, despised.
Deversor, lodge.
Digladior, fight.
Dignor, think worthy. Cicero however sometimes uses it in a passive sense, "I am thought worthy."
Denignor, disdain.
Dominor, rule (*dominus*).
Elucūbror, produce by dint of labour.
Epulor, feast.
Exēcoror, execrate.
** Fabricor*, fashion.
Fabulor, confabulor, talk.
Famulor, serve (*famulus*).
Feneror, lend at interest (the active, "to restore with interest," occurs in Terence; in later writers it is the same as the deponent).
Ferīor, keep holiday.
Frustror, disappoint.
Furor, suffuror, steal.
Glorior, boast.
Graecor, live in the Greek style, that is, luxuriously.
Grassor, advance, attack.
Gratificor, comply with.
Grator and *gratūlor*, give thanks, present congratulations.
(Gravor, think heavy, is the passive of *gravo*.)
Helluor, gluttonise (*helluo*).
Hortor, exhort; *adhortor*, exhortor, dehortor.
Hospitor, am a guest (*hospes*), lodge.
Imagīnor, imagine.
Imitor, imitate.
Indignor, am indignant, spurn.
Infiitor, deny.
Insidiōr, plot.
Interpretor, explain, am an *interpretes*.
Jaculor, throw, dart.
Jocor, jest.
Laetor, rejoice (*laetus*).
Lamentor, lament.
Latrocinor, rob, am a *latro*.
Lenocinor (*alicui*), flatter.
Libidinor, am voluptuous.
Licitor, bid at an auction.
Lucror, gain.
Luctor, strive, wrestle (*obluctor* and *reductor*, resist).
** Ludificor*, ridicule.
Machīnor, devise.
Medicor, heal.
Meditor, meditate.
Mercor, buy.
** Meridiōr*, repose at noon.
Metor, measure out.
Minor and *minitor*, threaten.
Miror, wonder; *demiror*, the same; *admiror*, admire.

- Miseror*, commiseror, pity.
Moderor, restrain, temper.
Modulor, modulate.
Morigeror, comply, am *morigerus*.
Moror, delay; trans. and intrans.; comp. *commoror*.
 * *Muneror*, *remuneror*, *aliquem aliqua re*, reward.
Mutuor, borrow.
Negotior, carry on business.
Nidūlor, build a nest.
Nugor, trifle.
Nundinor, deal in buying and selling.
Nutricor, nourish.
Odōror, smell out.
Ominor, prophesy; *abominor*, abominate.
Operor, bestow labour on.
Opinor, think.
Opitulor, lend help.
 * *Oscitor*, yawn.
Osculor, kiss.
Otiōr, have leisure.
 * *Palpor*, stroke, flatter.
Parasitor, act the parasite (*parasitus*).
Patrocinor, patronize.
Percontor, inquire.
Peregrinor, dwell as a stranger.
Periclitor, try, in later writers, am in danger.
Philosophor, philosophize.
 * *Pigneror*, take a pledge, bind by a pledge.
Pigror, am idle (*piger*).
Piscor, fish.
 * *Populor*, lay waste.
Praedor, plunder.
Praestolor, wait for, with the dat. or accus. (the quantity of the o is uncertain, though probably short).
Praevaricor, walk with crooked legs, act dishonestly, as a *praevaricator*, that is, as a false accuser.
Præcor, pray; *comprecor*, invoke; *deprecor*, deprecate; *imprecor*, imprecate.
Proelior, fight a battle.
Ratiocinor, reason.
Recordor, remember.
Refrāgor, oppose.
Rimor, examine minutely.
Rixor, wrangle.
Rusticor, live in the country.
Scitor, and *sciscitor*, inquire.
Scrutor, *perscrūtor*, search.
Sector, the frequentative of *sequor*, follow; *assector*, *consector*, *insector*.
Sermocinor, hold discourse.
Solor, *consōlor*, comfort.
Spatior, *expatior*, walk.
Speculor, keep a look out.
Stipulor, make a bargain; *adstipulor*, agree.
Stomāchor, am indignant.
Suavior, kiss.
Suffrāgor (the contrary of *refragor*), assent to.
Suspīcor, suspect.
Tergiversor, shuffle.
Testor and *testificor*, bear witness.
Trīcor, make unreasonable difficulties (*tricas*).
Trīstor, am sad.
Trutīnor, weigh.
Tumultuor, make uproar.
Tutor, defend.
Vador, summon to trial.
Vāgor and *pālor*, wander.
Velīcor, steer towards (figuratively, gain a purpose), whence it is construed with the dat., as *honori meo*.
Velītor, skirmish with light troops.
Veneror, venerate.
Venor, hunt.
Verecundor, feel shame at doing.
Versor (properly, the passive of *verso*), dwell, am occupied in; *aversor*, detest; *obversor*, float before.
Vociferor, vociferate.
Urinor, dip under water (to void urine is *urinam facere* or *reddere*).

CHAP. LV.

[§ 208.] DEPONENTS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

Fateor, fassus sum, fateri, acknowledge.

Confiteor, confessus sum, the same, but usually, confess a crime; *profiteor*, profess.

Liceor, licitus sum, with the accus., bid at an auction.

Polliceor, promise.

Mēdeor, without a participle, for which *medicatus*, from *medicari*, is commonly used.

* *Mēreor, meritus sum* (*merui* is more common), deserve.

Commereor, demereor, promereor, have the same meaning.

Misereor, miseritus or *misertus sum*, pity.

Reor, ratus sum, veri, think.

Tueor, tuitus sum, look upon, fig. defend.

Contueor, intueor, look upon.

Vereor, veritus sum, fear.

Revereor, reverence; *subvereor*, slightly fear.

CHAP. LVI.

[§ 209.] DEPONENTS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

FROM the obsolete *apiscor, aptus sum, apisci*, are derived :

Adipiscor, adeptus sum, and *indipiscor*, obtain.

Expergiscor, experrectus sum, expergisci, awake.

Fruor, frui and *fructus sum, frui*, enjoy. (Particip. *fruiturus*.)

Perfruor, perfructus sum, strengthens the meaning.

Fungor, functus sum, fungi, perform, discharge.

Defungor, perfungor, completely discharge, finish.

Grādior, gressus sum, grādi, proceed.

Aggredior, aggressus sum, aggredi, assail; *congregdior*, meet; *digredior*, depart; *egredior*, go out of; *ingredior*, enter on; *progredior*, advance; *regredior*, return.

Irascor, irasci, properly an inchoative, grow angry; *iratus sum* means only, I *am* angry. I have been or was angry may be expressed by *succensui*.

Lābor, lapsus sum, lābi, fall.

Collābor, sink together; *dilābor*, fall in pieces; *prolabor*, fall down; *delabor, relabor*.

Lōquor, locutus sum, lōqui, speak.

Allōquor, address; *colloquor*, speak with; *eloquor, interloquor*; *obloquor*, speak against, revile.

(From the obsolete *miniscor*,)

Comminiscor, commentus sum, comminisci, devise, imagine; *reminiscor, reminisci*, has no perfect; *recordatus sum* is used instead of it.

Mōrior, mortuus sum, (partic. fut., *moriturus*,) *mori*, die.

Emorior, commorior, demorior.

Nanciscor, nactus sum, nancisci, obtain.

Nascor, natus sum, nasci, am born.

Innascor, renascor.

Nītor, nisus or nixus sum, nīti, lean upon, strive.

Adnītor, strive for; *connītor* and *enītor*, exert myself; *obnītor*, strive against.

Obliviscor, oblitus sum, oblivisci, forget.

Paciscor, pactus sum (or *pepigi*), make a bargain.

Pascor, pastus sum, feed; intransitive. Properly the passive of *pasco, pavi, pastum*, give food. See above, Chap. LL.

Patior, passus sum, pāti, suffer.

Perpetior, perpessus sum, perpēti, endure.

(From *plecto*, twine,)

Amplector and *complector, complexus sum*, embrace.

Proficiscor, profectus sum, proficisci, travel.

Quēror, questus sum, quēri, complain. *Conquēror*, lament.

Ringor, ringi, grin, show the teeth, whence *ricтус*.

Sēquor, secutus sum, sēqui, follow.

Assēquor and *consequor*, overtake, attain ; *exequor*, execute ; *insequor*, follow ; *obsequor*, comply with ; *persequor*, pursue ; *prosequor*, attend ; *subsequor*, follow close after.

Vēhor, vectus sum, vehi, ride, is properly the passive of *veho*, see § 192. Comp. *circumvehor, invehor, praetervehor*.

Vescor, vesci, eat. *Edi* is used as the perfect.

Ulciscor, ultus sum, ulcisci, revenge, punish.

Utor, usus sum, ūti, use. *Abūtor*, abuse.

Devertor, praevertor, and *revertor*, see under *verto*. They take their perfects from the active form : *reverti, reverteram, revertissem* ; the participle *reversus*, however, is used in an active sense, one who has returned.

CHAP. LVII.

[§ 210.] DEPONENTS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Assentior, assensus sum, assentiri, assent. (As an active, *assentio, assensi, assensum, assentire*, it is not so common).

Blandior, blanditus sum, blandiri, flatter.

Expērior, expertus sum, experiri, experience, try.

Comperior, am informed, is used only in the present tense, along with *comperio* ; the perfect therefore is *compēri*.

Largior, largitus sum, largiri, give money ; *dilargior*, distribute money.

Mentior, mentitus sum, mentiri, lie ; *ementior*, the same.

Mētor, mensus sum, metiri, measure.

Dimetior, measure out ; *permetior*.

Mōlior, molitus sum, moliri, move a mass (*mōles*), plan.

Amolior, remove from the way ; *demolior*, demolish, and others.

Opperior, oppertus sum, (also *opperitus sum*), *opperiri*, wait for.

Ordior, orsus sum, ordiri, begin.

Exordior, the same.

Orior, ortus sum, oriri, (partic. *oriturus*.) rise. The present indicat. follows the third conjugation: *orēris, oritur, orimur*. In the imperf. subjunct. both forms *orērer* and *orirer* are found.

So also the compounds *co-orior* and *exorior*; but *adorior*, undertake, entirely follows the fourth conjugation, *adoriris, adoritur*.

Partior, partitus sum, partiri, divide (rarely active).

Potior, potitus sum, potiri, possess myself of.

Sortior, sortitus sum, sortiri, cast lots.

CHAP. LVIII.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

[§ 211.] THE term Irregular Verbs is here applied to those which depart from the rule not only in the formation of their perfect and supine, but have something anomalous in their conjugation itself. They are, besides *sum* (treated of before, § 156.), *possum, edo, fero, volo, nolo, malo, eo, queo, nequeo, fio*.

1. *Possum*, I am able.

Possum is composed of *pōtis* and *sum*; by dropping the termination of *potis*, we obtain *potsum, possum*. It therefore follows the conjugation of *sum* in its terminations, but the consonants *t*, *s*, and *f*, produce some changes, when they come together.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

Possum, potēs, potest.
possūmus, potestis, possunt.

possim, possis, possit.
possimus, possitis, possint.

Imperfect.

potēram, poteras, poterat.
poteramus, -eratis, -erant.

possem, posses, posset.
possemus, possetis, possent.

Future.

potēro, poteris, poterit.
poterimus, -eritis, -erunt.

Perfect.

potui, potuisti, potuit. *potuerim, -eris, -erit.*
potuimus, -istis, -erunt. *potuerimus, -itis, -int.*

Pluperfect.

potuēram, -eras, -erat. *potuissem, -isses, -isset.*
potueramus, -eratis, -erant. *potuissemus, -issetis, -issent.*

Future Perfect.

potuēro, potueris, potuerit.
potuerimus, potueritis, potuerint.

(No IMPERATIVE.)

INFINITIVE.

Pres. & Imp. *posse.*
Perf. & Plup. *potuisse.*

PARTICIPLE.

(*Potens* has become an adjective.)

2. *Edo*, I eat.

[§ 212.] The verb *ēdo, ēdi, ēsum, edere*, is declined regularly according to the third conjugation, but here and there it has syncopated forms, besides its regular ones, similar to the corresponding tenses of *sum*, except that the quantity of the vowel in the second person singular of the indic. present and of the imperative makes a difference, the *e* in *es* from *edo* being long by nature. The tenses in which this resemblance occurs are seen in the following table:—

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
Present.		Imperfect.	
Sing. <i>Edo, edis, edit,</i>		Sing. <i>ederem, ederes, ederet,</i>	
(or <i>ēs, ēst.</i>)		(or <i>ēssem, ēsses, ēsset.</i>)	
Plur. <i>edimus, editis, edunt.</i>		Plur. <i>ederemus, ederetis, ederent,</i>	
(<i>ēstis.</i>)		(or <i>ēssemus, ēssetis, essent.</i>)	
IMPERATIVE.		INFINITIVE.	
Pres. { Sing. <i>ede, ēs.</i>		<i>edere</i> or <i>ēsse.</i>	
Plur. <i>edite, este.</i>		—	
Fut. { Sing. <i>edito, esto.</i>		In the Passive only <i>editur, estur;</i>	
Plur. <i>edito, esto, editote, estote.</i>		<i>ederetur, ēssetur.</i>	
<i>edunto.</i>			

In the same way the compounds *abēdo*, *ambedo*, *comedo*, *exedo*, and *peredo* are conjugated.

3. *Fero*, I bear.

[§ 213.] *Fēro* consists of very different parts, perfect *tūli*; supine, *lātum*; infinitive, *ferre*; passive, *ferri*. But with the exception of the present indicat. and the imperative, the detail is regular.

Active.		Passive.	
INDICATIVE.		INDICATIVE.	
Pres. Sing. <i>Fero, fers, fert.</i>		Pres. Sing. <i>feror, ferris, fertur.</i>	
Plur. <i>ferimus, fertis, ferunt.</i>		Plur. <i>ferimur, ferimini, feruntur.</i>	
IMPERATIVE.		IMPERATIVE.	
Pres. Sing. <i>fer.</i>	Plur. <i>ferte.</i>	Pres. Sing. <i>ferre.</i>	Plur. <i>ferimini.</i>
Fut. Sing. <i>ferto.</i>	Plur. <i>fertote, ferunto.</i>	Fut. Sing. <i>fertor.</i>	Plur. <i>feruntor.</i>

Note. The rest is regular; imperfect, *ferēbam*; future, *feram, -es*; future passive, *ferar, ferēris (ferēre), feretur, &c.*; present subjunctive, *feram, feras*; passive, *ferur, feraris, feratur*; imperfect subjunctive, *ferrem*; passive, *ferrer*.

The compounds of *fero* — *affēro, antefēro, circumfero, confero, defero*, and others, have little that is remarkable. *Aufero* (originally *abfero*) makes *abstuli, ablatum, auferre*. *Suffero* has no perfect or supine, for *sustuli, sublatum*, belong to *tollo*; but *sustinui* is commonly used as a perfect of *suffero*.

4. *Volo*, I will. 5. *Nolo*, I will not. 6. *Malo*, I will rather.

[§ 214.] *Nolo* is composed of *ne* (for *non*) and *volo*; *malo* of *mage* (i. e. *magis*) and *volo*, properly *māvōlo, māvellen*, contracted *mālo, māllem*.

INDICATIVE.		
Present.		
Sing. <i>Vōlo</i>	<i>Nōlo</i>	<i>Mālo</i>
<i>vis</i>	<i>non vis</i>	<i>mavis</i>
<i>vult</i>	<i>non vult</i>	<i>mavult</i>
Plur. <i>volūmus</i>	<i>nolūmus</i>	<i>malūmus</i>
<i>vultis</i>	<i>non vultis</i>	<i>mavultis</i>
<i>volunt.</i>	<i>nolunt.</i>	<i>malunt.</i>

Imperfect.

Sing. <i>volebam, &c.</i>	<i>nolebam, &c.</i>	<i>malebam, &c.</i>
Plur. <i>volebamus, &c.</i>	<i>nolebamus, &c.</i>	<i>malebamus, &c.</i>

Future.

Sing. <i>volam, voles, et.</i>	<i>nolam, noles, et.</i>	<i>malam, males, et.</i>
Plur. <i>volemus, etis, ent.</i>	<i>nolemus, etis, ent.</i>	<i>malemus, etis, ent.</i>

Perfect.

Sing. <i>volui</i>	<i>nolui</i>	<i>malui</i>
<i>voluisti, &c.</i>	<i>noluisti, &c.</i>	<i>maluisti, &c.</i>

Pluperfect.

Sing. <i>volueram, &c.</i>	<i>nolueram, &c.</i>	<i>malueram, &c.</i>
--------------------------------	--------------------------	--------------------------

Future Perfect.

<i>voluero, is, &c.</i>	<i>noluero, is, &c.</i>	<i>maluero, is, &c.</i>
-----------------------------	-----------------------------	-----------------------------

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

Sing. <i>vĕlim</i>	<i>nolim</i>	<i>malim</i>
<i>vĕlis</i>	<i>nolis</i>	<i>malis</i>
<i>velit</i>	<i>nolit</i>	<i>malit</i>
Plur. <i>vĕlĭmus</i>	<i>nolĭmus</i>	<i>malĭmus</i>
<i>vĕlĭtis</i>	<i>nolĭtis</i>	<i>malĭtis</i>
<i>velint.</i>	<i>nolint.</i>	<i>malint.</i>

Imperfect.

Sing. <i>vellem, &c.</i>	<i>nollem, &c.</i>	<i>mallem, &c.</i>
Plur. <i>vellĕmus, &c.</i>	<i>nollĕmus, &c.</i>	<i>mallĕmus, &c.</i>

Perfect.

Sing. <i>voluerim, &c.</i>	<i>noluerim, &c.</i>	<i>maluerim, &c.</i>
Plur. <i>voluerĭmus, &c.</i>	<i>noluerĭmus, &c.</i>	<i>maluerĭmus, &c.</i>

Pluperfect.

Sing. <i>voluissem, &c.</i>	<i>noluissem, &c.</i>	<i>maluissem, &c.</i>
Plur. <i>voluissĕmus, &c.</i>	<i>noluisssĕmus, &c.</i>	<i>maluissĕmus, &c.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

—	2d Pers. <i>noli, nolĭte.</i>	—
—	2d Pers. <i>nolito, nolĭtote.</i>	—
—	3d Pers. <i>nolĭto, nolunto.</i>	—

INFINITIVE.

Pres. <i>velle</i>	<i>nolle</i>	<i>malle</i>
Perf. <i>voluisse.</i>	<i>noluisse.</i>	<i>maluisse.</i>

	PARTICIPLE.	
<i>volens.</i>	<i>nolens.</i>	—
	GERUND.	
<i>volendi</i> <i>volendo.</i>	<i>nolendi.</i>	—

7. *Eo*, I go.

[§ 215.] The verb *eo*, *ivi*, *itum*, *ire*, is for the most part formed regularly, according to the fourth conjugation ; only the present, and the tenses derived from it, are irregular. Respecting the fut. *ibo*, see § 162.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
		Present.	
Sing. <i>Eo, is, it.</i>		Sing. <i>eam, eas, eat.</i>	
Plur. <i>imus, itis, eunt.</i>		Plur. <i>eamus, eātis, eant.</i>	
		Imperfect.	
Sing. <i>ibam, ibas, ibat.</i>		Sing. <i>irem, ires, iret.</i>	
Plur. <i>ibamus, ibatis, ibant.</i>		Plur. <i>iremus, iretis, irent.</i>	
Future.		IMPERATIVE.	
Sing. <i>ibo, ibis, ibit.</i>		Sing. <i>i.</i> Sing. 2. <i>ito.</i> 3. <i>ito.</i>	
Plur. <i>ibimus, ibitis, ibunt.</i>		Plur. <i>ite.</i> Plur. 2. <i>itote.</i> 3. <i>eunto</i>	
INFINITIVE.			
Pres. <i>ire.</i>			
Perf. <i>ivisse</i> or <i>isse.</i>			
Fut. <i>iturum</i> (-am, -um) <i>esse.</i>			
GERUND.		SUPINE.	
Gen. <i>eundi.</i> Dat. <i>eundo, &c.</i>		<i>itum, itu.</i>	
PARTICIPLES.			
Pres. <i>iens, euntis.</i>		Fut. <i>iturus, -a, -um.</i>	

In the passive voice it exists only as an impersonal, *itur*, *itum est*. (See § 229.) Some compounds, however, acquire a transitive meaning, and accordingly have a complete passive : e. g. *adēo*, I approach ; *ineo*, I enter ; *praetereo*, I pass by. These and all other compounds, *abeo*, *coēo*, *exeo*, *intereo* and *pereo* (perish), *prodeo*, *redeo*, have usually only

ii in the perfect: *perii, redii*. *Veneo*, I am sold, a neutral passive verb, without a supine, is composed of *venum*, and *eo*, and is accordingly declined like *ire*; whereas *ambio*, I go about, is declined regularly according to the fourth conjugation.

[§ 216.] 8. *Queo*, I can. 9. *Nequĕo*, I cannot.

These two verbs are both conjugated like *eo*: perfect, *quivi, nequivi (nequii)*; supine, *quitum, nequitum*. Most of their forms occur; but with the exception of the present, they are not very frequent in prose. Instead of *nequeo*, *non queo* also is used.

INDICATIVE.

Present.

Sing. <i>Queo, quis, quit.</i>	<i>Nequĕo, non quis, non quit.</i>
Plur. <i>quimus, quitis, queunt.</i>	<i>nequĕmus, nequitis, nequĕunt.</i>

Imperfect.

Sing. <i>Quibam, quibat, &c.</i>	<i>nequibam, nequibat, -ant.</i>
--------------------------------------	----------------------------------

Future.

Sing. <i>Quibo.</i>	Plur. <i>quibunt.</i>	Sing. —	Plur. <i>nequibunt.</i>
---------------------	-----------------------	---------	-------------------------

Perfect.

Sing. <i>Quivi, quivit.</i>	<i>nequivi, nequisti, nequivit (iit).</i>
Plur. — <i>quiverunt.</i>	— <i>nequiverunt</i> or <i>nequierunt (e).</i>

Pluperfect.

nequierat, nequierant.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

Sing. <i>Queam, queas, queat.</i>	<i>nequĕam, nequeas, nequeat.</i>
Plur. <i>queamus, queatis, queant.</i>	<i>nequeamus, nequeatis, nequeant.</i>

Imperfect.

Sing. <i>Quirem, quiret.</i>	<i>nequirem, nequiret.</i>
Plur. — <i>quirent.</i>	<i>nequiremus, nequirent.</i>

Perfect.

Sing. ——— *quiverit.* *nequiverim, nequierit, nequierint.*

Pluperfect.

Sing. ——— ——— *nequisset.*
 Plur. ——— *quissent.* ——— *nequissent.*

INFINITIVE.

Quire, quivisse (quisse) *nequire, nequivisse (nequisse).*

PARTICIPLE.

Quiens (gen. queuntis). *nequiens (gen. nequeuntis).*

[§ 217.] 10. *Fio*, I become, or am made.

Fio is properly an intransitive verb, the Greek φύω, without a supine. But it is used also as a passive of *facio*, from which it takes the perfect *factus sum*, and the latter then receives the meaning "I have become," along with that of "I have been made." The infinitive *fieri* has the passive termination. In the present, imperfect, and future, it follows the third conjugation; for the *i* belongs to the root of the word, and is long, except in *fit* and those forms in which an *r* occurs in the inflection. (See § 16.)

INDICATIVE.

Present.

Sing. *Fio, fis, fit.*
 Plur. *firmus, fitis, fiunt.*

Imperfect.

Sing. *fiēbam, as, at.*
 Plur. *fiēbamus, atis, ant.*

Future.

Sing. *fiam, fies, fiet.*
 Plur. *fietus, fietis, fient.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

fiam, fias, fiat.
fiamus, fiatis, fiant.

Imperfect.

fiērem, es, et.
fieremus, etis, ent.

INFINITIVE.

fieri (factum esse, factum iri).

Part. Pres. is wanting.

The rest is supplied by the passive forms of *facere*: partic. *factus, faciendus*; perf. *factus sum, eram, ero*; infinit. *factum esse, factum iri*.

CHAP. LIX.

[§ 218.] DEFECTIVE VERBS.

THE term Defective Verbs is here applied to those only in which the defectiveness is striking, and which are found only in certain forms and combinations; for there is, besides, a very large number of defective verbs, of which certain tenses are not found on account of their meaning, or cannot be shown to have been used by the writers whose works have come down to us. Many of them have been noticed in the lists of verbs in the preceding Chapters. We shall here treat of the verbs *ajo* and *inquam*, I say; *fari*, to speak; the perfects *coepi*, *memini*, *novi* and *odi*; the imperatives *apage*, *ave*, *salve*, *vale*; *cedo* and *quaeso*; and lastly of *forem*.

1. *Ajo*, I say, say yes, or affirm.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
Present.		Present.	
Sing. <i>Ajo</i> , <i>ās</i> , <i>ait</i> .		Sing. — <i>ajas</i> , <i>ajat</i> .	
Plur. — <i>ājunt</i> .		Plur. — <i>ājant</i> .	
Imperfect.		(The imperative <i>ai</i> is obsolete. The participle <i>ajens</i> is used only as an adjunct instead of <i>affirmativus</i> .)	
Sing. <i>ajebam</i> , <i>ajebas</i> , <i>ajebat</i> .		All the rest is wanting or unclassical.	
Plur. <i>ajebamus</i> , <i>ajebatis</i> , <i>ajebant</i> .			
Perfect.			
Sing. — <i>ait</i> (like the present).			

[§ 219.] 2. *Inquam*, I say.

This verb is used only *between* the words of a quotation,

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
Present.		Present.	
Sing. <i>Inquam</i> , <i>inquis</i> , <i>inquit</i> .		Sing. — <i>inquias</i> , <i>inquiat</i> .	
Plur. <i>inquimus</i> , <i>inquitis</i> , <i>inquiunt</i> .		Plur. — <i>inquiatis</i> , <i>inquiant</i> .	
Imperfect.		Future.	
Sing. <i>inquirebam</i> , &c.		Sing. — <i>inquies</i> , <i>inquiet</i> .	
Plur. <i>inquirebamus</i> , &c.		Plur. — — — — —	
Perfect.		IMPERATIVE.	
Sing. — <i>inquisti</i> , <i>inquit</i> .		Sing. <i>inque</i> , <i>inquito</i> .	
Plur. — <i>inquistis</i> , — — —		Plur. <i>inquite</i> .	

[§ 220.] 3. *Fari*, to speak, say.

This very irregular verb, with its compounds *affari*, *effari*, *profari*, is, generally speaking, more used in poetry than in prose. The third persons of the present, *fatur*, *fantur*, the imperative *fare*, and the participle *fatus*, *a*, *um*, occur most frequently. The ablative of the gerund, *fando*, is used in a passive sense even in prose, in the phrase *fando audire*, to know by hearsay. The first person *for*, and the subjunctive *fer*, *feris*, *fetur*, &c. do not occur.

[§ 221.] 4. *Coepi*, 5. *Mēmīni*, 6. *Novi*, 7. *Odi*,
I have begun. I remember. I know. I hate.

These four verbs are perfects of obsolete presents, which have gone out of use, with the exception of *nosco*, and *coepio*, *coepere*. They consequently have those tenses only, which are derived from the perfect. In meaning, *mēmīni*, *nōvi*, and *ōdi* are presents; *novi*, I know, shows the transition most clearly, for it properly means "I have learnt to know." Hence the pluperfect has the meaning of an imperfect: *memineram*, I remembered; *noveram*, I knew; *oderam*, I hated, not "I had hated," and the future perfect has the signification of a simple future, e. g. *odero*, I shall hate; *meminero*, I shall remember. Otherwise the terminations are quite regular.

INDICATIVE.

Perfect.

<i>Coepi</i> ,	<i>Memini</i> ,	<i>Novi</i> ,	<i>Odi</i> ,
<i>coepisti</i> ,	<i>meministi</i> ,	<i>novisti (nosti)</i> ,	<i>odisti</i> ,
<i>coepit</i> .	<i>meminit</i> .	<i>novit</i> .	<i>odit</i> .
<i>coepimus</i> ,	<i>meminimus</i> ,	<i>novimus</i> ,	<i>odimus</i> ,
<i>coepistis</i> ,	<i>meministis</i> ,	<i>novistis (nostis)</i> ,	<i>odistis</i> ,
<i>coeperunt</i> .	<i>meminerunt</i> .	<i>noverunt (norunt)</i> .	<i>oderunt</i> .

Pluperfect.

<i>coeperam</i> , &c.	<i>memineram</i> , &c.	<i>noveram</i> , &c. (<i>noram</i> .)	<i>oderam</i> , &c.
-----------------------	------------------------	---	---------------------

Future.

<i>coepero</i> , &c.	<i>meminero</i> , &c.	<i>novero</i> ,	<i>odero</i> , &c.
		<i>noveris</i> , &c. (<i>noris</i> .)	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Perfect.

<i>coeperim, &c.</i>	<i>meminerim, &c.</i>	<i>noverim, &c.</i> (<i>norim.</i>)	<i>oderim, &c.</i>
--------------------------	---------------------------	--	------------------------

Pluperfect.

<i>coepissem, &c.</i>	<i>meminissem, &c.</i>	<i>novissem, &c.</i> (<i>nossem.</i>)	<i>odissem, &c.</i>
---------------------------	----------------------------	--	-------------------------

IMPERATIVE.

_____	only the sing. <i>memento</i> and plur. <i>mementote.</i>	_____	_____
-------	---	-------	-------

INFINITIVE.

<i>coepisse.</i>	<i>meminisse.</i>	<i>novisse.</i>	<i>odisse.</i>
------------------	-------------------	-----------------	----------------

PARTICIPLES.

Perf. pass. <i>coeptus</i> _____	_____	(<i>perosus, exosus</i> , with an active meaning).
Fut. act. <i>coepturus.</i> _____	_____	<i>osurus.</i>

[§ 222.]	8. <i>Apāge</i> , be gone.	9. <i>Ave</i> , hail.	10. <i>Salve</i> , hail.	11. <i>Vale</i> , farewell.
----------	-------------------------------	--------------------------	-----------------------------	--------------------------------

Note. *Apāge* is the Greek imperative ἀπάγε of ἀπάγω, and is therefore joined with the accus.: *apage istas sorores!* away with them! *apage te*, get thyself off, or, with the omission of the pronoun, *apage*, begone! *Salveo*, which rarely occurs, may be regarded as the present of *salve*. *Vale* and *ave* are regular imperatives of *valeo*, I am well, and *aveo*, I desire; and they are mentioned here only on account of their change of meaning.

The plural is, *avēte, salvēte, valēte*; the imperat. fut. *avēto, salvēto, valēto*. The future is *salvebis, valebis*, and the infinitives *avere, salvere, valere*.

[§ 223.] 12. *Cēdo*, give, tell.

This word is used as an imperative in familiar language, for *da* and *dic*, both with and without an accusative. ▲ plural *cette* for *cedite* occurs in old Latin. (The complete verb *cedo*, yield, has a long *e*.)

[§ 224.] 13. *Quaeso*, I beseech.

Quaeso is originally the same as *quaero*, but in good prose it is generally inserted in another sentence. Besides this first person singular, we find only the first person plural *quaesumus*.

14. *Forem*, I should be.

This imperfect subjunctive, which is otherwise conjugated regularly, has arisen from *fuero* of the obsolete verb *fuō*, and belongs to *sum*. It is equivalent to *essem*; the singular exists complete, but of the plural we have only *forent*. Its infinit. *fore* is equivalent to *futurum* (*am, um, os, as, a*) *esse*.

CHAP. LX.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

[§ 225.] 1. THE term Impersonal Verbs strictly applies only to those of which no other but the third person singular is used, and which do not admit a personal subject (I, thou, he), the subject being a proposition, an infinitive, or a neuter noun understood. (See § 441. &c.) Verbs of this kind are:

Miseret (*me*), I pity, perfect *misertum* or *miseritum est*.

Piget (*me*), I regret, *piguit* or *pigitum est*.

Poenitet (*me*), I repent, *poenituit*, fut. *poenitebit*.

Pudet (*me*), I am ashamed, *puduit* or *puditum est*.

Taedet (*me*), I am disgusted with (*taeduit* very rare), *per-taesum est*.

Oportet, it is necessary, *oportuit*, fut. *oportebit*.

[§ 226.] 2. Besides these impersonals, there are some others, which likewise have no personal subject, but yet are used in the third person plural, and may have a nominative (at least a neuter pronoun) as their subject. Such verbs are:

Libet (*mihi*), I like, choose; perf. *libuit* or *libitum est*.

Licet (*mihi*), I am permitted; perf. *licuit* or *licitum est*.

Decet (me), it becomes me, and *dedecet*, it does not become me; perf. *deceit*, *dedecuit*.

Liquet, it is obvious; perf. *licuit*.

[§ 227.] 3. There is also a considerable number of verbs which are used impersonally in the third person, while their other persons occur with more or less difference in meaning. To these belong: *interest* and *refert* in the sense of "it is of importance to," with which no nominative can be used as a subject; further, *accidit*, *fit*, *evenit*, and *contingit*, it happens; *accedit*, it is added to, or in addition to; *attinet* and *pertinet* (*ad aliquid*), it concerns; *conducit*, it is conducive; *convenit*, it suits; *constat*, it is known or established; *expedit*, it is expedient; *delectat* and *juvat*, it delights, pleases; *fallit*, *fugit*, and *praeterit me*, it escapes me, I do not know; *placet*, it pleases; perf. *placuit* and *placitum est*; *praestat*, it is better; *restat*, it remains; *vacat*, it is wanting; *est*, in the sense of *licet*, it is permitted or possible, e. g. *est videre*, *non est dicere verum*.

[§ 228.] 4. The verbs which denote the changes of the weather: *pluit*, it rains; *ningit*, it snows; *grandinat*, it hails; *lapidat* (perf. also *lapidatum est*), stones fall from heaven; *fulgurat* and *fulminat*, it lightens (with this difference, that *fulminat* is used of a flash of lightning which strikes an object); *tonat*, it thunders; *lucescit* and *illucescit*, it dawns; *vesperascit*, the evening approaches; — in all these cases the subject understood is supposed to be *deus* or *coelum*, which are in fact often added as their subjects.

[§ 229.] 5. The third person singular passive of a great many words, especially of those denoting movement or saying, is or may be used impersonally, even when the verb is neuter, and has no personal passive, e. g. *curritur*, they or people run; *itur*, *ventum est*, *clamatur*, *fletur*, *scribitur*, *bibitur*, &c.

[§ 230.] 6. All these impersonal verbs, as such, have no imperative, the place of which is supplied by the present subjunctive, e. g. *pudeat te*, be ashamed of! The participles also (together with the forms derived from them, the gerund and the infinitive future) are wanting, with a few exceptions, such as *libens*, *pudendus*.

CHAP. LXI.

ETYMOLOGY OF NOUNS AND VERBS.

[§ 231.] THE formation of new words from others previously existing takes place either by *Derivation*, that is, the addition of certain terminations; or by *Composition*. In regard to derivation, we have to distinguish *primitive* and *derivative* words; and, with regard to composition, *simple* and *compound* words. We shall first treat of derivation.

Note. We have hitherto treated of the changes which one particular form of nouns and verbs, which was supposed to be known (the nominative in nouns, and the infinitive in verbs); may undergo in forming cases and numbers, persons, tenses, moods, &c. But the origin of that form, itself, which is taken as the basis in inflection, is explained in a special branch of the study of language which is called *Etymology*. Its object is to trace all the words of the language to their roots, and therefore leads us from the Latin to the Greek language, since both are nearly allied, and since the Greek was developed at an earlier period than the Latin. We cannot, however, here enter into these investigations, and must content ourselves with ascertaining, within the Latin language itself, the most prominent rules in the formation of new words from other more simple ones; a knowledge of these rules is useful to the beginner, since it facilitates his acquiring the language. We shall confine ourselves to nouns (substantive and adjective) and verbs, for the derivation and composition of pronouns and numerals have been discussed in a former part of this work; with regard to the (unchangeable) particles, on the other hand, etymology is necessary, as it supplies the place of inflection.

I. VERBS.

Verbs are derived either from other verbs or from nouns.

A. With regard to the former, we distinguish four classes of verbs: 1. *Frequentatives*; 2. *Desideratives*; 3. *Diminutives*; and 4. *Inchoatives*.

1. *Frequentatives* follow the first conjugation, and denote the frequent repetition or an increase of the action, expressed by the primitive verb. They are derived from the supine by changing the regular *atum*, in the first conjugation into *ito*, *itare*; other verbs remain unchanged, the *termination* of the supine, *um*, alone being changed into *o*,

are. Of the former kind *are*, e. g., *clamo*, *clamito*; *impero*, *imperito*; *rogito*, *volito*; of the latter, *domo*, *domitum*, *domito*; *adjuvo*, *adjūtum*, *adjūto*; and from verbs of the third conjugation, *curro*, *cursum*, *curso*; *cano*, *cantum*, *canto*; *dico*, *dictum*, *dicto*; *nosco*, *notum*, *noto*; and so also *accepto*, *pulso*, *defenso*, *gesto*, *quasso*, *tracto*. Some of these latter frequentatives, derived from verbs of the third conjugation, serve again as primitives from which new frequentatives are formed, as *cursito*, *dictito*, *defensito*.

Some few frequentatives with the termination *ito*, *itare*, are not derived from the supine, but from the present of the primitive verb: *agito*, *noscito*, *quaerito*. Some frequentatives have the deponential form, as *amplexor* from *amplector*, *minitor* from *minor*, *tutor* from *tueor*, *scitor* and *sciscitor* from *scisco*.

[§ 232.] 2. *Desideratives* end in *ūrio*, *ūrīre*; they follow the fourth conjugation, and express a desire of that which is implied in the primitive. They are formed from the supine of the latter, e. g. *esūrio*, *esūris*, I want to eat, from *edo*, *esum*; so also *dicturio* from *dictum*, *empturio* from *emptum*.

[§ 233.] 3. *Diminutives* have the termination *illo*, *illare*, which is added to the stem of the primitive verb, without any further change, and they describe the action expressed as something trifling or insignificant; e. g. *cantillare* from *cantare*, to sing in an under voice, or sing with a shaking; *conscribillare*, scribble; *sorbillare* from *sorbere*, sip. The number of these verbs is not great.

[§ 234.] 4. *Inchoatives* have the termination *sco*, and follow the third conjugation. They express the beginning of the act or condition denoted by the primitive; e. g. *caleo*, I am warm, *calesco*, I am getting or becoming warm; *areo*, I am dry, *aresco*, I begin to be dry; *languéo*, I am languid, *languesco*, I am becoming languid. It frequently happens that a preposition is prefixed to an inchoative, as in *timeo*, *pertimesco*; *taceo*, *conticesco*. The vowel preceding the termination *sco*, *scēre*, is either *a* (*asco*), *e* (*esco*), or *i* (*isco*), according as the inchoative is derived from a primitive of the first, second, or third and fourth conjugation (in the last two cases it is *i*); e. g.

labasco from *labare*, totter.

pallesco from *pallēre*, be pale.

ingemisco from *gemere*, sigh.

obdormisco from *dormire*, sleep.

Many inchoatives, however, are not derived from verbs, but from substantives and adjectives ; e. g.

puerasco, I become childish, from *puer*.

maturesco, I become ripe, from *maturus*, *a*, *um*.

All inchoatives take their perfect and the tenses derived from it, from the primitive verb, and where no primitive verb exists, from a supposed form of it. (See Chap. LII., the list of the most important inchoatives.) It must, however, be observed, that not all verbs ending in *sco* are inchoatives. See § 203.

[§ 235.] B. In regard to the derivation of verbs from nouns, the language in general follows the principle of giving the termination of the second conjugation to verbs of an intransitive signification, and that of the first to such as have a transitive signification. Thus we have, e. g.

a) *flos, floris, florere*, bloom.
frons, frondis, frondere, have foliage.

vis, vires, virere, be strong.

lux, lucis, lucere, shine.

but,

b) *numerus, numerare*, count.

signum, signare, mark.

fraus, fraudis, fraudare, deceive.

nomen, nominis, nominare, name.

vulnus, vulneris, vulnerare, wound.

arma, armare, arm.

and from adjectives,

albus, albere, be white.

calvus, calvere, be bald.

flavus, flavere, be yellow.

hebes, hebere, be blunt or dull.

albus, albare, whitewash.

aptus, aptare, fit.

liber, a, um, liberare, liberate.

celeber, bris, bre, celebrare, make frequent, or celebrate.

memor, memorare, mention.

communis, communicare, communicate.

Both kinds are found compounded with prepositions ; e. g.

Laqueus, illaqueare, entwine ; *acervus, coacervare*, accumulate ; *stirps, extirpare*, extirpate ; *cavus, excavare*, hollow out.

The observation of § 147. must be repeated here, that many deponents of the first conjugation (in *ari*) are derived from substantives for the purpose of expressing "to be that which the substantive indicates ;" e. g. among the first verbs in the list there given, we find *aemulari, ancillari, architectari, aucupari, augurari* ; and in like manner : *comes, comitis, comitari* ; *dominus, dominari* ; *fur, furari*.

II. SUBSTANTIVES.

[§ 236.] Substantives are derived —

A. From Verbs.

1. By the termination *or*, appended in place of the *um* of the supine in transitive verbs, to denote a man performing the action implied in the verb; e. g.

<i>amator</i> ,	<i>monitor</i> ,	<i>lector</i> ,	<i>auditor</i> ,
<i>adulator</i> ,	<i>fautor</i> ,	<i>conditor</i> ,	<i>conditor</i> ,
<i>adjutor</i> ,	<i>censor</i> ,	<i>petitor</i> ,	<i>largitor</i> ,

and a great many others. Those which end in *tor* form feminines in *trix*, as *fautrix*, *adjutrix*, *victrix*. In regard to the masculines in *sor*, the formation of feminines is more difficult, but *tonsor* makes *tonstrix*; *defensor*, *defenstrix*; and *expulsor* makes *expultrix*.

Some few substantives ending in *tor* are formed also from nouns; as *aleator*, gambler, from *alea*; *janitor*, from *janua*; *viator* from *via*.

2. The same termination *or*, when added to the unaltered stem of a word, especially of intransitive verbs, expresses the action or condition denoted by the verb substantively; e. g. *pavere*, *pavor*, fear; *furere*, *furor*, fury; *nitere*, *nitor*, shine or gloss. So also, e. g.

<i>clamor</i> ,	<i>albor</i> ,	<i>horror</i> ,	<i>favor</i> ,	<i>ardor</i> ,
<i>amor</i> ,	<i>rubor</i> ,	<i>timor</i> ,	<i>maeror</i> ,	<i>splendor</i> .

[§ 237.] 3. Two terminations, viz. *io*, gen. *ionis*, and *us*, gen. *ūs*, when added to the supine after throwing off the *um*, express the action or condition denoted by the verb *abstractedly*. Both terminations are frequently met with in substantives derived from the same verb, without any material difference, as *concurso* and *concursum*, *consensio* and *consensus*; so also *contemptio* and *contemptus*, *digressio* and *digressus*, *motio* and *motus*, and others.

In this manner are formed from actives and deponents, for example,

a) <i>accubio</i> .	<i>motio</i> .	<i>lectio</i> .	<i>auditio</i> .
<i>cunctatio</i> .	<i>cautio</i> .	<i>ultio</i> .	<i>sortitio</i> .
<i>acclamatio</i> .	<i>admonitio</i> .	<i>actio</i> .	<i>largitio</i> .
b) <i>metus</i> .	<i>fletus</i> .	<i>cantus</i> .	<i>ambitus</i> .
<i>sonitus</i> .	<i>visus</i> .	<i>congressus</i> .	<i>ortus</i> .

Note. A third termination producing pretty nearly the same meaning is *ura*; as in *pictura*, painting; *conjectura*, conjecture; *cultura*, cul-

tivation. Sometimes it exists along with the other two, as in *positio*, *positus*, *positura*; *censio*, *census*, *censura*. Usually, however, one of them is preferred, in practice, with a special meaning. Thus we have *mercatus*, the market, and *mercatura*, commerce.

[§ 238.] 4. The termination *men*, or more frequently *mentum*, denotes the means of attaining what the verb expresses; e. g. *solamen*, a means of consolation; *nomen* (from *novimen*), a means of recognising, that is, a name; *tegumentum*, *velamentum*, *adjumentum* from *adjuvare*, a means of relief, *condimentum* from *condire*, condiment, i. e. a means of seasoning; *documentum*, a document; a means of showing or proving a thing. Similar words are:

allevamentum. *monumentum*. *additamentum*. *experimentum*.
ornamentum. *fomentum*. *alimentum*. *blandimentum*.

Some substantives of this kind are derived from nouns; thus from *ater*, black, we have *atramentum*. The connecting vowel *a* before *mentum*, however, may show that a link was conceived to exist between the primitive *ater* and the derivative *atramentum*, such, perhaps, as a verb *atrare*, blacken. In like manner we have *calceamentum*, a covering for the feet; *capillamentum*, a head-dress, wig.

[§ 239.] 5. The terminations *būlum* and *cūlum* (or *ūlum*, when *c* or *g* precedes) denote an instrument or a place serving a certain purpose; e. g. *venabulum*, a hunter's spear; *vehiculum*, a vehicle; *jaculum*, a javelin; *cingulum*, a girdle; *stabulum*, a stable. So also,

umbraculum. *cubiculum*. *ferculum*. *vinculum*.

The termination *cūlum* is sometimes contracted into *clum*, as in *vinclum*; and *clum* is changed into *crum*, and *bulum* into *brum*, when there is already an *l* in the stem of the word; e. g. *fulcrum*, support; *lavacrum*, bath; *sepulcrum*, sepulchre; *flagrum*, scourge; *ventilabrum*. A similar meaning belongs to *trum* in *aratrum*, plough; *claustrum*, lock; *rostrum*, beak. Some words of this class are derived from substantives, as *turibulum*, censer (*tus*, *turis*); *acetabulum*, vinegar cruet.

6. Other and less productive terminations are *a* and *o*, which, when appended to the stem of the word, denote the subject of the action: *conviva*, guest; *advena*, stranger; *scriba*, scribe; *erro*, vagrant; *bibo*, drunkard. By means of the termination *io* words are derived from substantives, denoting a trade to which a person belongs, as *pellio*, furrier; *rope-maker*.

-ium expresses the effect of the verb and the place of the action; e. g. *gaudium*, joy; *odium*, hatred; *aedificium*, building, edifice; *re-* and *confugium*, place of refuge; *comitium*, place of assembly.

-igo expresses a state or condition, and mostly a diseased one: *vertigo*, giddiness; *prurigo*, itch; and others.

[§ 240.] B. From other Substantives.

1. Diminutives, or *voçabula diminuta*, are mostly formed by the terminations *ŭlŭs*, *ŭla*, *ŭlum*, or *cŭlus*, *a*, *um*, according to the gender of the primitive word: *ulus*, *a*, *um*, is appended to the stem after the removal of the termination of the oblique cases, e. g. *virga*, *virgula*; *puer*, *puerulus*; *rex* (*regis*), *regulus*. So also,

<i>portula.</i>	<i>nummulus.</i>	<i>rapulum.</i>	<i>facula.</i>
<i>litterula.</i>	<i>hortulus.</i>	<i>oppidulum.</i>	<i>adolescentulus.</i>

Instead of *ulus*, *a*, *um*, we find *ŭlus*, *a*, *um*, when the termination of the primitive substantive, *us*, *a*, *um*, is preceded by a vowel, e. g.

<i>filiolus.</i>	<i>gloriola.</i>	<i>ingeniolum.</i>
<i>alveolus.</i>	<i>lineola.</i>	<i>horreolum.</i>

The termination *cŭlus*, *a*, *um*, is sometimes appended to the nominative, without any change, viz. in words ending in *l* and *r*, and in those ending in *os* and *us* of the third declension, which take an *r* in the genitive; e. g.

<i>corculum.</i>	<i>fraterculus.</i>	<i>flosculus.</i>	<i>munusculum.</i>
<i>tuberculum.</i>	<i>sororcula.</i>	<i>osculum.</i>	<i>corpusculum.</i>

And so also *animalculum*, *uxorcula*, *laterculus*. Sometimes the *s* of the nominative terminations *is* and *es* is dropped, as in

<i>igniculus.</i>	<i>aedicula.</i>	<i>nubecula.</i>	<i>diecula.</i>
<i>pisciculus.</i>	<i>pellicula.</i>	<i>vulpecula.</i>	<i>plebecula.</i>

In words of other terminations of the third declension, and in those of the fourth, *i* steps in as a connecting vowel between the stem of the word and the diminutive termination *culus*, *cula*, *culum*; e. g.

<i>ponticulus.</i>	<i>denticulus.</i>	<i>versiculus.</i>	<i>anicula.</i>
<i>particula.</i>	<i>ossiculum.</i>	<i>articulus.</i>	<i>corniculum.</i>
<i>coticula</i>	<i>reticulum.</i>	<i>sensiculus.</i>	<i>geniculum.</i>

The termination *ellus, a, um*, occurs only in those words of the first and second declensions which have *l, n, or r*, in their terminations. Thus *oculus* makes *ocellus*; *tabula*, *tabella*; *asinus*, *asellus*; *liber*, *libellus*; *libra*, *libella*; *lucrum*, *lucellum*. So also *popellus*, *fabella*, *lamella*, *patella*, *agellus*, *cultellus*, *flabellum*, *flagellum*, *labellum*, *sacellum*. The termination *illus, a, um*, occurs more rarely, as in *bacillum*, *sigillum*, *tigillum*; *codicillus*, *lapillus*, *anguilla*. The termination *unculus, a, um*, is appended chiefly to words in *o*, gen. *onis* or *inis*; as,

<i>sermunculus.</i>	<i>ratiuncula.</i>	<i>homunculus.</i>
<i>pugiunculus.</i>	<i>quaestiuncula.</i>	<i>virguncula.</i>

[§ 241.] 2. The termination *ium* appended to the radical syllable of the primitive expresses either an assemblage of things or persons, or their relation to one another; e. g. *collega*, *collegium*, an assembly of men who are *collegae* (colleagues) of one another; so *convivium*, repast, or assembly of *convivae*; *servitium*, the domestics, also servitude; *sacerdotium*, the office of priest; *ministerium*, service. When this termination is appended to verbal substantives in *or*, it denotes the place of the action, as in *repositorium*, repository; *conditorium*, a place where a thing is kept, tomb; *auditorium*, a place where people assemble for the purpose of listening to a person.

[§ 242.] 3. *-arium* denotes a receptacle; e. g. *granarium*, a granary or place where grain is kept; *armarium* (*arma*), a cupboard; *armamentarium*, arsenal, or place where the *armamenta* are kept. So also *plantarium* and *seminarium*, *columbarium*, *tabularium*.

[§ 243.] 4. *-ētum* appended to the names of plants denotes the place where they grow in great number; e. g. *quercus*, *quercetum*, a plantation of oaks; so also *vinetum*, *lauretum*, *esculetum*, *dumetum*, *myrtetum*, *olivetum*; and with some change, *salictum* (from *salix*), pasture, instead of *salicetum*, *virgultum* instead of *virguletum*, *arbustum* from *arbos* (for *arbor*), instead of *arboretum*.

[§ 244.] 5. *-ile* appended to names of animals indicates the place in which they are kept; e. g. *bubile* or *bovile*, stall of oxen; *equile*, stable (of horses); so also *caprile*, *hoedile*, *ovile*. All these words are properly neuters of adjectives, but their other genders are not used.

[§ 245.] 6. With regard to *patronymics*, or names of

descent, which the Latin poets have adopted from the poetical language of the Greeks, the student must be referred to the Greek grammar. The most common termination is *ides*, as *Priamus*, *Priamides*; *Cecrops*, *Cecropides*; names in *eus* and *cles* make *ides*; e. g. *Atrides*, *Pelides*, *Heracidae*. Names in *as* of the first declension make their patronymics in *ādes*; as *Aeneas*, *Aeneades*. The termination *iādes* should properly occur only in names ending in *ius*, such as *Thestius*, *Thestiades*; but it is used also in other names, according to the requirements of the particular verse; as *Laertes*, *Laertiades*; *Atlas*, *Atlantiades*; *Telamon*, *Telamoniades*.

The feminine patronymics are derived from the masculines by *ides* being changed into *is*, *ides* into *ēis*, and *iades* into *ias*; e. g. *Tantalides*, *Tantalīs*; *Nereus*, *Nerēis*; *Thestius*, *Thestias*. *Aeneades* (from *Aeneas*) alone makes the feminine *Aenēis*, because the regular feminine, *Aenēas*, would be the same as the primitive.

[§ 246.] C. From Adjectives.

1. The termination *itas* is the most common in forming substantives denoting the quality expressed by the adjective as an abstract notion, and is equivalent to the English *ity*. The adjective itself in appending *itas* undergoes the same changes as in its oblique cases. Thus from *atrox*, *atroci*, we obtain *atrocitas*; from *cupidus*, *cupidi*, *cupiditas*. So also *capax*, *capacitas*; *celer*, *celeritas*; *crudelis*, *crudelitas*; *facilis*, *facilitas*; *clarus*, *claritas*; *verus*, *veritas*. *Libertas* and *paupertas* are formed without the *i*, and *facultas* and *difficultas* with a change of the vowel, as in the adverb *difficulter*.

The adjectives in *ius* make their substantives in *ietas*; e. g. *anxietas*, *pietas*, *varietas*; those in *stus* make them in *stas*: *honestas*, *venustas*, *vetustas*.

2. Another very common termination is *ia*, but it occurs only in substantives derived from adjectives of one termination, *ia* being added to the crude form of the oblique cases. From *audax*, we have *audacia*, and from *concor*, *concordia*. So also *clemens*, *clementia*; *constans*, *constantia*; *impudentia*, *elegantia*, *appetentia*. Some adjectives in *us* and *er*, however, likewise form their substantives in *ia*; e. g. *miser*, *miseria*; *angustus*, *angustia*; *perfidus*, *perfidia*.

[§ 247.] 3. There are numerous substantives in which *tudo* is appended to the case of the adjective ending in *i*; e. g. *aeplitudo*, *altitudo*, *magnitudo*; and in polysyllables in *tus*, *tudo* directly grows out of this termination, as in *consuetudo*, *mansuetudo*, *inquietudo*, *sollicitudo*. Some of these substantives exist along with other forms, as *beatitudo*, *claritudo*, *firmitudo*, *lenitudo*, and *sanctitudo*, along with *beatitas*, *claritas*, *firmitas*, &c. *Valetudo* stands alone.

4. Substantives in *itia*, from adjectives in *us*, are of more rare occurrence, as *justitia* from *justus*. So *avaritia*, *laetitia*, *maestitia*, *pudicitia*; but also *tristitia* from *tristis*.

5. The termination *edo* occurs only in a few substantives; as *albedo*, *dulcedo*, *pinguedo*.

III. ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives are derived —

A. From Verbs.

[§ 248.] 1. With the termination *bundus*, chiefly from verbs of the first conjugation, e. g. *errabundus* from *errare*, *gratulabundus* from *gratulari*, *populabundus* from *populari*. Their signification is, in general, that of a participle present, with the meaning strengthened, a circumstance which we must express in English by the addition of other words; e. g. *haesitabundus*, full of hesitation; *deliberabundus*, full of deliberation; *mirabundus*, full of admiration; *venerabundus*, full of veneration; *lacrimabundus*, weeping profusely. There are but few adjectives of this kind derived from verbs of the third conjugation: *fremebundus*, *gemebundus*, *furibundus*, *ludibundus*, *moribundus*, *nitibundus*. There is only one from a verb of the second conjugation, viz. *pudibundus*; and likewise one only from a verb of the fourth, *lascivibundus*.

Some verbal adjectives in *cundus* are of a similar kind: *facundus*, eloquent; *iracundus*, irascible; *verecundus*, full of bashfulness; *rubicundus*, the same as *rubens*, reddish.

[§ 249.] 2. The ending *idus*, chiefly in adjectives formed from intransitive verbs, simply denotes the quality expressed by the verb:

calidus, from *calere*.

algidus, from *algere*.

madidus, from *madere*.

rubidus, from *rubere*.

turgidus, from *turgere*.

rapidus, from *rapere*.

3. The terminations *ilis* and *bilis* denote the possibility of a thing in a passive sense ; e. g. *amabilis*, easy to love, hence amiable ; *placabilis*, easy to be conciliated ; *delebilis*, easy to be destroyed ; *vincibilis*, easy to be conquered ; *facilis*, easy to do ; *docilis*, docile ; *fragilis*, fragile. Some of these adjectives, however, have an active meaning : *horribilis*, producing horror, horrible ; *terribilis*, terrible, that is, producing terror ; *fertilis*, fertile.

4. *-ax* appended to the stem of the verb expresses a propensity, and generally a faulty one :

edax and *vorax*.

audax.

loquax.

rapax.

[§ 250.] B. From Substantives, viz.

a) From Appellatives :

1. The ending *eus* denotes the material, and sometimes similarity, e. g.

ferreus.

ligneus.

plumbeus.

virgineus.

aureus.

citreus.

cinereus.

igneus.

argenteus.

buxeus.

corporeus.

vitreus.

2. *-icus* expresses belonging or relating to a thing ; e. g. *classicus* from *classis* ; *civicus*, relating to a citizen ; *dominicus*, belonging to a master ; *bellicus*, relating to war, &c.

3. The termination *ilis* has the same meaning, but assumes also a moral signification, e. g. *civilis* and *hostilis*, the same as *civicus* and *hosticus*, but also answering to our civil and hostile. So *servilis*, *senilis*, *anilis*, *juvenilis*, *puerilis*, *virilis*.

4. The endings *aceus* and *icius* sometimes express a material and sometimes the origin, e. g. *chartaceus*, *papyraceus*, *patricius*, *tribunicius*.

[§ 251.] 5. The termination *alis* (in English *al*) is appended not only to words in *a*, but also to substantives of other terminations, in which case, however, the termination is appended to the crude form of the oblique cases ; e. g. *ancora*, *conviva*, *letum* — *ancoralis*, *convivalis*, *letalis* ; but from *rex*, *regis*, we have *regalis* ; *virgo*, *virginalis* ; *sacerdos*, *sacerdotalis* ; *caput*, *capitalis*. So also *auguralis*, *comitialis*, *annalis*, *fluvialis*, *mortalis*, and others.

The ending *aris* is somewhat more seldom, and princ-

pally occurs in such words as contain an *l* ; such as, *articularis, consularis, popularis, puellaris, vulgaris, Apollinaris*.

The termination *atilis* denotes fitness for the thing expressed by the root ; as, *aquatilis, fluviatilis, volatilis*.

6. The termination *ius* occurs most frequently in derivatives from personal nouns in *or* ; e. g. *accusatorius, amatorius, aleatorius, censorius, imperatorius, praetorius*. It occurs more rarely in substantives of other terminations, though we have *regius, patrius, aquilonius*.

[§ 252.] 7. *-inus* is found especially in derivatives from names of animals (especially to denote their flesh), e. g.

<i>asininus.</i>	<i>ferinus.</i>	<i>haedinus.</i>	<i>anserinus.</i>
<i>caninus.</i>	<i>equinus.</i>	<i>caballinus.</i>	<i>anatinus.</i>
<i>camelinus.</i>	<i>taurinus.</i>	<i>arietinus.</i>	<i>viperinus.</i>

And in a few derived from names of other living beings, e. g. *divinus, masculinus, marinus*.

The termination *inus*, on the other hand, occurs chiefly in derivatives from names of plants and minerals, to denote the material of which a thing is made ; e. g. *cedrinus, faginus, adamantinus, crystallinus*. See § 20.

8. The termination *arius* expresses a general relation to the noun from which the adjective is formed, but more particularly the occupation or profession of a person ; e. g.

<i>coriarius.</i>	<i>carbonarius.</i>	<i>scapharius.</i>	<i>ostiarius.</i>
<i>statuarius.</i>	<i>aerarius.</i>	<i>navicularius.</i>	<i>consiliarius.</i>
<i>sicarius.</i>	<i>argentarius.</i>	<i>codicarius.</i>	<i>classarius.</i>

9. The ending *osus* denotes fulness or abundance ; as in

<i>aerumnosus.</i>	<i>aquosus.</i>	<i>bellicosus.</i>
<i>animosus.</i>	<i>lapidosus.</i>	<i>caliginosus.</i>
<i>artificiosus.</i>	<i>vinosus.</i>	<i>tenebricosus.</i>
<i>actuosus.</i>	<i>portuosus.</i>	<i>saltuosus.</i>

10. The termination *lentus* denotes plenty, and is commonly preceded by the vowel *ũ*, and sometimes by *õ* :

<i>fraudentus.</i>	<i>vinolentus.</i>	<i>pulverulentus.</i>
<i>turbulentus.</i>	<i>opulentus.</i>	<i>violentus.</i>

11. Less productive and significant terminations are : *-anus* which denotes belonging to a thing : *urbanus, montanus, humanus* ; — *ivus* generally denotes the manner or nature of a thing : *furtivus, votivus, aestivus* ; — *ernus* denotes origin : *fraternus, maternus, paternus, infernus, ex-*

ternus. The same termination and *urnus* occur in adjectives denoting time : *vernus*, *hibernus*, *hesternus*, *diurnus*, *nocturnus* ; — *itimus* occurs in *finitimus*, *legitimus*, *maritimus*.

[§ 253.] 12. A very extensive class of derivative adjectives end in *atus*, like participles perfect passive of the first conjugation, but they are derived at once from substantives, without its being possible to show the existence of an intermediate verb. Thus we have, e. g., *aurum* and *auratus*, gilt ; but a verb *aurare* does not occur, and its existence is assumed only for the sake of derivation. Some adjectives of this kind are formed from substantives in *is* and end in *itus*, as *auritus*, provided with ears ; *pellitus*, covered with a skin ; *turritus*, having towers. Some few are formed by the ending *utus* from substantives in *us*, gen. *us* ; as *cornutus*, *astutus*. Those in *atus* are very numerous, e. g.,

<i>barbatus.</i>	<i>calceatus.</i>	<i>aeratus.</i>
<i>togatus.</i>	<i>clipeatus.</i>	<i>dentatus.</i>
<i>galeatus.</i>	<i>oculatus.</i>	<i>falcatus.</i>

[§ 254.] *b*) From Proper Names.

We may here distinguish four classes : — 1. names of men, 2. of towns, 3. of nations, 4. of countries.

1. The termination *ianus* is the most common in forming adjectives from Roman names of men, as *Tullianus*, *Servilianus*, *Crassianus*, *Marcellianus*, *Paulianus*, *Caesarianus*, *Catonianus*, *Ciceronianus* : *anus* occurs less frequently ; as *Cinnanus*, *Gracchanus*, *Sullanus*. The termination *inus* is found chiefly in derivatives from names of families, e. g. *Messalinus*, *Paulinus*, *Rufinus*. The termination *eus*, as in *Caesareus*, *Herculeus*, is used only by poets.

There are two terminations for forming adjectives from Greek names of men, *eus* or *ius* (in Greek *εως*) and *icus*, as *Homericus*, *Platonicus*, *Socraticus*, *Achilleus*, *Epicureus*, *Sophocleus*.

[§ 255.] 2. From names of places, and chiefly from those of towns, adjectives are derived ending in *ensis*, *inus*, *as* and *anus*.

a) *-ensis*, also from some common or appellative nouns, e. g. *castrensis* from *castra* ; *circensis* from *circus* ; and from names of towns : *Cannae*, *Cannensis* ; *Catina*, *Catinensis* ; *Ariminum*, *Ariminensis* ; *Comum*, *Comensis* ; *Mediolanum*, *Mediolanensis* ; *Sulmo*, *Sulmonensis* ; from (Greek) towns in *ia* (*ēa*) : *Antiochensis*, *Nicomedensis*.

β) *-inus* from names in *ia* and *ium*; e. g. *Ameria*, *Amerinus*; *Aricia*, *Aricinus*; *Florentia*, *Florentinus*; *Caudium*, *Caudinus*; *Clusium*, *Clusinus*; *Canusium*, *Canusinus*. And so also from *Latium*, *Latinus*, and from *Capitolium*, *Capitolinus*.

γ) *-as* (for all genders) is used less extensively, and forms adjectives only from names of towns in *um*, though not from all. It occurs in *Arpinum*, *Arpinas*; *Aquinum*, *Aquinas*; *Privernum*, *Privernas*; *Casilinum*, *Casilinas* (along with *Casilinensis*). But *Ravenna* also makes *Ravennas*; *Capena*, *Capenas*; *Ardea*, *Ardeas*.

δ) *-anus* from some appellative nouns, as *montanus*, *fontanus*, *urbanus* (from *mons*, *fons*, *urbs*,) and from names of towns in *a* and *ae*; e. g. *Roma*, *Romanus*; *Alba*, *Albanus*; *Sparta*, *Spartanus*; *Cumae*, *Cumanus*; *Syracusae*, *Syracusanus*; *Thebae*, *Thebanus*; also from some in *um* and *i*: *Tusculum*, *Tusculanus*; *Fundi*, *Fundanus*.

[§ 256.] Greek adjectives, however, formed from names of towns, or such as were introduced into Latin through the literature of the Greeks, follow different rules which must be learned from a Greek grammar. We will here only remark that the most frequent ending is *ius*; e. g. *Aegyptus*, *Aegyptius*; *Lesbos*, *Lesbius*; *Rhodus*, *Rhodius*; *Corinthus*, *Corinthius*; *Ephesus*, *Ephesius*; *Chius*, *Chlus* (instead of *Chitus*); *Lacedaemon*, *Lacedaemonius*; *Marathon*, *Marathonius*; *Salamis*, *Salaminius*; *Eretria*, *Eretrius*. Names in *a* take the termination *aeus*, as *Smyrna*, *Smyrnaeus*; *Tegea*, *Tegeaeus*; *Larissa*, *Larissaeus*; *Perga*, *Pergaeus*. In the case of towns not in Greece, even when they are of Greek origin, we most frequently find the termination *inus*: *Tarentum*, *Tarentinus*; *Agrigentum*, *Agrigentinus*; *Centuripae*, *Centuripinus*; *Metapontum*, *Metapontinus*. It not unfrequently happened that the Romans formed adjectives from Greek names of towns in their own way, and without any regard to the Greek forms; e. g. *Atheniensis* instead of *Athenaeus*, *Thebanus* instead of *Thebaeus*, *Syracusanus* along with *Syracusius*. The Greek ending *eus* was most commonly changed into *ensis*; and *lrys* into *anus*, as in *Panormitanus*, *Tyndaritanus*, especially in all the Greek names of towns compounded with *polis*, as *Neapolitanus*, *Megalopolitanus*. The terminations *eus* and *itis*, however, are often retained in Latin.

[§ 257.] 3. From names which originally belong to nations, adjectives are formed in *icus* and more rarely in *ius*; e. g. from *Afer*, *Britannus*, *Gallus*, *Germanus*, *Italus*, we have the adjectives *Africanus*, *Britannicus*, *Gallicus*, *Italicus*, &c.; *Syrus*, *Syrius*; *Cilix*, *Cilicius*; *Thrax*, *Thracius*. Other names of nations are at once substantives and adjectives, as *Graecus*, *Etruscus*, *Sardus*.

[§ 258.] 4. The names of countries, with some exceptions,

such as *Latium* and *Samnium*, and those borrowed from the Greek, *Aegyptus*, *Persis*, are themselves derived from the names of nations; e. g. *Britannia*, *Gallia*, *Italia*, *Thracia*, sometimes with slight changes, as in *Sardi*, *Sardinia*; and *Siculi*, *Sicilia*. From some of these countries, adjectives are formed with the terminations *ensis* and *anus*, as *Hispaniensis*, *Siciliensis*; *Africanus*, *Gallicanus*.

[§ 259.] C. From other Adjectives.

Diminutives are formed from some adjectives by the terminations *ulus*, *olus*, *culus*, and *ellus*, according to the rules which were given above, § 240. Thus we have *parvulus*, *horridulus*; *aureolus*; *pauperculus*, *leviculus*; *misellus*, *pulchellus*.

[§ 260.] Besides derivation new words are also formed by *composition*. In examining such words we may consider either the first or the second part of which a compound consists.

The first word is either a noun, a verb, or a particle. The second remains unchanged, e. g. *benefacio*, *beneficium*, *male-dico*, *satago*; a contraction takes place only in *nōlo*, from *ne* (for *non*) and *vōlo*, and in *mālo*, from *māge* (for *magis*) and *vōlo*. Prepositions are used more frequently than any other particles in forming compound words. Respecting their signification and the changes produced in pronunciation by the meeting of heterogeneous consonants, see Chap. LXVI.

There are only a few words in which verbs form the first part of a compound, and wherever this is the case, the verb *facio* forms the latter part, as in *arefacio*, *calefacio*, *madefacio*, *patefacio*, *condocefacio*, *commonefacio*, *assuefacio*, and *consuefacio*. The only change in the first verbs (which belong to the second conjugation) is that they throw off the *o* of the present.

When the first word is a noun (substantive or adjective), it regularly ends in a short *i*, which is the connecting vowel.

<i>patricida.</i>	<i>armiger.</i>	<i>particeps.</i>	<i>aequiparo.</i>
<i>artifex.</i>	<i>aquilifer.</i>	<i>ignivomus.</i>	<i>amplifico.</i>
<i>tubicen.</i>	<i>capripes.</i>	<i>misericors.</i>	<i>breviloquens.</i>
<i>causidicus.</i>	<i>carnivorus.</i>	<i>rupicapra.</i>	<i>alienigena.</i>
<i>aedifico.</i>	<i>belligero.</i>	<i>stillicidium.</i>	<i>vilipendo.</i>

So also *centifolia rosa*, *centimanus Gyges*, from *centum*. A contraction takes place in *tibicen* for *tibiicen*, from *tibia* and *cano*, whereas in *tubicen* and *fidicen* the connecting vowel is short according to the rule, there being no *i* in the words *tuba* and *fides*. When the second word begins with a vowel, the connecting *i* is thrown out, as in *magnanimus*, *unanimis*, with which we may compare *unimanus* and *uniformis*.

Those words, the parts of which are declined separately, may likewise be regarded as compounds, although they form one word only in so far as they are commonly written as such; as *respublica*, *jusjurandum*, or those of which the first word is a genitive, as *senatusconsultum*, *plebiscitum*, *duumvir*, *triumvir*.

[§ 281.] The latter word in a compound determines to what part of speech the whole belongs. In compositions with particles, the second word either remains unchanged, or undergoes only a slight variation in its vowel. This variation must be here considered, especially with regard to the radical vowel of the verb; for the vowels *i*, *o*, *u*, *ā* and *ē* remain unchanged, as in *ascribo*, *commīnor*, *appōno*, *excōlo*, *addūco*, *illābor*, *subrēpo*; but *ā* and *ē* and the diphthong *ae* frequently undergo a change: 1. *ā* remains only in the compounds of *caveo*, *maneo*, and *traho*; but in most other cases it is changed into *ī*, e. g. *constituo* from *statuo*, *accipio* from *capio*, *abjicio* from *jacio*, *arripio* from *rapio*, *incido* from *cado*, *adigo* from *ago*; so also *attingo* from *tango*, *confringo* from *frango*; it is changed into *e* in *ascendo*, *aspergo*, *confercio*. 2. *ē* sometimes remains unchanged, as in *appeto*, *contego*, *contero*, *congero*, but sometimes it is changed into *ī*: *assideo* from *sedeo*, *abstineo* from *teneo*, *arrigo* from *rego*, *aspicio* from *specio*. Both forms occur in the compounds of *legere*, e. g. *perlēgo*, read through; *intellīgo*, understand. 3. The diphthong *ae* remains unchanged only in the compounds of *haereo*, as *adhaereo*; it is changed into *ī* in the compounds of *caedo*, *laedo*, *quaero*, e. g. *incido*, *illido*, *inquiro*. Other particulars may be gathered from the lists of irregular verbs.

In the composition of nouns with verbs, the second word undergoes more violent changes, and the rules already given respecting derivation must be taken into account here. But nouns are also formed in composition with verbs by the mere abbreviation of the ending, and without any characteristic syllable of derivation. Thus we have from *gero*, *claviger*, *armiger*; from *fero*, *cistifer*, *signifer*; from *facio*, *artifex*,

pontifex; from *capio*, *princeps*, *particeps*. Compound adjectives are derived from verbs by the termination *us*, which is appended to the verbal stem: *mortiferus*, *ignivomus*, *dulcisonus*, like *consonus*, *carnivorus*, *causidicus*; and from substantives with a very slight or no change at all, e. g. *centimanus*, *capripes*, *misericors*, *uniformis*.

CHAP. LXII.

ETYMOLOGY OF PARTICLES.

ADVERBS.

[§ 262.] 1. As the adjective qualifies a substantive, so the adverb qualifies a verb, an adjective (consequently a participle also), and even another adverb; e. g. *prudens homo prudenter agit*; *felix homo feliciter vivit*; *eximie doctus*; *domus celeriter extracta*; *satis bene scripsit*.

2. Adverbs belong to those parts of speech which are incapable of inflexion, for they have neither cases nor any other forms to denote the difference of persons, tenses, or moods. But an adverb approaches nearest the declinable parts of speech, inasmuch as it is derived from adjectives or participles, and takes the same degrees of comparison as the latter. We have, therefore, in the first place to consider the etymology of adverbs and then their degrees of comparison.

With regard to their etymology, adverbs are either simple or primitive (*primitiva*), or derived (*derivata*). We shall first treat of derivative adverbs; their number is great, and certain laws are followed in their formation.

[§ 263.] 3. By far the greater number of derivative adverbs end in *ē* and *ter*, and are derived from adjectives and participles (present active and perfect passive).

Adjectives and participles in *us*, *a*, *um*, and adjectives in *er*, *a*, *um* (that is, those which follow the second declension), make adverbs with the termination *ē*. Thus *altus*, *longus*, *molestus*, *doctus*, *emendatus*, *ornatus*, make the adverbs *alte*, *longe*, *molestē*, *doctē*, *emendatē*, *ornatē*. With regard to adjectives in *er*, *a*, *um*, the formation of adverbs varies ac-

cording as they throw out the *e* in the oblique cases or retain it (see § 48. and 51.), for the adverbs follow the oblique cases. Thus *liber* and *miser* make *libere* and *misere*; but *aeger* (*aegri*) and *pulcher* (*pulchri*) make *aegre* and *pulchre*. *Bonus* makes the adverb *bēnē*, from an ancient form *benus*. *Bēnē* and *mālē* are the only adverbs of this class that end in a short *e*.

[§ 264.] 4. All other adjectives and the participles in *us* (consequently all adjectives which follow the third declension) form their adverbs in *ter*, and retain the changes which occur in the genitive. The genitive *is* is changed into *iter*, except the genitive in *ntis* (from the nom. in *ns*), which makes the adverb in *nter*; e. g. *elegans*, *eleganter*; *amans*, *amanter*; *conveniens*, *convenienter*; but *par*, *pariter*; *utilis*, *utiliter*; *tenuis*, *tenuiter*; *celer*, *ēris*, *celeriter*; *saluber*, *salubriter*, and so also *ferociter*, *simpliciter*, *dupliciter*, *concorditer*, *audaciter* (or more frequently contracted into *audacter*).

[§ 265.] 5. Although in grammar an adverb is assigned to every adjective, yet the dictionary must frequently be consulted, for there are some adjectives whose very signification does not admit the formation of an adverb, as, for example, those which denote a material or colour; while with respect to others we can say no more than that no adverb of them is found in the writers whose works have come down to us, as of the adjectives *amens*, *dirus*, *discors*, *gnarus*, *rudis*, *trux*, *imbellis*, *immobilis*, *inflexibilis*, and other compounds of the same kind. Of *vetus* the adverbs are *vetuste* and *antique*, and of *fidus*, *fideliter*, which are derived from other adjectives of the same meaning. The adverb *magne* does not occur, but its irregular comparative *magis*, and the superlative *maxima*, are of very common occurrence.

[§ 266.] 6. Sometimes particular cases of adjectives supply the place of the regularly formed adverbs in *ē* and *ter*; a) of some adjectives in *us*, *a*, *um*, and *er*, *a*, *um*, the ablative singular in *ō* is used as an adverb; e. g. *arcano* and *secreto*, secretly; *cito*, quickly; *continuo*, immediately; *crebro*, frequently; *falso*, wrongly; *liquido*, clearly; *manifesto*, manifestly; *necessario*, necessarily; *perpetuo*, perpetually; *precario*, by intreaties; *raro*, rarely; *sedulo*, sedulously; *sero*, too late; *serio*, seriously; *subito*, suddenly; *tuto*, safely. To these must be added some adverbs formed from participles: *auspicato*, *consulto*, *directo*, *festinato*, *nec*- or *inopinato*, *improvisio*, *iterato*, *merito*, *sortito*.

[§ 267.] 7. *b*) In some adjectives of the third declension the neuter singular supplies the place of the adverb; as *facile*, *difficile*, *recens*, *sublime*, *impūne*. To these we must add some belonging to adjectives of the second declension: *ce-terum*, *commodum*, *plerumque*, *plurimum*, *potissimum*, *multum*, *nimum*, *parum*, and lastly the numeral adverbs *primum*, *iterum*, *tertium*, *quartum*, &c., which have also the termination *o* (see § 123.), and *postremum* (*o*), and *ultimum* (*o*).

[§ 268.] 8. A considerable number of adverbs have the termination *im*; they are for the most part derived from participles; e. g. *caesim*, *punctim*, *conjunctim*, *contemptim*, *cursim*, *nominatim*, *passim* (from *pandere*), *praesertim* (from *prae* and *sero*), *privatim*, *raptim*, *sensim*, *statim*. Adverbs of this kind however are formed also from other parts of speech, but they generally take the participial termination *atim*, even when they are not derived from nouns of the first declension: *gradatim*, *ostiatim*, *paulatim*, *singulatim*. Also *confestim* (connected with *festinare*), *furtim*, *singultim*, *viritim*, *vicissim*.

[§ 269.] 9. A smaller class of adverbs is formed from nouns by the termination *itūs*, generally to denote origin from that which is expressed by the primitive; as *coelitus*, from heaven; *funditus*, *radicitus*, from the foundation, radically. Some are derived from adjectives, as *antiquitus*, *divinitus*, and *humanitus*.

[§ 270.] 10. A large number of adverbs, lastly, arises from the adverbial use of different cases of substantives, and from the composition of different parts of speech. In this manner arose the adverbs of time: *noctu*, *vesperi*, *mane*, *tempore* or *tempori*, *diu* and *dudum*, *quamdiu*, *tamdiu*, *aliquamdiu*, *interdiu*, *hōdie*, *quotidie*, *quotannis*, *postridie*, *perendie*, *pridie*, *nudius tertius* (from *nunc dies tertius*, the day before yesterday, or the third day from the present), *nudius quartus*, *nudius quintus*, *nudius tertiusdecimus*, *prope diem*, *initio*, *principio*, *repente* and *derepente* (ablative of *repens*), *imprimis*, *protēnus* and *protinus* (from *pro* and the preposition *tenus*), *aliās*, *partim* (the same as *partem*), *acutum*, *modo*, *postmodo*, *alternis*, *interdum*, *cummaxime*, *tummaxime*, *paulisper*, *tantisper*, *denuo* (i. e. *de novo*), *illico* (properly *in loco*), *intereā*, *praetereā*, *hactenus*. So also the adverbs of place: *foris*, *foras*, *domum*, *domi* and *domo*, *rus*, *ruri* and *rure*, *humī* and *humo*, *insuper*, *obviam*, *peregre*, *praesto*, *rectā* (scil. *viā*), *unā*.

[§ 271.] The mode or manner of an action, in answer to the question *how*? is expressed by adverbs of the same class; as *sponte*, *forte* and *fortuito*, *forsitan* (*fors sit an*), *nimirum*, *scilicet*, *videlicet*, *utpote* (from *ut* and *pote*, properly "as possible," hence "namely," or "as"), *dumtaxat*, *praeterquam*, *quomodo*, *quemadmodum*, *admodum*, *quamobrem*, *quapropter*, *quantopere*, *tantopere*, *maximopere* and *summopere*, *alioqui* or *alioquin*, *ceteroqui* or *ceteroquin*, *frustrā*, *nequicquam*, *gratis* (from *gratiis*), *vulgo*.

CHAP. LXIII.

PRIMITIVE ADVERBS.

[§ 276.] 1. THE Simple or Primitive Adverbs are few in number, when compared with the derivatives, especially with those derived from adjectives, and ending in *ē* and *ter*. The signification of the latter depends upon that of their adjective, and has generally a very definite extent; but the primitive adverbs express the most general circumstances that are considered in connection with a fact, and answer to the questions *how*? *when*? *where*? *whether*? but they are for this reason deserving of particular attention, together with their compounds and derivatives.

2. To this class belong the negative particles: *non*, *haud*, and *ne*; the affirmatives: *nae*, *quidem*, and *utique*, certainly (from which word the negative adverb *neutiquam*, by no means, is formed), *nempe*, namely, surely, and the interrogative *cur*, why? the words which express, in a general way, the *mode* of an action, viz. *paenē*, *ferē*, and *fermē*, nearly, almost; *temerē*, at random; *ritē*, duly, according to custom; *vix*, scarcely; *nimis* (and *nimum*, see § 267.), too much; *satis* or *sat*, enough, sufficiently; *saltem*, at least; *sic* and *itā*, so, thus; and *item* and *itidem*, just so, and the double form *identidem*, which, however, has assumed the meaning of a particle of time, "constantly," "one time like the other;" *périnde* and *próinde* (derived from *inde*), as though, like; *sēcus*, otherwise, differently; *immo* (that is, *in modo*), in some manner; the adverbs of place: *uspiam* and *usquam*, somewhere; *nusquam*, no where; *procul*, far; *prope*,

near; *ubi*, where? *ibi*, there; *unde*, whence? *inde*, hence, together with their numerous compounds and correlatives, of which we shall speak presently; the adverbs of time: *quando*, when? with its compounds *aliquando*, once; *quandoque*, at some time; *quandocunque*, whenever; *quondam*, formerly; *nunc*, now; *tunc* and *tum*, then; *unquam*, ever; *nunquam*, never; *jam*, already; *etiam* (from *et* and *jam*) and *quōque*, also; *etiamnunc* and *etiamtum*, still, yet; *semel*, once; *bis*, twice (the other adverbial numerals, see Chap. XXXIII.); *saepe*, often; *usque*, ever; *heri* or *here*, yesterday; *cras*, tomorrow; *olim*, formerly; *mox*, soon after; *simul*, at once; *tandem*, at last or length; *demum*, not until; from *inde* are derived *dēinde* and *ēinde*, or abridged *dein* and *exin*, thereupon, afterwards; *sūbinde*, immediately after, or repeatedly; *deinceps*, in succession; *denique*, lastly: further, the adverbs with the suffix *per*: *semper*, always; *nuper*, lately; *parumper* and *paulisper*, for a short time; *tantisper*, for so long, commonly to indicate a short time, "for so short a time." (See § 270.)

Most of the prepositions are originally adverbs, but as they usually take the case of a substantive after them, they are regarded as a distinct class of the parts of speech. But they must still be looked upon as adverbs when they are joined with a verb without a case; as *i prae*, go before; *pone subit conjunx*, "behind there follows the wife." Hence it happens that *clam*, secretly, and *coram*, in the presence of, are generally reckoned among the prepositions, whereas *palam*, publicly, is universally called an adverb, though it is formed precisely in the same manner. *Ante* and *post*, when used as adverbs, generally have the lengthened forms *anteā* and *postea* (also *antehac* and *posthac*), but occur as adverbs also without any change of form.

[§ 288.] 3. The Adverbs of Place, mentioned above, *ubi*, where? and *unde*, whence? together with the adverbs derived from the relative pronoun, viz. *quo*, whither? and *qua*, in what way? stand in a certain relation to other adverbs, demonstratives, relatives, and indefinites, which are formed in the same manner. All together form a system of adverbial correlatives, similar to that of the pronominal adjectives. (See above, § 130.) The interrogative form is the simplest, and (as in English) is the same as that of the relative. The relative acquires a more general meaning, either by being doubled, or by the suffix *cunque*, which is

expressed in English by "ever," as in "wherever." Without any relative meaning, the simple form acquires a more general signification by the suffix *que*, or by the addition of the particular words *vis* and *libet*. The demonstrative is formed from the pronoun *is*, and its meaning is strengthened by the suffix *dem*. The indefinite is formed by the prefix *ali*, or before a vowel *alic*, from *aliquis*. We thus obtain the following correlative adverbs:—

Interrog.	Relative.	Demonstr.	Indefinite.	Universal.
<i>Ubi</i> , where?	<i>ubi</i> , where. <i>ubiubi</i> . <i>ubicunque</i> .	<i>ibi</i> , there. <i>ibidem</i> .	<i>alicubi</i> , some- where.	<i>ubique</i> , <i>ubivis</i> , <i>ubilibet</i> , <i>undique</i> , <i>undevis</i> , <i>undelibet</i> , <i>quovis</i> , <i>quolibet</i> ,
<i>Unde</i> , whence?	<i>unde</i> , whence. <i>undeunde</i> . <i>undecunque</i> .	<i>inde</i> , thence. <i>indidem</i> .	<i>alicunde</i> , from some place.	
<i>Quo</i> , whither?	<i>quo</i> , whither. <i>quoquo</i> . <i>quocunque</i> .	<i>eo</i> , thither. <i>eodem</i> .	<i>aliquo</i> , to some place.	
<i>Qua</i> , in what direction? in what way.	<i>qua</i> , in the way in which. <i>quaqua</i> . <i>quacunque</i> .	<i>ea</i> , in that way. <i>eūdem</i> .	<i>aliqua</i> , in some way.	<i>quavis</i> , <i>qualibet</i> ,

} every-
where.
} from
every-
where.
} to
every
place.
} in
every
way.

[§ 289.] To these we must add those which are formed by composition with *alius*, *nullus*, *uter*, and answer to the question where? *alibi*, elsewhere; *nullibi*, nowhere (for which, however, *nusquam* is more commonly used); *utrobi* or *utrobi*, in which of two places? with the answer *utrobique* in each of the two places. *Inibi* is a strengthening form of *ibi*, and signifies "in the place itself." To the question whence? answer *aliunde*, from another place; *utrimque*, from both sides. To the question whither? answer *alio*, to another place; to *utro*, to which of two sides? answer *utroque*, to both sides, and *neutro*, to neither; further, *quopiam* and *quoquam*, to some place; *intro*, into; *retro*, back; *ultra*, beyond; *citro*, this side.

We add the correlatives to the question whither? *quorsum* or *quorsus*? (contracted from *quoversum* or *quoversus*). The answers to them likewise end in *us* and *um*: *horsum*, hither; *aliorsum*, towards another place; *quoquoversus*, towards every

side; *introrsum*, inward; *prorsum*, forward; *retrosum*, backward, and others.

[§ 291.] 4. The above-mentioned demonstratives, *ibi*, there, *inde*, hence, and *eo*, thither, are used only with reference to relative sentences, which precede; e. g. *ubi te heri vidi, ibi nolim te iterum conspiciere*, where I saw thee yesterday, there I do not wish to see thee again; *unde venerat, eo rediit*, he returned thither, whence he had come. More definite demonstratives, therefore, are requisite, and they are formed in Latin from the three demonstrative pronouns by means of special terminations.

The place where?	<i>hic</i> ,	<i>istic</i> ,	<i>illic</i> ,	(there).
whither?	<i>huc</i> ,	<i>istuc</i> ,	<i>illuc</i> ,	(thither).
whence?	<i>hinc</i> ,	<i>istinc</i> ,	<i>illinc</i> ,	(thence).

These adverbs are employed with the same difference which we pointed out above (§ 127.) as existing between the pronouns *hic*, *iste*, and *ille*, so that *hic*, *huc*, and *hinc* point to the place where I, the speaker, am; *istic*, *istuc*, and *istinc*, to the place of the second person, to whom I speak; and *illic*, *illuc*, and *illinc* to the place of the third person or persons, who are spoken of. The following are compounds of *huc* and *hinc*: *adhuc*, until now; *hucusque*, as far as this place; *abhinc* and *dehinc*, from this moment (counting backwards).

CHAP. LXIV.

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

[§ 293.] 1. THE Comparison of Adverbs is throughout dependent upon the comparison of adjectives, for those adverbs only have degrees of comparison, which are derived from adjectives or participles by the termination *ē* (*o*) or *ter*; and wherever the comparison of adjectives is wanting altogether or partly, the same deficiency occurs in their adverbs.

2. The comparative of adverbs is the same as the neuter of the comparative of adjectives, and the superlative is derived from the superlative of the adjectives by changing the termination *us* into *ē*; e. g. *doctior*, *doctius*; *elegantior*, ele-

gantius ; *emendatior*, *emendatius* ; superlative : *doctissimus*, *doctissime* ; *elegantissime*, *emendatissime* ; *summus*, *summe*. The positives in *o* (e. g. *cito*, *raro*) also make the superlative in *e* ; *meritissimo* and *tutissimo* however are more commonly used than *meritissime* and *tutissime*.

[§ 294.] 3. The primitive adverbs, and those derived from other words by the terminations *im* and *tus*, together with the various adverbs enumerated in § 270. foll., that is, in general all adverbs which are not derived from adjectives and participles by the endings *e* (or *o* instead of it) and *ter*, do not admit the degrees of comparison. The only exceptions are *diu* and *saepe* : *diutius*, *diutissime* ; *saepius*, *saepeissime*. *Nuper* has a superlative *nuperrime*, but no comparative.

CHAP. LXV.

PREPOSITIONS.

[§ 295.] 1. PREPOSITIONS are indeclinable words, or, to use the grammatical term, particles, which express the relations of nouns to one another or to verbs : e. g. a town *in* Italy ; a journey *through* Italy ; my love *for* you ; the first century *after* Christ ; he came *out of* his house ; he lives *near* Berlin ; *on* the Rhine, &c. They govern in Latin either the accusative or ablative, and some (though mostly in a different sense) both cases. Their Latin name is derived from the fact of their being placed, with a few exceptions, before the noun. We have already observed (§ 276.) that a considerable number of these particles are properly adverbs, but are justly reckoned among the prepositions, as they more or less frequently govern a case. Apart from their etymology, and considering only their practical application in the language, we have the following classes of prepositions :—

1. *Prepositions with the Accusative.*

Ad, to, or up to.

Apud, with, near.

Ante, before (in regard to both time and place).

- Adversus* and *adversum*, against.
Cis, *citra*, on this side.
Circa and *circum*, around, about.
Circiter, about (indefinite time or number).
Contra, against.
Erga, towards.
Extra, without.
Infra, beneath, below (the contrary of *supra*).
Inter, among, between.
Intra, within (the contrary of *extra*).
Juxta, near, beside.
Ob, on account of.
Penes, in the power of.
Per, through.
Pone, behind.
Post, after (both of time and space).
Praeter, beside.
Prope, near.
Propter, near, on account of.
Secundum, after (in time or succession), in accordance with,
as *secundum naturam vivere*.
Supra, above.
Trans, on the other side.
Versus (is put after its noun), towards a place; e. g. *in Gal-*
liam versus, *Massiliam versus*.
Ultra, beyond.

2. *Prepositions with the Ablative.*

- A*, *ab*, *abs* (*a*, before consonants; *ab*, before vowels and some
consonants; and *abs* only in the combination of *abs te*
for which, however, *a te* also is used), from, by.
Absque, without (obsolete).
Cōram, before, or in the presence of.
Cum, with.
De, down from, concerning.
E and *ex* (*e* before consonants only, *ex* before both vowels
and consonants), out of, from.
Prae, before, owing to.
Pro, before, for.
Sine, without.
Tēnus (is put after its noun), as far as, up to.

3. *Prepositions with the Accusative and Ablative.*

In, with the accus.—1. into, on, to, to the question Whither? —2. against. With the ablat. in, on, to the question Where?

Sub, with the accus.—1. under, to the question Whither?—2. about or towards, in an indefinite statement of time, as *sub vesperam*, towards evening. With the ablat. under, to the question Where? *Desub* is also used in this sense.

Sūper, with the accus., above, over; with the ablat., upon, concerning, like *de*.

Subter, under, beneath, is used with the accusative, whether it expresses being in or motion to a place; it rarely occurs with the ablative, and is in general little used.

[§ 324.] As regards the position of prepositions, it was remarked above, that *versus* and *tenus* are placed after their case. The same is the case with the four prepositions *ante*, *contra*, *inter* and *propter*, when they are joined with a relative pronoun; e. g. *quos inter*, for *inter quos*. These same four prepositions *ante*, *contra*, *inter*, and *propter*, together with the monosyllabic *ob*, *post*, *de*, *ex*, and *in*, are frequently placed between the adjective and substantive; e. g. *medios inter hostes*, *magna ex parte*, *aliquot post menses*, and still more frequently between the relative pronoun and the substantive; e. g. *qua in re*, *quam ob causam*. The preposition *cum* is always placed after or rather appended to the ablative of the personal pronouns *me*, *te*, *se*, *nobis* and *vobis*; as *mecum*, *tecum*, *nobiscum*, &c. The same is commonly the case with the ablatives of the relative pronoun, *quo*, *qua*, and *quibus*, but we may also say, *cum quo*, *cum qua* and *cum quibus*.

CHAP. LXVI.

PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOUND WORDS.

[§ 325.] THE majority of the prepositions are used also to form compound words, especially verbs, modifying, by their own meaning, that of the words to which they are joined. The prepositions themselves often undergo a change in their pronunciation and orthography, on account of the initial letter of the verb to which they are prefixed. But there is no established usage, and we find, e. g. sometimes *adloquor*, and sometimes *alloquor*, and in like manner *impono* and *inpono*, *conlega* and *collega*. But we prefer the system of assimilation.

Ad remains unchanged before vowels, and before the consonants *d*, *j*, *v*, *m*; before other consonants it undergoes an assimilation, that is, the *d* is changed into the letter which follows it, and before *qu* into the kindred *c*, as in *acquirō*, *acquiesco*. Its signification remains the same as usual, as in *adjungo*, *assūmo*, *affero*, *appōno*, *allōquor*.

Ante remains unchanged; its meaning is "before," as in *antepōno*, *antefēro*.

Circum remains unchanged, and retains, in writing, its *m* even before vowels, although in pronunciation it was lost. Only in *circumeo* and its derivatives the *m* is often dropped, as *circueo*. Its meaning is "around," "about," as in *circumāgo*, *circumdo*, *circumfero*.

Inter remains unchanged, except in the word *intelligo*. Its meaning is "between" or "among," as in *interpono*, *interlōquor*.

Ob remains generally unchanged, and undergoes the assimilation only before *c*, *f*, *g*, and *p*. Its meaning of "against" or "before" appears in *oppono*, *offero*, *occurro*, *oggannio*.

[§ 326.] *Per* remains unchanged, except in *pellicio*. The *r* is dropped only in the word *pejero*, I commit a *perjurium*. Its meaning is "through," as in *perlēgo*, *perluceo*, *perāgo*. When added to adjectives it strengthens their meaning (§ 107.), but in *perfidus* and *perjūrus*, it has the power of a negative particle.

Post remains unchanged, except in *pomoerium* and *pomeri-*

dianus, in which *st* is dropped; its meaning is "after," as in *postpono*.

Praeter remains unchanged, and signifies "passing by," as in *praetereo*, *praetermitto*.

Trans remains unchanged before vowels, and for the most part also before consonants; but *trado*, *traduco*, *trajicio*, are more frequent than *transdo*, *transduco*, *transjicio*. When the verb begins with *s*, the *s* at the end of *trans* is better omitted, and we should write *transcribo*, *transilio*. Its meaning "through," "over," or "across," appears in *transeo*, *trajicio*, and *transmitto*, I cross (a river); *trado*, surrender.

[§ 327.] *A*, *ab*, *abs*, viz.: *a* before *m* and *v*; *ab* before vowels and most consonants; in *aufero* (to distinguish it from *affero*) and *aufugio*, *ab* is changed into *av* or *au*; *abs* occurs only before *c* and *t*. Its meaning is "from" or "away," as in *amitto*, *avehor*, *abeo*, *abjicio*, *abrado*, *aufero*, *abscondo*, *abstineo*.

De, "down" or "away from," as in *dejicio*, *descendo*, *detraho*, *detero*, rub off; *despicio*, look down upon, despise. In some compounds, especially adjectives, it has a negative power, as in *decolor*, *deformis*, *demens*, *desipio*, *despĕro*.

E and *ex*, viz.: *ex* before vowels, and before consonants sometimes *e* and sometimes *ex*: *ex* before *c*, *p*, *q*, *s*, *t*, except in *escendo* and *epōto*; before *f* it assimilates to it; *e* is used before all the other consonants, except in *exlex*. The *s* after *x* is generally thrown out, as *exequor*, *exilium*, *expecto*, *extinguo*. Its meaning "out of" or "from," appears in *ejicio*, *emineo*, *enāto*, *eripio*, *effĕro* (*extŭli*), *excello*, *expono*, *exquiro*, *extraho*, *exaudio*, *exigo*, *exulcero*, &c. The idea of completion is implied in several of these compounds, as in *efficio*, *enarro*, *exoro*.

[§ 328.] *In* is changed into *im*, before *b* and *p* and another *m*, and is assimilated to *l* and *r*. Its meaning is "in" or "into," as in *incurro*, *impono*, *illido*, *irrumpo*. When prefixed to adjectives and participles it has a negative power, e. g. *indoctus*, *incautus*, *ineptus* (from *aptus*), *insipiens*, *improvidus*, *imprudens*, *imparatus*, the negative of *paratus*, because there is no verb *imparo*.

Prae remains unchanged, and its meaning is "before," as in *praefero*, *praecipio*, *praeripio*.

Pro remains unchanged. For the purpose of avoiding *hiatus*, a *d* is inserted in *prodeo*, *prodigo*, and in those forms

of the verb *prosum* in which the initial *e* would cause hiatus, as *prodes*, *prodest*, *proderam*. (See above, § 156.) Its meaning "forth" or "forward," appears in *profero*, *procurro*, *prodeo*, *projicio*, *prospicio*.

[§ 329.] *Sub* remains unchanged before vowels, but undergoes assimilation before consonants, or the *b* is dropped. Its meaning is "under," as in *summitto*, *suppono*, *sustineo*; or "from under," as in *subduco*, *summoveo*, *surrupio*; an approach from below, is expressed in *subeo*, *succēdo*, *suspicio*, look up to, esteem; and to do a thing instead of another person, in *subsortior*. It weakens the meaning in such verbs as *subrideo*, *subvereor*, and in adjectives, such as *subabsurdus*, *subtristis*, *subrusticus*, *subobscurus*. In this last sense the *b* is not assimilated to *r*.

Super, "above," as in *superimpono*, *supersto*, *supersedeo*, set myself above, or omit.

Subter, "from under," as in *subterfugio*.

Com for *cum* appears in this form only before *b*, *p*, *m*; before *l*, *n*, *r*, the final *m* is assimilated to these letters, and before all other consonants it is changed into *n*. Before vowels the *m* is dropped, e. g. *coëo*, *cohaereo*, and in addition to this a contraction takes place in *cogo* and *cogito* (from *coago*, *coagito*). The *m* is retained only in a few words, as *comes*, *comitium*, *comitor*, *comedo*. It signifies "with" or "together," as in *conjungo*, *confero*, *compono*, *collido*, *colligo*, *corrado*, *coëo*, *coalesco*, *cohaereo*. In some verbs and participles it merely strengthens the meaning, as *corrumpo*, *concerpo*, *confringo*, *consceleratus*.

[§ 330.] *Note.* We must not leave unnoticed here what are called the inseparable prepositions, that is, some little words, which are never used by themselves, but occur only in compound verbs and adjectives, where they modify the meaning in the same way as the above-mentioned separable prepositions. The following is a list of them:

Amb (from the Greek ἀμφ), "around," "about," as in *ambio*, *ambūro* (*ambustus*), *ambigo*, *ambiguus*. In *amplector*, *amputo*, the *b* is dropped on account of the *p*; before palatals *amb* is changed into *an*; e. g. *anceps*, *anquiro*, and also before *f*, in the word *anfractus*.

Dis or *di*, denotes separation, as in *disjicio*, *diripio*, *distraho*, *digero*, *dijudico*, *dispono*, *dissero*, *distinguo*, *dimitto* (to be distinguished from *demitto*). It strengthens the meaning in *discupio*.

Re signifies "back:" *remitto*, *rejicio*, *revertor*. Before a vowel or an *h*, a *d* is inserted: *redeo*, *redigo*, *redhibeo*. The *d* in *reddo*, I give back, is of a different kind. *Re* denotes separation in *resolvo*, *revello*, *retego*, *recingo*, *recludo*, *refringo*, *reseco*; and in *relego*, *rebibo*, and others, it denotes repetition.

Se, "aside," "on one side:" *seduco*, *sevocō*, *secubo*, *sepono*, *sejugo*. In adjectives it signifies "without:" *securus*, *sobrius* for *sebrius* (*non ebrius*), *seors* for *seors*.

The prefixes *ne* and *ve* are of a somewhat different nature: *ne* has negative power, as in *nefas*, *nemo* (*ne homo*), *nescio*. *Ve* is likewise negative, but occurs in a much smaller number of words, viz. in *vesanus* and *vecors* (*vecordia*), senseless. In *vegrandis* and *vepallidus*, it seems to denote ugliness.

CHAP. LXVII.

CONJUNCTIONS.

[§ 331.] 1. CONJUNCTIONS are those indeclinable parts of speech which express the relations in which sentences stand to one another. They therefore are, as it were, the links of propositions, whence their name conjunctions.

2. In regard to their form (*figura*), they are either simple or compound. Of the former kind are, e. g. *et*, *ac*, *at*, *sed*, *nam*; and of the latter *atque*, *itaque*, *attamen*, *siquidem*, *enimvērō*, *verumenimvērō*.

3. In reference to their signification, they may be divided into the following classes. They denote:

[§ 332.] 1. A union (*conjunctiones copulativæ*), as *et*, *ac*, *atque*, and the enclitic *que*, as well as the negative belonging to the verb, *neque* or *nec*, or doubled so as to become an affirmative, *nec* (*neque*) *non*, equivalent to *et*. *Etiam* and *quoque* also belong to this class, together with the adverbial *item* and *etidem*. As these particles unite things which are of a kind, so the disjunctive conjunctions, signifying "or," connect things which are distinct from each other. They are *aut*, *vel*, the suffix *ve*, and *sive* or *seu*.

Note. *Ac* is never used before vowels (which, however, do not include *j*) or before an *h*; *atque* occurs most frequently before vowels, but before consonants also.

Attamen stands before the word which has the emphasis, and *quoque* after it. When propositions are to be connected, *etiam* is better than *quoniam*.

The Latin language is fond of doubling the conjunctions of this kind, whereby words and propositions are more emphatically brought under one general idea. The English "as well as" is expressed by

et—et,
et—que,
que—et, and
que—que, which is found only in poetry.

Negative propositions are connected in English by “neither — nor,” and in Latin by

neque—neque, or nec—nec.

Propositions, one of which is negative and the other affirmative, “on the one hand, but not on the other,” or “not on the one hand, but on the other,” are connected by

et—neque
neque—et.

Our “either—or,” is expressed by *aut—aut, or vel—vel.* *Sive—sive* leaves it undecided, as to how a matter is to be taken. *Modo—modo,* and *nunc—nunc,* are equivalent to *sometimes—sometimes; quum—tum to both—and.*

[§ 340.] 2. The following express a *comparison*, “as,” “like,” “than as if” (*conjunctiones comparativae*): *ut* or *uti, sicut, velut, prout, praeut,* the poetical *ceu, quam, tamquam, quasi, ut si, ac si,* together with *ac* and *atque,* when they signify “as,” which is the case after adjectives and adverbs denoting similarity or dissimilarity, such as *par, aequae, juxta, perinde, alius, aliter, &c.*

[§ 341.] 3. The following express a *concession* with the general signification “although” (*conjunctiones concessivae*): *etsi, etiamsi, tametsi* (or *tamenetsi*), *quamquam, quamvis, quantumvis, quamlibet, licet,* together with *ut* in the sense of “even if” or “although,” and *quum,* when it signifies “although.”

[§ 342.] 4. The following express a *condition*, the fundamental signification being “if” (*conjunctiones conditionales*): *si, sin, nisi* or *ni, simodo, dummodo,* if only, if but (for which *dum* and *modo* are also used alone), *dummodo ne,* or simply *modo ne* or *dumne.*

[§ 344.] 5. The following express a *conclusion* or *inference* with the general signification of “therefore;” “consequently” (*conjunctiones conclusivae*): *ergo, igitur, itaque, eo, ideo, iccirco, proinde, propterea,* and the relative conjunctions, signifying “wherefore:” *quapropter quare, quomobrem, quocirca, unde.*

[§ 345.] 6. The following express a *cause, or reason*, with the meaning of “for,” and “because” (*conjunctiones causales*): *nam, namque, enim, etenim, quia, quod, quoniam, quippe, quum, quando, quandoquidem, siquidem.*

[§ 347.] 7. The following express a *purpose or object,*

with the signification of "in order that," or, "in order that not" (*conjunctiones finales*): *ut* or *uti*, *quo*, *ne* or *ut ne*, *neve* or *neu*, *quā*, *quominus*.

[§ 348.] 8. The following express an *opposition*, with the signification of "but" (*conjunctiones adversativæ*): *sed*, *autem*, *verum*, *vero*, *at*, *at enim*, *atqui*, *tamen*, *attāmen*, *sed-tāmen*, *veruntāmen*, *at vero*, *enimvērō*, *verumenimvērō*, *ce-terum*.

[§ 350.] 9. *Time* is expressed by the *conjunctiones temporales*: *quum*, *quum primum*, *ut*, *ut primum*, *ubi*, *postquam*, *antequam* and *priusquam*, *quando*, *simulac* or *simulatque* or *simul* alone, *dum*, *usque dum*, *donec*, *quoad*.

[§ 351.] 10. The following interrogative particles likewise belong to the conjunctions: *num*, *utrum*, *an*, and the suffix *ne*, which forms with *non* a special interrogative particle *nonne*; also *ec* and *en*, as they appear in *ecquis*, *ecquando* and *enumquam*, and *numquid*, *ecquid*, when used as pure interrogative particles.

Note. *Num* and *ec* (*en*) and their compounds give a negative meaning to direct questions, that is, they are used in the supposition that the answer will be "no;" e. g. *num putas me tam dementem fuisse?* you surely do not believe that, &c.

Utrum in accordance with its derivation (from *uter*, which of two) is used only in double questions, and is followed by *an*.

[§ 355.] 11. Most conjunctions are placed at the beginning of the proposition, which they introduce; only these few, *enim*, *autem*, *vero*, together with *quidem* and *quoque*, are placed after the first word of a proposition, or after the second, when the first two belong together, or when one of them is the auxiliary verb *esse*. *Quidem* and *quoque*, when belonging to single words, may take any place in a proposition, but they are always placed after the word, which has the emphasis. *Itaque* and *igitur* are commonly used with this distinction, that *itaque* stands first, while *igitur* is placed after the first, and sometimes even after several words of a proposition. But *tamen* may be put either at the beginning of a proposition, or after the first word.

CHAP. LXVIII.

INTERJECTIONS.

[§ 359.] 1. INTERJECTIONS are sounds uttered under the influence of strong emotions. They are indeclinable, and stand in no close connection with the rest of a sentence; for the dative and accusative, which are joined with some of them, are easily explained by an ellipsis. See §§ 402. and 403.

2. The number of interjections in any language cannot be fixed. Those which occur most frequently in Latin authors are the following.

a) Of joy : *io, iu, ha, he, hahaha, euoe, euax.*

b) Of grief : *vae, heu, eheu, ohe, au, hei, pro.*

c) Of astonishment : *o, en* or *ecce, hui, hem, ehem, aha, atat, papae, vah*; and of disgust : *phui, apage.* (See § 222.)

d) Of calling : *heus, o, eho, ehodum*; of attestation : *pro*, also written *proh.*

e) Of praise or flattery : *eia, euge.*

[§ 360.] 3. Other parts of speech, especially substantives and adjectives, adverbs and verbs, and even complex expressions, such as oaths and invocations, must in particular connections be regarded as interjections. Such nouns are : *pax* (be still!); *malum, indignum, nefandum, miserum, miserabile*—to express astonishment and indignation; *macte*, and with a plural *macti*, expresses approbation. Adverbs : *nae, profecto, cito, bene, belle!* Verbs used as interjections are, *quaeso, precor, oro, obsecro, amabo* (to all of which *te* or *vos* may be added), used in imploring and requesting. So also *age, agite, cedo, sodes* (for *si audes*), *sis, sultis* (for *si vis, si vultis*), and *agesis, agedum, agitedum.*

[§ 361.] 4. Among the invocations of the gods, the following are particularly frequent : *mehercule, mehercle, hercule, hercle*, or *mehercules, medius fidius, mecastor, ecastor, pol, edepol, per deum, per deum immortalem, per deos, per Jovem, pro* (or *proh*) *Juppiter, pro sancte* (supreme) *Juppiter, pro dii immortales, pro deum fidem, pro deum atque hominum fidem, pro deum* or *pro deum immortalium* (scil. *fidem*), and several others of this kind.

SYNTAX.

I. CONNECTION OF SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

CHAP. LXIX.

[§ 362.] 1. THE *subject* of a proposition is that of which any thing is declared, and the *predicate* that which is declared of the subject.

The subject appears either in the form of a substantive, or in that of an adjective or pronoun, supplying the place of a substantive. Whenever there is no such grammatical subject, the indeclinable part of speech or proposition which takes its place, is treated as a substantive of the neuter gender. (Comp. § 43.)

[§ 365.] 2. The predicate appears either in the form of a verb, or of the auxiliary *esse* combined with a noun.

The predicate accommodates itself as much as possible to its subject. When the predicate is a verb, it must be in the same number as the subject; e. g. *arbor viret*, the tree is green; *arbores virent*, the trees are green. When the predicate is an adjective, participle, or adjective pronoun, combined with the auxiliary *esse*, it takes the number and gender of the subject, and *esse* takes the number of the subject, e. g. *puer est modestus, libri sunt mei, prata sunt secta*.

When the predicate is a substantive with the auxiliary *esse*, it is independent of the subject both in regard to number and gender; e. g. *captivi militum praeda fuerant; amicitia vinculum quoddam est hominum inter se*. But when a substantive has two forms, one masculine and the other feminine, as *rex, regina; magister, magistra; inventor, inventrix; corruptor, corruptrix; praeceptor, praeceptrix*, the predicate must be in the same gender as the subject; e. g. *licentia corruptrix est morum; stilus optimus est dicendi effector et ma-*

gister. When the subject is a neuter the predicate takes the masculine form, the latter being more nearly allied to the neuter than the feminine; e. g. *tempus vitae magister est*. When the subject is a noun epicene (see § 42.), the predicate follows its grammatical gender; as *aquila volucrum regina, fida ministra Jovis*.

It is only by way of exception that *esse* is sometimes connected with adverbs of place, such as *aliquis* or *aliquid prope, propter, longe, procul est*, or when *esse* signifies "to be in a condition;" e. g. *rectissime sunt apud te omnia*, everything with you is in a very good state or condition.

[§ 366.] *Note*. Collective nouns, that is, such as denote a multitude of individual persons or things, e. g. *multitudo, turba, vis, exercitus, juventus, nobilitas, gens, plebs, vulgus*, sometimes have a plural verb for their predicate. For the same reason a plural verb is sometimes joined as predicate with *quisque* and *uterque*.

[§ 370.] 3. When nouns are combined with one another, without being connected by the verb *esse*, or by a relative pronoun and *esse*, in such a manner as to form only one idea, as in "a good man," the adjective, participle, or pronoun follows the substantive in gender, number, and case; e. g. *huic modesto puero credo, hanc modestam virginem diligo*.

When two substantives are united with each other in this way, they are said to stand in *apposition* to each other, and the one substantive explains and defines the other; e. g. *oppidum Paestum, arbor laurus, Taurus mons, Socrates vir sapientissimus*. The explanatory substantive (*substantivum appositum*) takes the same case as the one which it serves to explain; e. g. *Socratem, sapientissimum virum, Athenienses interfecerunt*. They may differ in number and gender, as *urbs Athenae; pisces signum; fratrem tuum, delicias meas, vidi*; but when the substantive in apposition has two genders, it takes the one which answers to that of the other substantive. The predicate likewise follows the substantive which is to be explained, as *Tulliola, deliciolae nostrae, tuum munusculum flagitat; Quum duo fulmina nostri imperii subito in Hispania, Cn. et P. Scipiones, extincti occidissent*, for the words *duo fulmina*, though placed first, are only in apposition. When plural names of places are explained by the apposition *urbs, oppidum, civitas*, the predicate generally agrees with the apposition; e. g. *Volsinii, oppidum Tuscorum opulentissimum, concrematum est fulmine*.

O vitæ philosophia dux (magistra), virtutis indagatrix expultrixque vitiorum!

Pythagoras velut genitricem virtutum frugalitatem omnibus ingerebat (commendabat).

[§ 371.] 4. When a relative or demonstrative pronoun refers to a noun in another sentence, the pronoun agrees with it in gender and number; e. g. *tam modestus ille puer est, quem vidisti, de quo audivisti, cujus tutor es, ut omnes eum diligant.*

[§ 372.] *Note.* Exception to this rule: when a word of a preceding proposition or this proposition itself, is explained by a substantive with the verbs *esse, dicere, vocare, appellare, nominare, habere, putare, &c.* or their passives, the relative pronoun usually takes the gender and number of the explanatory substantive which follows; e. g. *Thebæ ipsæ, quod Boeotiae caput est; animal plenum rationis, quem vocamus hominem; domicilia conjuncta, quas urbes dicimus; Romæ funum Dianæ populi Latini cum populo Romano fecerunt; ea erat confessio, caput rerum Romam esse; Si omnia faciendæ sunt, quæ amici velint, non amicitiae tales, sed conjurationes putandæ sunt, i. e. such things or connections cannot be looked upon as friendships, but are conspiracies. So also: ista quidem vis, surely this is force; hæc fuga est, non profectio; ea ipsa causa belli fuit, for id ipsum, &c. Idem velle et idem nolle, ea demum firma amicitia est.*

[§ 373.] 5. When the subject consists of several nouns in the singular, the predicate is generally in the plural, if either all or some of those nouns denote persons; but if they denote things, either the singular or plural may be used. If, however, one of the nouns is in the plural, the predicate must likewise be in the plural, unless it attach itself more especially to the nearest substantive in the singular.

Antonius et Octavianus vicerunt Brutum et Cassium apud Philippos.

Cum tempus necessitasque postulat, decertandum manu est, et mors servituti turpitudiniquæ anteponenda.

Beneficium et gratia homines inter se conjungunt.

Vita, mors, divitiæ, paupertas omnes homines vehementissime permovent.

[§ 376.] 6. With regard to the gender, which the predicate (an adjective, participle, or pronoun), takes, when it belongs to several nouns, the following rules must be observed:—

a) When the nouns are of one gender, the predicate (adjective, participle, or pronoun,) takes the same.

b) When they are of different genders, the masculine (in case of their denoting living beings) is preferred to the feminine, and the predicate accordingly takes the masculine. When the nouns denote things, the predicate takes the neuter, and when they denote both living beings and things mixed together, it takes either the gender of the living beings, or the neuter.

Jam pridem pater mihi et mater mortui sunt.

Labor voluptasque, dissimilia naturā, societate quadam inter se naturali juncta sunt.

Jane, fac aeternos pacem pacisque ministros !

Romani, si me scelus fratris, te senectus absumpserit, regem regnumque Macedoniae sua futura sciunt.

Or the predicate (adjective, participle, or pronoun), agrees only with one of the nouns, and is supplied by the mind for the others ; this is the case especially, when the subject consists of nouns denoting both living beings and things.

Thrasybulus contemptus est primo a tyrannis atque ejus solitudo.

L. Brutus exulem et regem ipsum et liberos ejus, et gentem Tarquiniorum esse jussit.

Hominis utilitati agri omnes et maria parent.

[§ 378.] 7. When the personal pronouns *ego, tu, nos, vos*, combined with one or more other nouns, form the subject of a proposition, the predicate follows the first person in preference to the second and third, and the second in preference to the third.

Si tu et Tullia, lux nostra, valetis, ego et suavissimus Cicero valemus.

Quid est quod tu aut illa cum Fortuna hoc nomine queri possitis?

II. ON THE USE OF CASES.

CHAP. LXX.

NOMINATIVE CASE.

[§ 379.] 1. THE subject of a proposition is in the nominative (see § 362.), and the noun of the predicate only when it is connected with the subject by *esse* or the similar verbs: *apparere*, appear; *existere*, *fieri*, *evadere*, come into existence, become; *videri*, seem, appear; *manere*, remain; or the passives of the actives mentioned in § 394.; viz. *dici*, *appellari*, *existimari*, *haberi*, &c.; e. g. *justus videbatur*, he appeared just; *rex appellabatur*, he was called king. The personal pronouns *ego*, *tu*, *ille*, *nos*, *vos*, and *illi* are implied in the terminations of the verb, and are expressed only when they denote emphasis or opposition.

In rebus angustis animosus atque fortis appāre.

Appius adeo novum sibi ingenium induerat, ut plebicola repente omnisque auræ popularis captator evaderet.

Ego reges ejeci, vos tyrannos introducitis; ego libertatem, quæ non erat, peperî, vos partam servare non vultis, says L. Brutus to the Romans.

Note. The construction of the accusative with the infinitive is the only case in which the subject is not in the nominative, but in the accusative. (See § 599.) In this case the noun of the predicate, with the above-mentioned verbs, is likewise in the accusative.

[§ 381.] 2. The nominative is sometimes not expressed in Latin, and the word *homines* is understood with a verb in the third person plural active, in such phrases as *laudant hunc regem*, they, or people, praise this king; *dicunt, tradunt, ferunt hunc regem esse justum*, people say that this king is just.

CHAP. LXXI.

ACCUSATIVE CASE.

[§ 382.] 1. THE accusative denotes the immediate object of an action, and is therefore joined to all transitive verbs,

whether active or deponent, to express the person or thing affected by the action implied in such verbs ; e. g. *pater amat (tuetur) filium*. When the verb is active, the same proposition may be expressed without change of meaning in the passive voice, the object or accusative becoming the subject or nominative ; thus instead of *pater amat filium*, we may say *filius amatur a patre*.

The transitive or intransitive nature of a verb depends entirely upon its meaning (see § 142.), which must be learned from the dictionary. It must however be observed that many Latin verbs may acquire a transitive meaning, besides their original intransitive one, and accordingly govern the accusative ; e. g. *doleo* signifies, I feel pain, or I am sorry ; but it has also a transitive meaning, I lament, and may therefore govern an accusative ; e. g. *doleo casum tuum*, I lament thy misfortune. Real intransitives are, by way of exception, joined sometimes with the accusative of some neuter pronoun ; e. g. *hoc gaudeo, hoc laetor*, I rejoice at this ; *unum omnes student* ; but not *gaudeo hanc rem, or student hanc rem*.

[§ 386.] 2. Intransitive verbs which imply motion, as *ire, vadere, volare*, and some also which imply "being in a place," as *jacere, stare, and sedere*, acquire a transitive meaning by being compounded with a preposition, and accordingly govern the accusative. This, however, is generally the case only in verbs compounded with the prepositions *circum, per, praeter, trans, and super*, and in those compound verbs which have acquired a figurative meaning. Such verbs become perfect transitives, and the accusative which they take in the active form of a proposition as their object, becomes the nominative of the subject, when the proposition is changed into the passive form ; e. g. *flumen transitur, societas initur, mors pro republica obitur*. With other compounds the accusative is only tolerated, for generally the preposition is repeated, or the dative is used instead of the preposition with its case (§ 415.).

[§ 387.] *Note.* Hence we commonly say, e. g. *accedo ad te*, I step up to thee, or *tibi*, I join thee ; but rarely *accedo muros or terram*. *Adno*, I swim up to, commonly *ad naves, urbem, or navibus, urbi* ; but rarely *naves, urbem*. *Homo advolvitur ad genua, or genibus* ; *advolvitur genua* also may be said. Some compound verbs (though not those compounded with *circum, per, praeter, trans* and *super*) either lose their intransitive meaning altogether, or retain it along with the transitive one, and accordingly govern the accusative either exclusively, or only in their particular transitive meaning. Of this kind are *adeo* and *convenio* in the sense of "I step up to a person."

for the purpose of speaking to him ;" *aggredior* (and *adorior*), *coëo*, I conclude, e. g. an alliance ; *excedo* and *egredior*, I transgress, e. g. the bounds ; *obeo*, I visit, undertake ; *occumbo* (*mortem*), I suffer death, or die ; *subeo*, I undertake. But every thing depends upon the meaning of such verbs, which must be learned from a Dictionary.

[§ 388.] 3. The active verbs *deficio*, *juvo*, *adjūvo*, *defugio*, *effugio*, *profugio*, *refugio*, and *subterfugio*, and the deponents *imitor*, *sequor*, and *sector* govern the accusative. They are real transitives and the actives have a personal passive.

Fortes fortuna adjuvat.

Nemo mortem effugere potest.

Gloria virtutem tanquam umbra sequitur.

Note. The compounds of *sequor* (§ 209.) likewise govern the accusative : *obsequor*, I comply with, alone governs the dative.

[§ 390.] 4. Five impersonal verbs (§ 225.), which express certain feelings, viz. *piget* (I am) vexed ; *pudet* (I am) ashamed ; *poenitet* (I) repent ; *taedet* (I am) disgusted, and *miseret*, (I) pity, take an accusative of the person affected. As to the case by which the thing exciting such a feeling is expressed, see § 441.

Decet, it is becoming, and its compounds likewise govern the accusative of the person, but they differ from the above-mentioned impersonal verbs, inasmuch as *decet* and its compounds may have a nominative for their subject, though not a personal one.

Candida pax homines, trux decet ira feras.

[§ 391.] 5. The verbs *docere* (teach) with its compounds *edocere* and *dedocere* and *celare* (conceal), have two accusatives of the object,—one of the thing, and another of the person, as *Antigonus iter, quod habebat adversus Eumenem, omnes celabat*.

Fortuna belli artem victos quoque docet.

Catilina juventutem, quam illexerat, multis modis mala facinora edocebat.

Note. When such a proposition takes the passive form, the accusative of the person becomes the nominative, as *omnes celabantur ab Antigono* ; but the thing may remain in the accusative, e. g. *Latinae legiones longa societate militiam Romanam edoctae ; omnes belli artes edoctus*. But the thing may be expressed also by the preposition *de*, as *celatus sum a te hac de re ; iudices de his rebus docentur*.

[§ 393.] 6. The verbs *posco*, *reposco*, *flagito*, I demand ; *oro*, *rogo*, I entreat ; *interrogo* and *percontor*, I ask or in-

quire, also admit a double accusative, one of the person, and another of the thing, but the verbs which denote demanding or entreating also take the ablative of the person with the preposition *ab*, and those denoting inquiring may take the ablative of the thing with *de*. *Peto*, *postulo* and *quaero* are never used with a double accusative, but the first two have always the ablative of the person with *ab*, and *quaero* with *ab*, *de* or *ex*.

Nulla salus bello, pacem te poscimus omnes.

Legati Hennenses ad Verrem adeunt eumque simulacrum Cereris et Victoriae repossunt.

Pusionem quendam Socrates apud Platonem interrogat quaedam geometrica.

[§ 394.] 7. The following verbs (which in the passive voice have two nominatives) have in the active two accusatives, one of the object and the other of the predicate: *dicere*, *vocare*, *appellare*, *nominare*, *nuncupare*, also *scribere* and *inscribere*; *ducere*, *habere*, *judicare*, *existimare*, *numerrare*, *putare* (*arbitrari*), *intelligere*, *agnoscere*, *reperire*, *invenire*, *facere* (pass. *fieri*), *reddere*, *instituire*, *constituere*, *creare*, *deligere*, *designare*, *declarare*, *renuntiare*, and others; *se praebere*, *se praestare*. Thus we say in the active, *Ciceronem universus populus adversus Catilinam consulem declaravit*, and in the passive, *Cicero ab universo populo consul declaratus est*.

Romulus urbem, quam condidit, Romam vocavit.

Socrates totius mundi se incolam et civem arbitrabatur.

Bene de me meritis gratum me praebeo.

Scytharum gens antiquissima semper habita est.

[§ 395.] 8. The accusative is used with verbs and adjectives to express the extent of time and space, in answer to the questions:—how far? how long? how broad? how deep? how thick? e.g. *nunquam pedem a me discessit*, he never moved one step from me; *a recta conscientia non transversum unguem oportet discedere*, not one finger's breadth; *fossa duos pedes lata or longa*; *cogitationem sobrii hominis punctum temporis suscipe*, take, for one moment, the thought of a rational man; *tres annos mecum habitavit*, or *per tres annos*, which however implies that the period was a long one. The ablative is not often used in this sense.

Campus Marathon ab Athenis circiter milia passuum decem abest.

Quaedam bestiolae unum tantum diem vivunt.

Decem annos Troja oppugnata est ab universa Graecia.

Lacrimans in carcere mater noctes diesque assidebat.

[§ 397.] *Note.* *Old*, in reference to the years which a person *has lived*, is expressed in Latin by *natus*, with an accusative of the time; e. g. *Decessit Alexander mensem unum, annos tres et triginta natus.*

[§ 398.] 9. The names of towns, and not unfrequently of small islands, are put in the accusative with verbs implying motion, without the preposition *in* or *ad*, which are required with the names of countries; e. g. *Juvenes Romani Athenas studiorum causa proficisci solebant.*

We may here mention at once all the rules relating to the construction of the names of towns. When they denote the place *whence*, they are in the ablative; when the place *where?* in the dative (locative). When we have to express "through a town," the preposition *per* is required.

Note. With regard to names of towns denoting the place *where?* there is no difficulty when they belong to the first declension or are plurals, as *Romae*, at Rome; *Athenis*, at Athens. If the names belong to the second declension they take the termination *i*, as *Beneventi*, *Tarenti*, &c., for the ending *i* is an ancient form of the dative of the second declension as in *unt*, *nulli*. When a name of a town belongs to the 3d declension, it often happens that by a natural change the *i* of the dative or locative has become *e*, e. g. *Carthagini*, *Anzuri*, *Tiburi*, *Lacedaemoni*, but also *Carthagine*, *Lacedaemone*; and the change of *Carthagini* into *Carthagine* is precisely similar to the change of *heri* into *here*.

Demaratus quidam, Tarquinii regis pater, tyrannum Cypselum quod ferre non poterat, Tarquinius Corintho fugit, et ibi suas fortunas constituit.

Dionysius tyrannus Syracusis expulsus Corinthi pueros docebat.

Romae Consules, Athenis Archontes, Carthagine Suffetes, sive judices, quotannis creabantur.

[§ 399.] *Note 1.* When the words *urbs*, *oppidum*, *locus*, &c. follow the names of towns as appositions, they generally take a preposition; e. g. *Demaratus Corinthius se contulit Tarquinius, in urbem Etruriae florentissimam.* In answer to the question *where?* however, the simple ablative may be used, but never the dative or genitive; e. g. *Archias Antiochiae natus est, celebri quondam urbe et copiosa* (or in *celebri urbe*). When these words, with their prepositions, precede the names of towns, the latter are invariably put in the same case; e. g. *ad urbem Ancyram, ex urbe Roma, ex oppido Thermis, in oppido Athenis, in oppido Adrumeto.*

[§ 400.] *Note 2.* The words *domus* and *rus* are treated like the names of towns, consequently *domum* (also *domos* in the plur.) and *rus*, home, into the country; *domo* and *rure*, from home, from the country; *domi*, *ruri* (more frequent than *rure*), at home, in the country. *Domi* also takes the datives *meae*, *tuae*, *suae*, *nostrae*, *vestrae*, and *alienae*; but if any other adjective is joined with it, or if the name of the possessor is added in the genitive, a preposition is commonly used; e. g. *in illa domo*, *in domo publica*, *in privata domo*, *in domo Caesaris* or *ipsius*. In the case of *domum* and *domo*, the rule is on the whole the same. *Humi*, on the ground, is used in the same way in answer to the question *where?* and *belli* and *militiae*, always in combination with, or in opposition to, *domi*: *belli domique*, or *domi bellique*, *domi militiaeque*, at home and in the camp.

[§ 401.] The poets may express by the accusative any locality answering to the question *whither?* as *Italiam fato profugus Laviniaque venit litora*; *Speluncam Dido dux et Trojanus eandem deveniunt*; *Verba refers aures non pervenientia nostras*.

[§ 402.] 10. In exclamations the accusative of the person or thing wondered at is used, either with the interjections *o*, *heu*, *eheu*, or without them; e. g. *Heu me miserum!* O wretched man that I am! *heu dementia existimantium!* O the folly of those who believe! &c.; *me miserum!* *Huncine hominem! hancine impudentiam, judices! hancine audaciam!* O fallacious of men's hopes fragile and fortuneless and vain our contentions!

[§ 403.] *Note.* With these as with all other interjections the vocative also is used when the person or thing itself is invoked. *Vae* and *hei* are usually joined with the dative, as *vae misero mihi!* *vae victis!* *Ecce* and *en* are preferred with the nominative.

[§ 404.] 11. The following prepositions govern the accusative: *ad*, *apud*, *ante*, *adversus* and *adversum*, *cis* and *citra*, *circa* and *circum*, *circiter*, *contra*, *erga*, *extra*, *infra*, *inter*, *intra*, *juxta*, *ob*, *penes*, *per*, *pone*, *post*, *praeter*, *prope*, *propter*, *secundum*, *supra*, *trans*, *versus*, *ultra*, and *in* and *sub* when joined with verbs of motion. Respecting *super* and *subter* see § 320.

CHAP. LXXII.

DATIVE CASE.

[§ 405.] 1. THE dative is the case of *reference*, or if we compare it with the accusative, the case denoting the *remoter*

object; for as the accusative serves to denote the effect or that which is acted upon, in contrast to the agent or active subject, so the dative denotes that with reference to which the subject acts, or in reference to which it possesses this or that quality. Hence the dative is used—

a) With all transitive verbs, along with the accusative, either expressed or understood, to denote the person in reference to whom or for whom a thing is done; e. g. *date panem pauperibus, mitto tibi librum, suadeo tibi, nuntiavit imperatori, promisit militibus*. This rule implies that the person for whose benefit or loss anything is done, is expressed by the dative (*dativus commodi et incommodi*); e. g. *Pisistratus sibi, non patriae, Megarenses vicit; Non scholae, sed vitae discimus*.

[§ 406.] b) With intransitive verbs, which though they usually do not govern any case, may yet express that the action is done with reference to something or somebody. We mention here especially *vacare, nubere, and supplicare*. *Vaco* signifies "I am free," hence *vaco alicui rei*, I have leisure for a thing or occupy myself with it, as *vaco philosophiae*. *Nubo* originally signifies "I cover;" and as according to an ancient custom the bride on her wedding-day covered her face, she was said *nubere alicui viro*, "to cover herself for a man," that is, "to marry." *Supplico* signifies "I am a suppliant" (*supplex*), hence *supplico alicui*, I implore a person.

Homo non sibi soli natus est, sed patriae, sed suis.

Civitas Romana inter bellorum strepitum parum olim vacabat liberalibus disciplinis.

Plures in Asia mulieres singulis viris solent nubere.

Neque Caesari solum, sed etiam amicis ejus omnibus pro te, sicut adhuc feci, libentissime supplicabo.

[§ 407.] *Note.* *Suadeo tibi hanc rem*, has nothing that is strange to us, as we use the same construction in English. *Persuadeo* denotes the completion of *suadeo*, and must be noticed here because its construction differs from that of our verb "to persuade." We use the passive form "I am persuaded," but in Latin we must say *hoc* (or any other neuter pronoun) *mihi persuadetur*, as the construction is managed in such a way as to make the clause which follows the subject: *persuadetur mihi, persuasum mihi est, mihi persuasum habeo*.

Mihi quidem nunquam persuaderi potuit, animos, dum in corporibus essent mortalibus, vivere, quum exissent ex his, emori.

[§ 409.] 2. The dative is joined with all adjectives (and adverbs) whose meaning is incomplete, unless a person or an

object is mentioned for or against whom, for whose benefit or loss the quality exists. Of this kind are those which express *utility* or *injury*, *pleasantness* or *unpleasantness*, *inclination* or *disinclination*, *ease* or *difficulty*, *suitableness* or *unsuitableness*, *similarity* or *dissimilarity*, *equality* or *inequality*.

Adjectives expressing a friendly or hostile disposition towards a person, sometimes take the prepositions *in*, *erga*, *adversus*, instead of the dative; and *utilis*, *inutilis*, *aptus*, *ineptus*, generally take the preposition *ad* to express the thing for which any thing is useful or fit; e. g. *homo ad nullam rem utilis*; *locus aptus ad insidias*; but the person to or for whom a thing is useful or fit, is always expressed by the dative,

Canis nonne similis lupo? atque, ut Ennius, "simia quam similis, turpissima bestia, nobis!"

Fidelissimi ante omnia homini canis et equus.

Invia virtuti nulla est via.

Cunctis esto benignus, nulli blandus, paucis familiaris, omnibus aequus.

Note. The adjectives *similis*, *assimilis*, *consimilis*, *dissimilis*, *par* and *dispar*, take the genitive, when an internal resemblance, or a resemblance in character and disposition, is to be expressed.

[§ 412.] 3. Hence the dative is joined with those intransitive verbs which express the same ideas as the adjectives mentioned in § 409., and also with those denoting, *to command*, *serve*, *trust*, *mistrust*, *approach*, *threaten*, and *to be angry*. The following list contains the principal ones: *prosum*, *auxilior*, *patrocinor*, *subvenio*, *medeor*; *noceo*, *obsum*, *officio*, *incommodo*, *insidior*; *faveo*, *indulgeo*, *studeo*, *parco*, *adūlor*, *blandior*, *assentior*; *adversor*, *refragor*, *obsto*, *invideo*, *æmulor*, *obtrecto*, *convicior*, *maledico*; *impero*, *pareo*, *cedo*, *obedio*, *obtempero*, *servio*, *inservio*, *ministro*, *fido*, *confido*, *appropinquo*, *minor*, *irascor*, *stomachor*, *succenseo*. To these must be added the impersonals *convenit*, it suits; *conducit* and *expedit*, it is conducive, expedient; *dolet*, it grieves. The beginner must take especial care not to use the passive of these verbs personally, to which he might easily be tempted by the English equivalents; e. g. *I am envied*, *I am molested*, *I am scolded*, *I am spared*, and the like. In Latin the passive is impersonal: *mihi invidetur*, *obtrectatur*, *incommodatur*, *mihi maledicatur*, *parcitur*.

Probus invidet nemini.

Philosophia medetur animis.

Antiochus se nec impensae, nec labori, nec periculo parsurum pollicebatur, donec liberam vere Graeciam atque in ea principes Aetolos fecisset.

Demosthenes ejus ipsius artis, cui studebat, primam litteram non peterat dicere.

[§ 415.] 4. Verbs compounded with the prepositions *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *sub*, and *super*, preserving, as compounds, the meaning of the prepositions, may be joined with a dative instead of repeating the preposition, or an equivalent one with the case it requires: e. g. *Romani leges incidebant in aes*, or *aeri*; *natura inscripsit in mentibus nostris*, or *mentibus nostris*; *comparare bellum cum pace*, or *paci*. They are either transitives, and as such have an accusative besides, or intransitives without an accusative of the object.

The following are the most important transitive verbs of this kind: *addo*, *affero*, *affigo*, *adhibeo*, *adjicio*, *adjungo*, *admoveo*, *alligo*, *applico*; *circumjicio*; *comparo*, *compono*, *confero*, *conjungo*; *inmisceo*, *impono*, *imprimo*, *incido*, *includo*, *infero*, *ingero*, *injicio*, *insero*, *inuro*; *interjicio*, *interpono*; *objicio*, *offundo*, *oppono*; *posthabeo*, *postpono*; *praefero*, *praeeficio*, *praepono*; *subjicio*, *suppono*, *substerno*.

The following are intransitive: *accedo*, *acquiesco*, *adhaereo*, *alludo*, *annuo*, *arrẽpo*, *assideo*, *aspiro*; *antecello*; *cohaereo*, *collũdo*, *congruo*, *consentio*, *consõno*; *excello*; *incido*, *incubo* and *incumbo*, *indormio*, *inhaereo*, *inkio*, *immorior*, *immõror*, *innascor*, *insisto*; *interjaceo*, *intervenio*; *obẽpo*, *obstrẽpo*, *obversor*; *praemineo*, *praesideo*, *praevaleo*; *succumbo*, *supersto*, *super vivo*, and the compounds of *esse*: *adsum*, *insum*, *intersum*, *praesum*, *subsum*, *supersum*.

[§ 416.] It must be remarked in general that the preposition or one equivalent to it, is usually repeated in verbs compounded with *ad*, *con*, and *in*: e. g. *adhibeo*, *confẽro*, *conjungo*, *communico*, *compãro*, *imprimo*, *inscribo*, *insum*, and also *interest* in the sense of "there is a difference;" e. g. *studium adhibere ad disciplinas*; *conferte* (*comparete*, *contendite*) *hanc pacem cum illo bello*; *hospitio et amicitia mecum conjunctus est*; *consilia sua mecum communicavit*; *in hac vita nihil inest nisi miseria*.

[§ 417.] The compounds of verbs of motion are construed with either the dative or the accusative, and some compounds of *jacẽre*, *stare* and *sedere*, follow their analogy. (See § 386.) Hence the verbs of *excelling*, if their simple verbs denote motion, are mostly construed with the accusative, and *antecello*, *praecello* and *praemineo*, which at least admit the accusative, follow their example.

[§ 418.] 5. The verbs *aspergo* and *inspergo*, *circumdo*, and *circumfundo*, *dono* and *impertio*, *exuo* and *induo*, are used, either like the above-mentioned transitives, with an accusative of the thing and a dative of the person, or with an accusative of the person and an ablative of the thing; e. g. *circumdo alicui custodias*, or *circumdo aliquem custodiis*, and consequently in the passive voice *custodiae tibi circumdantur* or (tu) *circumdaris custodiis*. So also: *maculas aspergo vitae tuae*, or *maculis vitam tuam aspergo*; *dono tibi pecuniam*, or *pecuniā te dono*; *impertio tibi laudes*, or *laudibus te impertio*, &c.

[§ 419.] 6. With passive verbs the dative is sometimes used, instead of *ab* with the ablative.

Quidquid in hac causa mihi susceptum est, Quirites, id omne me rei publicae causa suscepisse confirmo.
Barbarus hic ego sum, quia non intelligor ulli.

Note. It is a rule of the Latin language always to join the dative instead of *ab* with the ablat. to the gerund and the participle future passive; e. g. *moritendum mihi est*. See § 649.

[§ 420.] 7. *Esse* with the dative of a person expresses the English "to have," e. g. *sunt mihi multi libri*, I have many books, the same as *habeo multos libros*.

Homini cum deo similitudo est.

An nescis, longas regibus esse manus?

[§ 421.] Hence *mihi est nomen* or *cognomen* (also *cognomentum*) signifies "I have a name," that is, "my name is" or "I am called." The name itself is put either in the nominative or the dative, being attracted by the dative of the person.

Syracusa est fons aquae dulcis, cui nomen Arethusa est.
Consules leges decemvirales, quibus tabulis duodecim est nomen, in aes incisas, in publico proposuerunt.

Note. The same is the case with the (passive) expressions *datum*, *inditum*, *factum est nomen*; e. g. *Tarquinius, cui cognomen Superbo ex moribus datum*. The name itself is commonly put in the dative also with the active verbs *dare*, *addere*, *indere*, *dicere*, *ponere*, *imponere*, *tribuere alicui nomen*; e. g. *dare alicui cognomen tardo ac pingui*; *desipiunt omnes aequae ac tu, qui tibi nomen insano posuere*; but it may also be put in the same case as *nomen*, that is, in the accus., as: *stirps virilis, cui Ascanium parentes dixere nomen*.

The name may be expressed also by the genitive, according to the general rule that of two substantives joined to each other, one is put in the genitive; e. g. *Metellus praetor, cui ex virtute Macedonici nomen inditum*

erat. This, however, is not the ordinary practice in the case of real proper names, but is generally confined to surnames.

[§ 422.] 8. With the verbs *esse*, *dare*, *mittere* and *venire*, and others of the same meaning, besides the dative of the person, another is used to express the purpose, intention, and destination.

Note. *Dare* belongs to this class both in its sense of "to give," and in that of "to put to one's account." Its analogy is followed by *mitto* and *relinquo*. The following verbs have a similar meaning: *apponere*, *ducere*, *habere*, *tribuere* and *vertere*. *Esse*, in this respect, is equivalent to the English "to do," in "it does him honour," and the passives *feri*, *dari*, *duci*, *haberi*, *tribui*, *verti*, have a similar meaning. *Proficisci* is sometimes construed like *venire*.

Virtutes hominibus decori gloriaeque sunt.

Attalus, Asiae rex, regnum suum Romanis dono dedit.

Mille Plataeenses Atheniensibus adversus Persas auxilio venerunt.

Note. There is a great variety of datives of this kind; e. g. *dono aliquid muneri, praemio*; *relinquo milites auxilio, subsidio, praesidio, custodiae*; *tribuitur* or *datur mihi vitio, crimini, odio, probro, opprobrio, laudi, salutis, utilitati, emolumento, &c.*

CHAP. LXXIII.

GENITIVE CASE.

[§ 423.] 1. WHEN two substantives not expressing the same thing are united with each other so as to form the expression of only one idea, one of them is in the *genitive*. This genitive, dependent upon a substantive, is in Latin of a double kind, according as it expresses either the *subject* or the *object*. The genitive is *subjective*, when it denotes that which does something or to which a thing belongs; e. g. *hominum facta, liber pueri*: it is *objective* when it denotes that which is affected by the action or feeling spoken of; e. g. *amor virtutis, taedium laboris, desiderium otii, remedium doloris*.

The objective genitive is used very extensively in Latin, for it is not only joined with those substantives which are derived from verbs governing the accusative—e. g. *expug-*

natio urbis, the taking of the town; *indagatio veri*, the investigation of truth; *scientia linguae*, the knowledge of a language; *amor patriae*, the love of one's country; *cupiditas pecuniae*, desire for money; but with those also, the corresponding verb of which requires either a different case, or a preposition; e. g. *taedium laboris*, disgust for work; *fiducia virium suarum*, confidence in his own strength; *contentio honorum*, a contest for honours, &c.

Nuper Gn. Domitium scimus M. Silano, consulari homini, diem dixisse propter unius hominis, Aegritomari, paterni amici atque hospitis, injurias.

Est autem amicitia nihil aliud, nisi omnium divinarum humanarumque rerum cum benevolentia et caritate summa consensio.

Initium et causa belli (civilis) inexplebilis honorum Marii fames (fuit).

Note. Something analogous to the Latin subjective and objective genitive occurs in English in such expressions as "God's love," that is, the love which God shows to men, and the "love of God," that is, the love which men bear to God. The Latin language having no such means of distinguishing, is frequently ambiguous; e. g. *fuga hominum* may be either "the escape from men," or "the flight" or "escape of men," and in all such combinations as *metus hostium*, *injarla mulierum*, *judicium Verris*, *triumphus Bojorum*, *opinio deorum*, the genitive may be either subjective (active) or objective (passive), but the context generally shows what is meant. In case of any real ambiguity, a preposition may be used in Latin instead of the genitive; e. g. *ex injuria in* or *adversus mulieres*, *in opinione de diis*. This is the case especially with substantives denoting a disposition, either friendly or hostile towards any thing; e. g. *amor (animus) meus erga te*; *odium, ira, simulas adversus inimicum*. In general, however, a preposition is much more rarely used in joining two substantives, and it is a part of the conciseness of the Latin language to express the relation of the genitive, if possible, by the genitive itself.

[§ 426.] 2. The genitive in the connection of two substantives also expresses the external condition or the internal nature of a thing; and if any of the tenses of *esse*, *fieri*, *haberi*, appears in such a combination, the genitive is not dependent upon these verbs, but must be explained by the omission of a substantive, such as *homo* and *res*. This at the same time constitutes the difference between the genitive of quality (*genitivus qualitatis*) and the ablative of quality with the verb *esse*. But as there is a special part of speech to express qualities, viz., the adjective, the quality can be expressed by a substantive only when this substantive itself

is qualified by an adjective. We cannot say, for example, *homo ingenii*, a man of talent (which is expressed by *homo ingeniosus*), but we may say *homo magni, summi, excellentis ingenii*. Again, we cannot say *homo annorum*, but we may say *homo viginti* or *quadraginta annorum*. Comp. § 468.

Athenienses belli duos duces deligunt, Periclem, spectatae virtutis virum, et Sophoclem, scriptorem tragoediarum.

Titus facilitatis tantae fuit et liberalitatis, ut nemini quidquam negaret.

Hamilcar secum in Hispaniam duxit filium Hannibalem annorum novem.

Spes unica populi Romani, L. Quinctius, trans Tiberim quattuor jugerum colebat agrum.

[§ 427.] Note. The genitive thus serves to express all the attributes of a person or thing, relating to its extent, number, weight, duration, age, and the like, provided such attributes are expressed by the immediate connection of substantives. Thus we say *colossus centum viginti pedum*, a colossus of 120 feet in height; *corona parvi ponderis*, a crown of little weight; *Aristides exilio decem annorum multatus est*; but when the adjective *longus* or *latus* is added, we must say *fossa quindecim pedes lata*; in like manner *puer decem annorum*, but *puer decem annos natus*. (§ 395. foll.)

[§ 429.] 3. The genitive is used to express the whole, of which anything is a part, or to which it belongs as a part. This is the case: *a*) with substantives denoting a certain measure of things of the same kind; e. g. *modius, medimnum tritici, libra farris, magna vis auri, jugerum agri, ala equitum*. This genitive may be termed *genitivus generis*. *b*) With all words which denote a part of a whole (*genitivus partitivus*) where we often use the preposition, "of" or "among." All comparatives and superlatives belong to this class of words; e. g. *doctior horum (duorum) juvenum; doctissimus omnium; eloquentissimus Romanorum*, and also all words implying a number, whether they are real numerals, or pronouns and adjectives, as *quis, aliquis, quidam, uter, alter, neuter, alteruter, uterque, utervis, aliquot, solus, nullus, nonnulli, multi, pauci*; or substantives, as *nemo, pars, numerus*. The genitive belonging to the superlative of adjectives is retained also with superlatives as adverbs. Thus we say *optimus omnium est*, and also *optime omnium vixit*.

Graecorum oratorum praestantissimus fuit Demosthenes.
Populus Romanus legem dedit, ut consulum alter ex plebe crearetur.

Daο sunt aditus in Ciliciam ex Syria, quorum uterque parvis praesidiis propter angustias intercludi potest.

Note. Instead of the genitive we may also use the prepositions *ex* and *inter*, and sometimes *de*, but never *ab*.

The words *uter*, *alter*, *neuter*, differ from *quis*, *alius*, *nullus*, by their referring to a whole consisting of only two. The difference between *nostri*, *vestri*, and *nostrum*, *vestrum* is that the forms ending in *um* are used as partitive genitives; comp. § 191.

[§ 432.] 4. The neuters of pronouns and of some adjectives used as pronouns, are joined with a genitive for two reasons: first, because in meaning they have become substantives, and secondly, because they express a part of a whole. Such neuters are:—*hoc*, *id*, *illud*, *istud*, *idem*, *quid* and *quod* with their compounds (*aliquid*, *quidquid*, *quippiam*, *quidquam*, *quodcunque*), *aliud*; *tantum*, *quantum*, *aliquantum*, *multum*, *plus*, *plurimum*, *minus*, *minimum*, *paulum* and *nimum* with their diminutives and compounds; *tantulum*, *tantundem*, *quantulum*, *quantulumcunque*, &c. To these we must add *nihil*, nothing, which is always used as a substantive; and the adverbs *satis*, enough; *parum*, too little; *abunde*, *affatim*, abundantly.

It is however to be observed that these neuters are used as substantives only in the nominative and accusative, and that they must not be dependent upon prepositions.

Quantum incrementi Nilus capit, tantum spei in annum est. Procellae quanto plus habent virium, tanto minus temporis. Pythagoras, quum in geometria quiddam novi invenisset, Musis bovem immolasse dicitur.

Justitia nihil expetit praemii, nihil pretii.

Satis eloquentiae, sapientiae parum in Catilina fuit.

[§ 433.] *Note.* The genitive joined with these neuters is often not a real substantive, but the neuter of an adjective, which is used as a substantive, as above *quiddam novi*. It must be observed here, that only adjectives of the second declension (in *um*) can be treated as substantives, and not those of the third in *e*, nor the comparatives in *us*. We may therefore say *aliquid novum* and *aliquid novi*, but only *aliquid memorabile*, and *gravius aliquid*; and not *aliquid memorabilis*, or *aliquid gravioris*.

[§ 435.] 5. The neuters of adjectives in general, both in the singular and plural, are sometimes used as substantives, and joined with a genitive, e. g. *exiguum campi ante castra erat*, for which it would be more common to say, *exiguus campus*; *in ultima Celtiberiae penetrare, summa tectorum*

obtinere, instead of *in ultimam Celtiberiam penetrare*, and *summa tecta obtinere*.

[§ 436.] 6. Many adjectives denoting a relation to a thing (*adjectiva relativa*), especially those which express *partaking, desiring, fulness, experience, capacity, or remembering*, and their contraries, are joined with the genitive of a substantive or pronoun. Thus we say *memor promissi*, remembering a promise; *compos mentis*, in possession of his mind. Such relations are expressed in English by prepositions.

The following in particular are construed in this way:—*particeps, expers, consors, exsors; cupidus, studiosus, avidus, avarus; plenus, capax, insatiabilis, fecundus, fertilis, ferax, sterilis; peritus, imperitus, conscius, inscius, gnarus, ignarus, rudis, prudens, providus, compos, impos, potens and impotens; memor, immemor, tenax, curiosus, incuriosus.*

Pythagoras sapientiae studiosos appellavit philosophos.

Themistocles peritissimos belli navalis fecit Athenienses.

Venturae memores jam nunc estote senectae.

Nescia mens hominum fati sortisque futurae.

[§ 438.] 7. The participles present active are joined with a genitive when they do not express a simple act or a momentary condition, but, like adjectives, a permanent quality or condition. The following list contains those most in use:—*amans, appetens, colens, fugiens, intelligens, metuens, negligens, observans, retinens, tolerans, patiens, impatiens, temperans, intemperans; e. g. amans patriae, Gracchi amantissimi plebis Romanae, appetens laudis, fugiens laboris, imminentium intelligens, officii negligens, miles patiens or impatiens solis, pulveris, tempestatum.*

Epaminondas adeo fuit veritatis diligens, ut ne joco quidem mentiretur.

Romani semper appetentes gloriae praeter ceteras gentes atque avidi laudis fuerunt.

[§ 439.] 8. With verbs of *reminding, remembering and forgetting* (*admoneo, commoneo, commonefacio aliquem; meminisci, reminiscor, recordor*, also *in mentem mihi venit; obliviscor*), the person or the thing, of which any one reminds another or himself, or which he forgets, is expressed by the genitive; but there are many instances also in which the thing is expressed by the accusative.

Medicus, ut primum mentis compotem esse regem sensit, modo

matris sororumque, modo tantae victoriae appropinquantis admonere non destitit.

Hannibal milites adhortatus est, ut reminiscerentur pristinae virtutis suae, neve mulierum liberumque (for et liberorum) obliviscerentur.

Tu, C. Caesar, oblivisci nihil soles, nisi injurias.

Illud semper memento : qui ipse sibi sapiens prodesse nequit, nequicquam sapit.

[§ 441.] 9. The impersonal verbs *pudet*, *piget*, *poenitet*, *taedet* and *miseret*, require the person in whom the feeling exists to be in the accusative, and the thing which produces the feeling in the genitive. The thing producing the feeling may also be expressed by an infinitive, or by a sentence with *quod* or with an interrogative particle, e. g. *pudet me hoc fecisse*, *poenitet me quod te offendi*, *non poenitet me quantum profecerim*. As to the forms of these verbs, see § 225.

Malo, me fortunae poeniteat, quam victoriae pudeat.

Eorum nos magis miseret, qui nostram misericordiam non requirunt, quam qui illam efflagitant.

Socratem non puduit fateri, se multas res nescire.

Quem poenitet peccasse, paene est innocens.

[§ 442.] *Note.* The personal verbs *misereor* and *miseresco*, "I pity," are joined with a genitive, like the impersonal verb *miseret*. *Miserari* and *commiserari* (to pity), on the other hand, require the accusative.

Pudet requires a genit. also, in the sense of "being restrained by shame or respect for a person."

[§ 444.] 10. The verbs of *estimating* or *valuing* and their passives (*aestimare*, *ducere*, *facere*, *fieri*, *habere*, *pendere*, *putare*, *taxare* and *esse*) are joined with the genitive, when the value is expressed in a general way by an adjective, but with the ablative, when it is expressed by a substantive. (Comp. § 456.) Genitives of this kind are :—*magni*, *permagni*, *pluris*, *plurimi*, *maximi*, *parvi*, *minoris*, *minimi*, *tanti*, *quantum*, and the compounds *tantidem*, *quantivis*, *quancunque* : but never *multi* and *majoris*. The substantive to be understood with these genitives is *pretii*, which is sometimes expressed (with *esse*).

Si prata et hortulos tanti aestimamus, quanti est aestimanda virtus ?

Mea mihi conscientia pluris est, quam omnium sermo.

[§ 445.] The same rule applies to general statements of

price with the verbs of *buying, selling, lending, and hiring* (*emere, vendere*, the passive *venire, conducere, locare*, and as passives in sense, *stare* and *constare, prostare* and *licere*, to be exposed for sale). But the ablatives *magno, permagno, plurimo, parvo, minimo, nihilo*, are used very frequently instead of the genitives.

Mercatores non tantidem vendunt, quanti emerunt.

Nulla pestis humano generi pluris stetit, quam ira.

Non potest parvo res magna constare.

Parvo fames constat, magno fastidium.

[§ 446.] 11. The genitive is used to denote the crime or offence, with the verbs *accuso, incuso, arguo, interrogo, insimulo, increpo, infamo; convinco, coarguo; judico, damno, condemno; absolvo, libero, purgo; arcesso, cito, defero, postulo, reum facio, alicui diem dico, cum aliquo ago*. The genitive joined to these verbs depends upon the substantive *crimine* or *nomine*, which is understood, but sometimes also expressed.

Miltiades proditiōis est accusatus, quod, quum Parum expugnare posset, e pugna discessisset.

Thrasylbulus legem tulit, ne quis ante actarum rerum accusaretur neve multaretur.

[§ 447.] *Note.* The punishment, with the verbs of condemning, is commonly expressed by the genitive; e. g. *capitis, mortis, multae, pecuniae, quadrupli, octupli*, and less frequently by the ablative, *capite, morte, multa, pecunia*. The ablative, however, is used invariably when a definite sum is mentioned; e. g. *decem, quindecim, milibus aeris*. Sometimes we find the preposition *ad* or *in*: *ad poenam, ad bestias, ad metalla, in metallum, in expensas*.

[§ 448.] 12. The genitive is used with the verbs *esse* and *fieri*, in the sense of "it is a person's business, office, lot, or property," the substantive *res* or *negotium* being understood: e. g. *hoc est praeceptoris*, this is the business of the teacher; *non est mearum virium*, it is beyond my strength; *Asia Romanorum facta est*, Asia became the property of the Romans.

But instead of the genitive of the personal pronouns *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*, the neuters of the possessives *meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum est, erat, &c.*, are used.

Cujusvis hominis est errare, nullius nisi insipientis in errore perseverare.

Sapientis judicis est, semper non quid ipse velit, sed quid lex et religio cogat, cogitare.

Bello Gallico praeter Capitolium omnia hostium erant. Tuum est, videre quid agatur.

[§ 449.] 13. A similar ellipsis takes place with the impersonal verb *interest*, it is of interest or importance (to me), the person to whom any thing is of importance being expressed by the genitive; but instead of the genitive of the personal pronouns, the possessives *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra*, are used. The same is the case with the impersonal *rēfert* (probably a compound for *remfert*), which has the same meaning. These possessives in the case of *interest* are accusatives neuter plural, *commoda* being understood; but in the case of *rēfert* the *ā* of those pronouns is long, which is accounted for by supposing that originally the phrase was *rem fert meam, tuam, &c.* The thing which is of interest or importance is not expressed by a substantive, but sometimes by the neuter of a pronoun; e. g. *hoc mea interest*, and usually by an accusative with the infinitive, or by *ut* and the interrogative particles with the subjunctive: e. g. *multum mea interest te esse diligentem*, or *ut diligens sis*, (*utrum*) *diligens sis nec ne*.

Semper Milo, quantum interesset P. Clodii, se perire, cogitabat.

Caesar dicere solebat, non tam sua, quam reipublicae interesse, uti salvus esset.

Quid refert, utrum voluerim fieri, an factum gaudeam?

[§ 450.] *Note.* The degree of importance is expressed by adverbs or neuter adjectives, or by their genitives: *magis, magnopere, vehementer, parum, minime, tam, tantopere; multum, plus, plurimum, permultum, infinitum, mirum quantum, minus, nihil, aliquid, quiddam, tantum, quantum; tanti, quanti, magni, permagni, parvi.*

CHAP. LXXIV

ABLATIVE CASE.

[§ 451.] THE Ablative serves to denote certain relations of substantives, which are expressed in most other languages by prepositions.

Note. This is an important difference between the ablative and the other oblique cases; for the latter expressing necessary relations between nouns, occur in all languages which possess cases of inflection, and do not, like the French or English, express those relations by prepositions. But the ablative is a peculiarity of the Latin language, which might indeed be dispensed with, but which contributes greatly to its expressive conciseness.

1. The ablative is used first with passive verbs to denote the *thing* by which any thing is effected (*ablativus rei efficientis*), and which in the active construction is expressed by the nominative: e. g. *sol mundum illustrat*, and *sole mundus illustratur*; *fecunditas arborum me delectat*, and *fecunditate arborum delector*. If that by which any thing is effected is a *person*, the preposition *ab* is required with the ablative, with the sole exception of the participles of verbs denoting "to be born" (*natus, genitus, ortus*), to which the name of the father or family is generally joined in the ablative without a preposition. *Ab* cannot be used with the ablative of a *thing* by which any thing is effected, unless the thing be personified.

Dei providentiâ mundus administratur.

Non est consentaneum, qui metu non frangatur, eum frangi cupiditate; nec qui invictum se a labore praestiterit, vinci a voluptate.

[§ 452.] 2. An ablative expressing the *cause* (*ablativus causae*) is joined with adjectives, which, if changed into a verb, would require a passive construction: e. g. *fessus, aeger, saucius* (equivalent to *qui fatigatus, morbo affectus, vulneratus est*)—and with intransitive verbs, for which we may generally substitute some passive verb, of at least a similar meaning, as *interiit fame, consumptus est fame; gaudeo honore tuo, delector honore tuo*. Thus verbs expressing feeling or emotion are construed with the ablative of the thing which is the cause of the feeling or emotion, as *doleo fratris morte, lacrimabat gaudio*. Sometimes the prepositions *propter* and *per* are used instead of such an ablative, and when a person is described as the cause of an emotion, they are just as necessary as *ab* is with passive verbs.

We must notice in particular the following verbs:—*Glorior*, I boast; *laboro*, I suffer from; *nitor* and *innitor*, I lean upon; *sto*, I depend upon a thing; *fido* and *confido*, I trust in a thing, and the verbs *constare, contineri*, to consist of, are construed with the ablat. to denote that of which a thing

consists ; but *constare* is joined more frequently with *ex* or *in*, and *contineri* in the sense of "to be contained in a thing," is generally used with *in* ; *nitor* with *in* and the ablat., and *fido* and *confido* with the dat.

Concordiā res parvae crescunt, discordiā maximae dilabuntur.

Est adolescentis majores natu vereri exque his deligere optimos et probatissimos, quorum consilio atque auctoritate nitatur.

Virtute decet, non sanguine niti.

Diversis duobus vitiis, avaritia et luxuria, civitas Romana laborabat.

Delicto dolere, correctione gaudere nos oportet.

[§ 454.] *Note.* With transitive verbs also, the cause or the thing in consequence of which anything is done, is not expressed by the ablative but by the preposition *propter* or a circumlocution with *causā*, e. g. instead of *joco dicere, joco mentiri*, we find *joci causā dicere* or *mentiri* ; *hoc onus suscepi tuā causā* ; *honoris tui causā, propter amicitiam nostram*. When the cause is a state of feeling, the best Latin writers prefer a circumlocution with the perfect participle of some verb denoting "to induce ;" e. g. to do a thing from some desire, *cupiditate ductus, motus, captus, &c.*

[§ 455.] 3. An ablative is joined with verbs of every kind to express the means or instrument by which a thing is done (*ablativus instrumenti*). Thus we say *manu ducere aliquem*, to lead a person by the hand ; *equo, curru, nave vehi*, the horse, carriage, and ships being the means of moving.

Benivolentiam civium blanditiis colligere turpe est.

Cornibus tauri, apri dentibus, morsu leones, aliae fuga se, aliae (bestiae) occultatione tutantur.

Naturam expellas furca, tamen usque recurret.

Note. When a person is the instrument by which anything is effected, the ablative is rarely used; but generally the preposition *per*, or the circumlocution with *operā alicujus*, which is so frequent, especially with possessive pronouns, that *meā, tuā, suā, &c.* *operā* are exactly the same as *per me, per te, per se, &c.*

[§ 456.] 4. Hence with verbs of *buying* and *selling*, of *estimation, value*, and the like, the price or value of a thing is expressed by the ablative, provided it is indicated by a definite sum or a substantive.

Note. Respecting the genitive in general expressions, see § 444.

where it is observed that, contrary to the general rule, the ablatives *magno*, *permagno*, *plurimo*, *parvo*, *minimo*, are often joined to verbs denoting "to buy" and "sell."

Darius mille talentis percussorem Alexandri emere voluit.
Viginti talentis unam orationem Isocrates vendidit.
Denis in diem assibus anima et corpus militum aestimantur.

[§ 457.] 5. The ablative is joined with nouns (both substantive and adjective) and verbs to express a particular circumstance or limitation, where in English the expressions "with regard to," "as to," or "in" are used: e. g. *Nemo Romanorum Ciceroni par fuit*, or *Ciceronem aequavit eloquentiā*, in eloquence, or with regard to eloquence. Hence a great number of expressions by which a statement is modified or limited, as *meā sententiā*, frequently with the addition of *quidem*; *natione Syrus*, a Syrian by birth; *genere facile primus*; *Hamilcar cognomine Barcas*, &c.

Agasilaus claudus fuit (claudicabat) *altero pede.*
Sunt quidam homines, non re, sed nomine.

[§ 460.] 6. The ablative is used with verbs denoting plenty or want, and with the corresponding transitives of filling, endowing, depriving. (*Ablativus copiae aut inopiae*.) Verbs of this kind are:—1. *abundare, redundare, affluere, circumfluere, florere, vigere*; *carere, egere, indigere, vacare*; 2. *complere, explere, implere, cumulare, satiare*; *afficere, donare, ornare, augere*; *privare, spoliare, orbare, fraudare, nudare, exuere*, and many others of a similar meaning.

Germania rivis fluminibusque abundat.
Quam Dionysio erat miserum, carere consuetudine amicorum,
societate victus, sermone omnino familiari!
Arcesilas philosophus quum acumine ingenii floruit, tum
admirabili quodam lepore dicendi.
Consilio et auctoritate non modo non orbari, sed etiam augeri
senectus solet.
Mens est praedita motu sempiterno.

[§ 461.] Note 1. We must pay especial attention to the verb *afficere*, properly "endow with," but it is used in a great many ways, and may sometimes be translated by "to do something to a person:" *afficere aliquem honore, beneficio, laetitia, praemio, ignominia, injuria, poena, morte, sepultura*. Notice also *praeditus*, endowed, equivalent to *affectus*.

[§ 462.] Note 2. The adjectives denoting full and empty are sometimes joined with the ablative although as *adjectiva relativa* they take a

genitive (see § 436). *Refertus*, filled, as a participle of the verb *refercio* has regularly the ablative.

Indigeo is very frequently joined with a genitive.

[§ 464.] 7. *Opus est*, there is need, is used either as an impersonal verb, in which case it takes, like the verbs denoting want, an ablative, e. g. *duce (exemplis) nobis opus est*, or personally, in which case the thing needed is expressed by the nominative, e. g. *dux nobis opus est, exempla nobis opus sunt*. The latter construction is most frequent with the neuters of pronouns and adjectives.

Athenienses Philippidem cursorem Lacedaemonem miserunt, ut nuntiaret, quam celeri opus esset auxilio.

Themistocles celeriter quae opus erant reperiebat.

[§ 465.] 8. The ablative is joined with the deponent verbs *utor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior* and *vescor*, and their compounds *abutor*, *perfrutor*, *defungor* and *perfungor*.

Hannibal quum victoriā posset uti, frui maluit.

Qui adipisci veram gloriam volet, justitiae fungatur officii.

Numidae plerumque lacte et ferina carne vescebantur.

[§ 466.] *Note.* The five deponents here mentioned were joined in the early language with the accusative, whence afterward their participle fut. pass. continued to be regularly used. *Potior* occurs also with the genitive; e. g. *regni, imperii*, and especially in the phrase *rerum potiri*, to assume the supremacy.

[§ 467.] 9. The adjectives *dignus*, *indignus* and *contentus* are joined with the ablative of the thing of which we are worthy, unworthy, and with which we are satisfied. *Dignari*, to be deemed worthy, or, as a deponent, to deem worthy, is construed like *dignus*.

Quam multi luce indigni sunt, et tamen dies oritur!

Quod cuique temporis ad vivendum datur, eo debet esse contentus.

[§ 468.] 10. The verbs of *removing*, *preventing*, *delivering*, and others which denote separation, are construed with the ablative of the thing, without any of the prepositions *ab*, *de* or *ex*; but when separation from a person is expressed the preposition *ab* is always used. The principal verbs of this class are:—*pellere*, *depellere*, *expellere*, *ejicere*, *movere*, *amovere*, *demovere*, *removere*; *abire*, *exire*, *decedere*, *desistere*, *evadere*; *liberare*, *expedire*, *solvere*; *arcere*, *prohibere*, *ex-*

cludere, intercludere, abstinere; together with the adjectives *liber, immunitus, purus, vacuus* and *alienus*, which may be used either with the preposition *ab* or the ablative alone, e. g. *liber a delictis* and *liber omni metu*, but the verbs *exolvere, exonerare* and *levare*, although implying *liberation*, are always construed with the ablative alone.

Note. The verbs which denote "to distinguish" and "to differ," viz. *distinguere, discernere, secernere, differre, discrepare, dissidere, distare, abhorere*, together with *alienare* and *abalienare*, are generally joined only with the preposition *ab*, and the ablat. alone is rare and poetical.

L. Brutus civitatem dominatu regio liberavit.

Esse pro cive, qui civis non sit, rectum est non licere, usu vero urbis prohibere peregrinos sane inhumanum est.

Apud veteres Germanos quemcunque mortalium arcere tecto nefas habebatur.

Tu, Juppiter, hunc a tuis aris, a tectis urbis, a moenibus, a vita fortunisque civium arcebis.

[§ 471.] 11. The ablative is used with *esse* (either expressed or understood) to denote a quality of a person or a thing (*ablativus qualitatis*). But the ablative is used only when the substantive denoting the quality does not stand alone (as in the case of the genitive, see § 426.), but is joined with an adjective or pronoun-adjective. Hence we cannot say, e. g. *Caesar fuit ingenio*, or *homo ingenio*, a man of talent (which would be expressed by an adjective), but we say *Caesar magno, summo*, or *excellenti ingenio*, or *homo summo ingenio*.

Agessilaus statura fuit humili et corpore exiguo.

Omnes habentur et dicuntur tyranni, qui potestate sunt perpetua in ea civitate, quae libertate usa est.

L. Catilina, nobili genere natus, fuit magna vi et animi et corporis, sed ingenio malo pravoque.

Note. With regard to the difference between the ablative and the genitive of quality, the genitive is more comprehensive, all ideas of measure being expressed by this case alone; but in other respects the distinction is not very clear. Thus we may say *homo magna prudentia* or *magnae prudentiae*. But the ablat. depends upon *esse*, while the genit. is in immediate connection with the noun.

[§ 472.] 12. If the manner in which any thing is done is expressed by a substantive, it usually takes the preposition *cum*; e. g. *cum fide amicitiam colere*; *litterae cum cura diligentiaque scriptae*; *cum voluptate audire*. These ex-

pressions are equivalent to *fideliter colere, diligenter scriptae, libenter audire*, &c. If an adjective is joined with the substantive, the ablative alone (*ablativus modi*) is generally used, and the preposition *cum* is joined to it only when an additional circumstance, and not an essential characteristic of the action, is to be expressed. The substantives denoting manner, as *modus, ratio, mos*, and others, never take the preposition *cum*.

Quid est aliud gigantum modo bellare cum diis, nisi naturae repugnare?

Legiones nostrae in eum saepe locum profectae sunt alacri animo et erecto, unde se nunquam redituras arbitrarentur.

Epaminondas a iudicio capitis maximā discessit gloriā.

Miltiades, cum Parum expugnare non potuisset, Athenas magna cum offensione civium suorum rediit.

[§ 473.] *Note.* If we compare the above rules with those given under Nos. 1. and 2., the ablative expressing company alone is excluded, for company is expressed by *cum*, even in such cases as *servi cum telis comprehensi sunt, cum ferro in aliquem invadere*, when we are speaking of instruments which a person has (if he uses them, it becomes an *ablativus instrumenti*); further, *Romam veni cum febris*, I came to Rome as soon as the fever broke out; *cum nuntio exire*, as soon as the news arrived; *cum occasu solis copias educere*, as soon as the sun set.

[§ 475.] 13. a) The ablative, without a preposition, is used to express the point of time at which any thing happens.

Qua nocte natus Alexander est, eādem Dianae Ephesiae templum deflagavit.

Pompejus extrema pueritia miles fuit summi imperatoris, ineunte adolescentia maximī ipse exercitus imperator.

[§ 476.] b) The ablative is also used to express the time before and the time after a thing happened, and *ante* and *post* are in this case placed after the ablative. The meaning, however, is the same as when *ante* and *post* are joined with the accusative in the usual order, just as we may sometimes say, in the same sense, "three years after," and "after three years," *post tres annos decessit*, and *tribus annis post decessit*. In this connection the ordinal numerals may be employed, as well as the cardinal ones: *post tertium annum*, and *tertio anno post*, are the same as *tribus annis post*; for by this, as by the former expressions, the Romans did not imply that a

period of three full years had intervened, but they included in the calculation the beginning and the end. When *ante* or *post* stands last (as in *tribus annis post* or *tertio anno post*), it may be followed by an accusative to denote the time after and before which any thing took place.

Themistocles fecit idem, quod viginti annis ante apud nos fecerat Coriolanus.

L. Sextius primus de plebe consul factus est annis post Romam conditam trecentis duodenonaginta.

[§ 478.] *c*) The length of time before the present moment is expressed by *abhinc*, generally with the accusative, but also with the ablative; e. g. *Demosthenes abhinc annos prope trecentos fuit*, and *abhinc annis quattuor*. The same meaning is also expressed by *ante*, with the pronoun *hic*, as in *ante hos sex menses*; *ante haec tria saecula*.

[§ 479.] *d*) The length of time *within which* a thing happens may be expressed either by the ablative alone or by *is* with the ablative, or by *intra* with the accusative.

Agamemnon cum universa Graecia vix decem annis unam cepit urbem.

Senatus decrevit, ut legati Jugurthae, nisi regnum ipsumque deditum venissent, in diebus proximis decem Italiā decederent.

[§ 481.] 14. The ablative without a preposition is used in some particular combinations, to denote the place where? as *terra marique*, by land and by sea. Respecting names of towns, see § 398. The preposition *in* is omitted with the word *loco* (and *locis*), when it is joined with an adjective, and has the derivative meaning of "occasion;" e. g. *hoc loco, multis locis, aliquot locis, secundo loco, meliore loco res nostrae sunt*; but this is done more rarely when *locus* has its proper meaning of "spot" or "place." *Libro* joined with an adjective or pronoun, as *hoc, primo, tertio*, is used without *in*, when the whole book is meant, and with *in* when merely a portion or passage is meant.

The poets observe no limits in the use of the ablative without *in* to denote a place where? They further use the ablative without *ex* or *ab* to indicate the place whence?

[§ 483.] 15. The ablative is used with adjectives in the comparative degree, instead of *quam* with the nominative, or *in the construction of the accusative with the infinitive, instead*

of *quam* with the accusative of the subject; e. g. *Nemo Romanorum fuit eloquentior Cicerone; neminem Romanorum eloquentiorem fuisse veteres judicarunt Cicerone*. The ablative instead of *quam* with the accusative of the object occurs more rarely, but when the object is a relative pronoun, the ablative is generally used.

Vilius argentum est auro, virtutibus aurum.

Phidiae simulacris, quibus nihil in illo genere perfectius videmus, cogitare tamen possumus pulchriora.

[§ 485.] Note 1. *Minus, plus, and amplius*, when joined to numerals are used with and without *quam*, generally as indeclinable words, and without influence upon the construction; *minus duo milia hominum ex tanto exercitu effugerunt*, instead of *quam duo milia*; *amplius trecentos milites* (or *trecentos amplius milites*) *habuit*; *cum trecentis non amplius militibus effugit*.

[§ 486.] Note 2. The English word "still," joined with comparatives, is expressed by *etiam*, and sometimes by *vel*, but never by *adhuc*.

[§ 487.] 16. The ablative is used to express the measure or amount by which one thing surpasses another, or is surpassed by it. *Paulo, multo, quo, eo, quanto, tanto, tantulo, aliquanto, hoc*, are ablatives of this kind.

Hibernia dimidio minor est quam Britannia.

Homines quo plura habent, eo cupiunt ampliora.

[§ 489.] 17. The ablative is governed by the prepositions *ab* (*a, abs*), *absque, clam, coram, cum, de, ex* (*e*), *prae, pro, sine, tenus* (is placed after its case); by *in* and *sub* when they answer to the question *where?* and by *super* in the sense of *de*, "concerning," or "with regard to." *Subter* is joined indifferently either with the ablative or the accusative, though more frequently with the latter.

The preposition *in* is generally joined with the ablative after the verbs of placing (*pono, loco, collōco, statuo, constituo, and consido*), although strictly speaking they express motion, and therefore should have *in* with the accusative.

Aegyptii ac Babylonii omnem curam in siderum cognitione posuerunt.

Herculem hominum fama, beneficiorum memor, in concilio coelestium collocavit.

CHAP. LXXV.

VOCATIVE CASE.

[§ 492.] THE vocative is not in any immediate connection with either nouns or verbs, but is inserted to express the object to which our words are addressed.

III. USE OF THE TENSES.

CHAP. LXXVI.

[§ 493.] 1. THE tenses of the Latin verb are used on the whole in the same way as those of the English verb, with the exception of some peculiarities, which are explained in § 500. foll. (Comp. § 150.) The only general rule that can be laid down is this: we must first determine whether the action or condition to be expressed falls in the *present*, the *past*, or the *future*, and in what relation it stands to other actions or conditions with which it is connected. For example, *I was writing*, and *I had written*, are both actions belonging to the past, but in regard to their relation they differ, for in the sentence, "*I was writing when the shot was heard*," the act of writing was not completed when the shot was heard; whereas in the sentence "*I had written, when my friend arrived*," the act of writing was completed when the other (the arrival of my friend) occurred. The same difference exists between, *I shall write to-morrow*, and *I shall have written to-morrow*; between *I am writing to-day*, i. e. I am engaged in an act not yet terminated, and *I have written to-day*, which expresses an act already terminated. This last is the proper signification of the Latin perfect, as *advēnit pater*, the father has arrived, that is, he is here now. Horace, at the close of a work, says: *exegi monumentum ævi perennius*; an orator, at the conclusion of his speech, says: *dixi*, that is, "I have done;" and Virgil, with great emphasis: *fuimus Troes, fuit Ilium*, i. e. we are no longer Trojans, Ilium is no more.

[§ 494.] 2. The Latin language therefore has two tenses

for each of the three great divisions of time, — past, present, and future ; one expressing a complete and the other an incomplete action. And the six tenses of the Latin verb are thus the result of a combination of time and relation.

- { *scribo*, I write, or am writing — present time, and action going on.
- { *scripsi*, I have written, — present time, and action terminated.
- { *scribebam*, I was writing, or wrote, — past time, and action going on.
- { *scripseram*, I had written, — past time, and action terminated.
- { *scribam*, I shall write, or be writing, — future time, and action not completed.
- { *scripsero*, I shall have written, — future time and action completed.

3. The passive has the same tenses with the same meanings ; but with this difference, that they do not express an action, but a condition or suffering.

- { *laudor*, I am praised, — present time, and condition still going on.
- { *laudatus sum*, I have been praised, — present time, and condition terminated.
- { *laudabar*, I was praised, — past time, and condition going on.
- { *laudatus eram*, I had been praised, — past time, and condition terminated.
- { *laudabor*, I shall be praised, — future time, and condition not completed.
- { *laudatus ero*, I shall have been praised, — future time, and condition completed.

[§ 496.] 4. The tenses of the present and past time, that is, the present, perfect, imperfect, and pluperfect, have also a subjunctive mood, as *scribam*, *scripserim*, *scribebam*, *scripsissem*, and in the passive, *scribar*, *scriptus sim*, *scriberer*, *scriptus essem*. For the relations in which the subjunctive is required, see Chap. LXXVIII. As tenses, these subjunctives do not differ from the tenses of the indicative.

5. Neither the active nor the passive voice has a subjunctive of the future, and the deficiency is supplied by other means. When the idea of futurity is already implied in another part of the proposition, some other tense of the subjunctive supplies the place of the future, viz. the present and imperfect supply the place of the future subjunctive, and the perfect and pluperfect that of the future perfect. The choice of one or other of these four subjunctives is to be determined by the time expressed by the leading verb of the proposition, and by the relation of the action, being either completed or not completed ; e. g. *Affirmo tibi, si hoc beneficium mihi tribuas, me magnopere gavisurum*, and *affirmabam tibi, si illud*

beneficium mihi tribueres, magnopere me gavisurum. It is clear that *tribuas* and *tribueres* here supply the place of the future subjunctive, for in the indicative we say *si mihi tribues — magnopere gaudebo*. Again, *Affirmo tibi, si hoc beneficium mihi tribueris, me quamcunque possim gratiam tibi relaturum*, and *affirmabat mihi, si illud beneficium ipsi tribuissem, se quamcunque posset gratiam mihi relaturum*, where *tribueris* and *tribuissem* supply the place of the future perfect, for in the indicative we should say *si hoc beneficium mihi tribueris* (from *tribuero*), *quamcunque potero gratiam tibi referam*, when you shall have shown me this kindness. The same is the case in the passive voice: *affirmo tibi, si hoc beneficium mihi tribuatur, me magnopere gavisurum*; *affirmabam tibi, si illud beneficium mihi tribueretur, magnopere me gavisurum*; *affirmo tibi, me, si hoc beneficium mihi tributum sit* (or *fuerit*), *quamcunque possim gratiam tibi relaturum*; *affirmabam tibi, si illud beneficium mihi tributum esset* (or *fuisset*), *quamcunque possem gratiam me tibi relaturum*.

[§ 497.] If no future has gone before, and the construction of the sentence requires the subjunctive, the participle future active is employed for this purpose, with the appropriate tense of the verb *esse*. This paraphrased conjugation (*conjugatio paraphrastica*), as it is called, properly expresses an intended action; but the subjunctives with *sim* and *essem* are used also as regular subjunctives of the future, the idea of *intention* passing over into that of *futurity*; e.g. *Non dubito quin rediturus sit*, I do not doubt that he will return; *non dubitabam quin rediturus esset*, I did not doubt that he would return. The perfects *rediturus fuerim* and *rediturus fuissem* retain their original meaning, implying intention; e.g. *non dubito quin rediturus fuerit*, I do not doubt that he has had the intention to return. If we want simply to express futurity, we must use the circumlocution with *futurum sit* and *futurum esset*; e.g. *nescio num futurum sit, ut cras hoc ipse tempore jam redierit*, and *nesciebam num futurum esset, ut postridie eo ipso tempore jam redisset*. This same circumlocution must be employed in the passive, since the participle future passive implies necessity, and cannot be used in the sense of a simple future; e.g. *non dubito, quin futurum sit ut laudetur*, I do not doubt that he will be praised; *multi non dubitabant, quin futurum esset, ut Caesar a Pompejo vinceretur*, that Caesar would be conquered by Pompey.

[§ 498.] 6. This *conjugatio periphrastica*, which is formed by means of the participle future active and the auxiliary verb *esse*, is peculiar to the Latin language, and is used to express an *intended* action, or, in the case of intransitive verbs, a state or condition which is to come to pass. It has its six tenses like the ordinary conjugation. The realization depends either on the will of the subject or on that of others, or upon circumstances. In the first case we say in English, "I intend," or "am on the point of," and in the others, "I am to" (be, or do a thing), i. e. others wish that I should do it; e. g. *scripturus sum*, I intend writing, or am to write; *scripturus eram*, I intended writing, or was to write; *scripturus fui*, I have been intending to write, &c.

[§ 499.] 7. The participle future passive in *ndus*, or the participle of necessity (*participium necessitatis*), in combination with the tenses of the verb *esse*, forms another distinct conjugation denoting *future necessity* and not future suffering, for *epistola scribenda est*, for example, does not signify "the letter is about to be written," which is expressed by the simple future *epistola scribetur*, but "the letter must be written," there being either an internal or external necessity for its being written, either of which is expressed in English by "the letter is to be written." This conjugation may accordingly be regarded as the passive of the *conjugatio periphrastica*. The tenses are the same as those of the auxiliary verb *esse*, and in so far do not differ from the general rule.

[§ 500.] 8. The *perfect indicative*, both active and passive, has in Latin, besides its signification of an action terminated at the present time, that of an *aorist*, that is, it is used to relate events of the past, which are simply conceived as facts, without any regard to their being terminated or not terminated, in respect to each other; e. g. *Itaque Caesar armis rem gerere constituit, exercitum finibus Italiae admovit, Rubiconem transiit, Romam et aerarium occupavit, Pompejum cedentem persecutus est, eumque in campis Pharsalicis devicit*. In English the imperfect (or more correctly called the preterite) is used as an aorist to relate events of the past, and hence we translate the above passage:—Caesar resolved to use armed force, he advanced with his army to the frontiers of Italy, passed the Rubicon, took possession of Rome and the treasury, pursued Pompey, and defeated him in the plain of Pharsalus. But the Latin imperfect is never

used in this sense; it always expresses an incomplete or continuing action or condition in past time, the ancient correct rule being *perfecto procedit, imperfecto insistit oratio*.

[§ 501.] *Note.* In Latin, as in many modern languages, the *present* tense is often used instead of the aorist of the past, when the writer or speaker in his imagination transfers himself to the past, which thus becomes to him present, as it were. Narrators by this figure frequently render their descriptions very animated; but in regard to dependent sentences, they often regard such a present as a regular perfect, and accordingly use the imperfect or pluperfect in the dependent sentence which follows.

[§ 502.] 9. The peculiar character of the Latin imperfect therefore is to express a repeated action, manners, customs, and institutions, which are described as continuing at some given period in past time, and completely answers to the English compound tense, "I was writing," "he was waiting."

Socrates dicere solebat (or dicebat), omnes in eo, quod scirent, satis esse eloquentes.

Anseres Romae publice alebantur in Capitolio.

[§ 504.] 10. The *perfect subjunctive* has not this meaning of an aorist, but is always used to express a terminated action with reference to the present time, and thus completely answers to the perfect in English. The *imperfect subjunctive*, on the other hand, in historical narratives has the aorist sense of the perfect indicative, when past events are mentioned without reference to the action or condition being continued or not.

Note. This difference is easily perceived; e.g. *puer de tecto decidit, ut crus frangerit*, "the boy has fallen from the roof, so that he has broken his leg," is not a narrative but the statement of an event completed at the present time; but *puer de tecto decidit, ut crus frangeret*, "the boy fell from the roof, so that he broke his leg," is a real historical narrative, for the perfect *decidit* is here used in its aorist sense, and the imperfect subjunctive supplies its place in the dependent clause.

A comparison with the English language thus leads to this conclusion, that the perfect and imperfect subjunctive are used in Latin in the same sense as in English; but the perfect indicative in Latin, as an historical tense, answers to the English imperfect, and the Latin imperfect indicative to the English paraphrased tense "I was" with a participle.

Mulier tam vehementer lapidem de tecto dejecit, ut regis (Pyrrhi) caput et galeam perfringeret.

[§ 505.] 11. The duration and completion of an action in

reference to another are expressed in Latin more accurately than in English, by the *imperfect* and *pluperfect*. When one action must be completed before another can begin, the former is invariably expressed by the pluperfect; e. g. *quum domum intrasset, quum in forum venisset, animadvertit; quum amicum conspexisset, dixit, &c.*, "when he had entered the house, he perceived." We are less accurate in saying "when I entered the house, I perceived," or "I entered the house, and perceived." But this cannot be done in Latin, and the pluperfect is used wherever the relation of the actions requires it.

Lysander quum per speculatores comperisset, vulgum Atheniensium in terram exisse navesque paene inanes relictas, tempus rei gerendae non dimisit.

[§ 506.] But in narratives the conjunction *dum* (while, as) is generally joined with the present indicative; and the conjunctions *postquam*, *ubi*, *ubi primum*, *ut*, *ut primum*, *quum primum*, *simul ac*, *simul atque*, all of which are equivalent to the English "as soon as," are generally joined with the historical perfect, and not with the pluperfect, as might be expected from the succession of the actions indicated by these conjunctions.

Dum ea Romani parant consultantque, jam Saguntum summa vi oppugnabatur.

Unus ex captivis domum abiit, quod fallaci reditu in castra jurejurando se exsolvisset. Quod ubi innotuit relatumque ad senatum est, omnes censuerunt comprehendendum et custodibus publice datis deducendum ad Hannibalem esse.

[§ 509.] 12. In the use of the *two futures* the Latin language is likewise more accurate than the English. For when a future action is spoken of, either in the future or in the imperative (or in the subjunctive used imperatively), and another is joined with it, which has not yet come to pass, the latter also is put in the future if the actions are conceived as continuing together, and in the future perfect, if the one must be completed before the other can begin. This is perfectly in accordance with the ideas expressed by these tenses; but it must be specially mentioned, because in English we often use the present instead of the future, especially in the case of the verbs "I can" and "I will;" e. g. *faciam si poterò*, I shall do it, if I can; *facito hoc, ubi voles*, do it when

you will ; because owing to the awkwardness of the future perfect, we frequently supply its place either by the simple future or by the present ; e. g. *ut sementem feceris, ita metes*, as you sow, so will you reap.

Adolescentes quum relaxare animos et dare se jucunditati volent, caveant intemperantiam, meminerint verecundiae.
De Carthagine vereri non ante desinam, quam illam excisam esse cognovero.

[§ 512.] 13. The tenses of the indicative may be connected in any way which the intention of the speaker may require ; e. g. "I *am* writing now, but this time yesterday I *took* a walk ;" "I *know* the person whom you *will see* to-morrow." But in dependent clauses, that is, in the subjunctive, *similar* tenses alone can be connected with one another, that is, the tenses of the present (present and perfect) and the tenses of the past (imperfect and pluperfect). In the rules respecting the *succession of tenses*, or the *dependence of sentences* upon one another, everything depends upon time, for the present time is suited only to the present, and the past only to the past ; the relation of an action depending only upon itself, is never doubtful. Hence we have only to remember, that the perfect naturally, and in the subjunctive always, expresses present time, and that consequently

The Present and Perfect are followed by a Present and Perfect, and

The Imperfect and Pluperfect by an Imperfect and Pluperfect ;

E. g. *scio quid agas* and *scio quid egeris* ; *audivi quid agas* and *audivi quid egeris* ; but *sciebam quid ageres*, and *sciebam quid egisses* ; *audiveram quid ageres*, and *audiveram quid egisses*.

[§ 513.] This simple rule respecting the succession of tenses becomes somewhat difficult through the double signification of the perfect indicative. In the above rule it was treated only as the present of a completed action (in which sense it is equivalent to the English perfect) ; but as it is at the same time an aorist of the past (see § 500.), it is also connected with the tenses of past time, viz. with the imperfect and pluperfect. The above rule, therefore, must be *completed* by the following addition :—

The historical perfect is followed by the imperfect and pluperfect.

E. g. *Audivi quid ageres* and *audivi quid egisses*. The two meanings of the perfect and their influence upon the tense of the dependent verb may be seen in the following examples :—

Verres Siciliam per triennium ita vexavit ac perdidit, ut ea restitui in antiquum statum nullo modo possit, says Cicero with reference to the actual state of Sicily.

Conon quum patriam obsideri audisset, non quaesivit, ubi ipse tuto viveret, sed unde praesidio posset esse civibus suis, says Nepos in speaking of past events.

[§ 516.] The futures are *similar* to the tenses of the present, for only that which is past stands apart and by itself. Hence, a future is followed by a present or a perfect, e. g. *mox intelligam, quantum me ames* or *amaveris*, but not *quantum me amares* or *amasses*. The same is the case with the future perfect: *si cognovero, quemadmodum te geras* or *te gesseris*. But as the four subjunctives of the *conjugatio periphrastica* (formed by the future participle and *esse*) are regarded as subjunctives of the futures, these paraphrased tenses may be dependent upon preterites, and a mutual dependence exists between the presents and futures, but only a partial one between the preterites and futures, since the futures only may depend upon preterites, but not vice versâ; e. g. *ignorabam quid dicturus esset*, but not *discam quid heri faceres* for *discam quid heri feceris*.

The complete rule respecting the succession of tenses, therefore, is this: the tenses of the present and future, i. e. the present, perfect (in its proper sense), and the two futures are followed by the tenses of the present, i. e. by the present and the perfect subjunctive; and the tenses of the past, i. e. the imperfect, pluperfect, and the historical perfect, are followed by the tenses of the past, i. e. by the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive.

IV. OF THE MOODS.

CHAP. LXXVII.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

[§ 517.] 1. THE indicative is used in every proposition the substance of which is expressed absolutely and as a fact, e. g. I go, thou wrotest, he believed.

Hence the indicative is employed even in the expression of conditions and suppositions with the particles *si*, *nisi*, *etsi* and *etiamsi*, if an event is supposed actually to take place, or (with *nisi*) not to take place.

Mors aut plane negligenda est, si omnino extinguit animum, aut etiam optanda, si aliquo eum deducit, ubi sit futurus aeternus.

Si feceris id, quod ostendis, magnam habebo gratiam, si non feceris, ignoscam.

Adhuc certe, nisi ego insanio, stulte omnia et incaute fiunt.

Ista veritas, etiamsi jucunda non est, mihi tamen grata est.

[§ 518.] Note 1. The following peculiarities deserve to be noticed as differing from the English.

The verbs *oportet*, *necesse est*, *debeo*, *convenit*, *possum*, *licet*, and *par, fas, aequum, justum, consentaneum est*, or *aequius, melius, utilius, optabilius est*, are put in the indicative of a preterite (imperf., pluperf., and the historical perfect), where we should expect the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive. The imperfect indicative in this case expresses things which are not, but the time for which is not yet passed; and the perfect and pluperfect indicative things which have not been, but the time for which is passed; e. g. *Ad mortem te duci jam pridem oportebat*, i. e. thy execution was necessary and is still so; hence it *ought* to take place.

[§ 521.] Note 2. The Latins commonly use the indicative after many general and relative expressions, some *fact* being implied. This is the case after pronouns and relative adverbs which are either doubled or have the suffix *cunque*: *quisquis, quicunque, utut, utcunque*, and others; e. g. *Utcunque sese res habet, tua est culpa*, however this may be, the fault is thine: *quicunque is est*, whoever he may be.

[§ 522.] Note 3. In the same way sentences connected by *sive*—*sive* commonly have the verb in the indicative; e. g. *sive tacebis, sive loquere. mihi perinde est; sive verum est, sive falsum, mihi quidem ita renuntiatum est.*

CHAP. LXXVIII.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

[§ 523.] 1. THE subjunctive is used in general, when a proposition is stated, not as a fact, but merely as a conception of the mind.

Note. The subjunctive is only a particular form which is given to a proposition; its substance does not come into consideration. Hence "I believe," "I suspect," are expressed by the indicative, although these words indicate only certain conceptions, but my belief and suspicion are stated as real acts. When, on the other hand, I say "I should believe," "I should think," the acts of believing and thinking are represented as mere conceptions, which perhaps do not exist at all, or even cannot exist. Hence the Latins always use the subjunctive when a sentence is to express an intention either that something is to be effected or prevented, for the actions here exist only as conceptions; e. g. *pecuniam homini do, ut me defendat, ne me accuset*. The English language, which has no subjunctive, avails itself of a variety of auxiliary verbs to express the nature of the subjunctive, as *may, might, could, should, would*.

[§ 524.] 2. We must here first notice the difference between the four tenses of the subjunctive in hypothetical or conditional sentences, both in that part of the sentence containing the condition (protasis, beginning with the conjunctions *si, nisi, etsi, etiamsi, tāmetsi*), and in the one containing the inference or conclusion (apodösis). The present and perfect subjunctive are used when a condition is to be expressed together with the suggestion that it does exist or may exist; but the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive are used when a condition is expressed together with the suggestion that it did not or could not exist; and the imperfect in this case implies present time as in English; e. g. *si velit*, "if he wishes," or "should wish," implying that he either actually wishes or at least may wish: in the consequent member of the proposition (the apodosis), the present or perfect subjunctive or indicative may stand; but *si vellet*, "if he wished," implies that he does not or cannot wish, and here the apodosis requires the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive. The subjunctive without *si* may have the same meaning, e. g. *facerem*, "I should do," implying that I do not or cannot do; *vellem*, "I should wish," implying that I might have a wish, but that in fact I do not wish, seeing that it would be of no

avail. *Velim* and *cupiam* thus do not much differ from *volo* and *cupio*.

The imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive therefore are necessary in hypothetical sentences; but the present and perfect subjunctive differ only slightly from the indicative, and their use cannot be fixed by grammatical rules. The indicative gives to a sentence the form of reality; whereas the subjunctive represents it as a mere conception, which however may at the same time be a reality; e.g. *etiamsi te non laudo* or *laudabo, tamen, &c.*, even if I do not or shall not praise thee, — the reality is admitted; *etiamsi te non laudem* or *laudaverim*, if (perhaps) I should not praise thee, or should not have praised thee, — the possibility is conceived. The use of the present and perfect subjunctive in these cases arises in some measure from the circumstance that an indefinite person is addressed in Latin by the second person singular, but only in the subjunctive; hence the subjunctive is used in such cases even where the indicative would be necessary, if a definite person were addressed. It must further be observed that these two subjunctives supply the place of the subjunctive of the two futures. Comp. § 496.

The following may serve as examples of both cases: —

Si Neptunus, quod Theseo promiserat, non fecisset, Theseus filio Hippolyto non esset orbatus.

Dies deficiat, si velim numerare, quibus bonis male evenerit, nec minus si commemorem, quibus improbis optime.

Si gladium quis apud te sana mente deposuerit, repetat insaniens: reddere peccatum sit, officium non reddere.

Memoria minuitur, nisi eam exerceas, aut si sis natura tardior.

Note. The above rule respecting the difference of the subjunctives, is observed also in hypothetical sentences, if the leading verb is in the present; but if an historical tense precedes, the rule respecting the succession of tenses (§ 512.) again comes into operation, and the distinction between things possible and not possible is not expressed.

[§ 527.] 3. Hence the present subjunctive is used also in independent propositions to soften an assertion or statement, and without any essential difference from the present indicative or the future. We generally express the same by “I may” or “I might” (the subjunctive as a *potential mood*); e.g. *Forsitan quaeratis; nemo istud tibi concedat; quis dubitet? velim (nolim, malim) sic existimes.*

The perfect subjunctive may likewise be used in the sense of a softened perfect indicative ; e. g. *forsitan temere fecerim*, I may perhaps have acted inconsiderately ; but the perfect subjunctive, when used independently, generally has the meaning of a softened future, and in so far is equivalent to the present subjunctive.

Quid videatur ei magnum in rebus humanis, cui aeternitas omnis totiusque mundi nota sit magnitudo ?

Hoc sine ulla dubitatione confirmaverim, eloquentiam rem esse omnium difficillimam.

Tu vero Platonem nec nimis valde unquam, nec nimis saepe laudaveris.

Nil ego contulerim jucundo sanus amico.

[§ 529.] 4. The subjunctive is further used in independent sentences to express a wish or desire (*optative*). In the second and third persons of the present (to some extent also of the perfect) it supplies the place of the imperative ; e. g. *dicas* equivalent to *dic*, *loquare* to *loquere*, especially when the person is indefinite ; further *dicat, faciat, loquatur*. The present subjunctive is used in the first person to express an assurance ; e. g. *moriar, inteream, peream* ; and in the plural a request, which may be addressed to ourselves as well as others ; e. g. *eamus, moriamur, nunc revertamur ad propositum* ! let us go ! let us die ! let us return ! The imperfect and pluperfect are used to express wishes belonging to the past time, when a thing ought to have been or to have been done ; e. g. *diceret, dixisset*, he should have said.

Connected with this optative is the use of the subjunctive (called in this case *concessivus*), to express a concession or admission, both with and without the conjunctions *ut* and *licet* ; e. g. *dicat*, he may say ; *diceret*, he might say ; *dixerit*, he may have said ; and so on through all the tenses.

The negative with these subjunctives (*optative* and *concessive*) is usually not *non* but *ne* ; e. g. *ne dicas, ne dicat, ne dixeris* (this negative way is the most common case of the perfect subjunct. being used in the sense of the present) ; further, *ne vivam, ne desperemus, ne fuerit*, equivalent to *licet non fuerit*.

Meminerimus, etiam adversus infimos justitiam esse servandam.

Nihil incommodo valetudinis tuae feceris.

Emas, non quod opus est, sed quod necesse est.

Donis impii ne placare audeant deos; Platonem audiant, qui vetat dubitare, qua sit mente futurus deus, cum vir nemo bonus ab improbo se donari velit.

Naturam expellas furca, tamen usque recurret.

Ne sit summum malum dolor, malum certe est.

[§ 530.] 5. Lastly, the subjunctive is used, in all its tenses, in independent sentences to express a doubtful question containing a negative sense (*conjunctivus dubitativus*); e. g. *quo eam?* whither shall I go? *quo irem?* whither should I go? *quo eas?* whither wilt thou go? *quo ires?* whither would'st thou go? *quo iverim?* whither was I to have gone? *quo ivissem?* whither should I have gone? The answer implied in all these cases is "nowhere;" for in questions to which we expect an affirmative answer, the indicative is used.

Cur non confitear, quod necesse est?

Cum tempestate pugnem periculose potius, quam illi obtemperem et paream?

Valerius quotidie cantabat: erat enim scenicus: quid faceret aliud?

[§ 531.] 6. Dependent sentences in which an *intention* or a *direction* towards the future is expressed, take the subjunctive. The conjunctions *ut*, *ne*, *quo*, *quin*, *quominus* serve to connect such sentences with others, and consequently govern the subjunctive, the tenses of which must be chosen as required by the tense of the verb in the leading clause. (See above, § 512, foll.)

a) *Ut* or *uti* (that or in order that) refers either to something future which is the intention, object, result or effect of another action (which is often expressed in English by "in order to," or simply "to" with the infinitive), or when used after the words *sic*, *ita*, *tam*, *talis*, *tantus*, *ejusmodi*, &c., it expresses a quality or the nature of a thing in the form of a result. The English conjunction "that," which introduces clauses supplying the place either of a nominative or accusative, cannot be rendered by *ut*, as "it is a consolation for the subjects that the king is a just man," equivalent to "the king's justice is a consolation," &c.; or "I know that the king is just," equivalent to "I know the king's justice."

Esse oportet ut vivas, non vivere ut edas.

Pylades Orestem se esse dixit, ut pro illo necaretur.

Nemo tam malus est, ut videri velit.

Sol efficit ut omnia floreat.

[§ 532.] *b)* *Nē* (in order that not, or, lest) is used only to express a negative intention or intended effect; e. g. *cura ne denuo in morbum incidas*, or *haec vitae ratio effecit, ne denuo in morbum inciderem*. *Ut non* is used, on the other hand, when an effect is to be expressed without an intention, that is, a simple result or consequence, and when a quality is to be determined, in which case the adverbs *ita*, *sic*, *tam* are either expressed or understood; e. g. *tum forte aegrotabam, ut ad nuptias tuas venire non possem*; i. e. in consequence of my illness, but no intention is expressed. *Ut non* is further used when the negation does not refer to the whole clause, but only to a part of it or to a particular word: e. g. *dedi tibi pecuniam, ut emerēs non vinum, sed panem*.

Nemo prudens punit, ut ait Plato, quia peccatum est, sed ne peccetur.

Nihil agitis, inquit Arria, potestis enim efficere, ut male moriar; ne moriar, non potestis.

[§ 533.] It is a peculiarity of the Latin language to treat the verbs *metuo*, *timeo*, *vereor*, as implying an intention. They are therefore followed by *ne*, when anything is to be prevented, or when it is wished that something should not happen; e. g. *metuo, ne frustra laborem susceperis*; and by *ut*, when it is wished that something should take place; e. g. *vereor, ut mature venias*. These same verbs are followed by the infinitive when they express only a state of mind, without implying any wish either the one way or the other; e. g. *metuo manus admovere, vereor dicere*; but *vereor ut apte dicam*.

Vereor, ne, dum minuere velim laborem, augeam.

Adulatores, si quem laudant, vereri se dicunt, ut illius facta verbis consequi possint.

[§ 535.] *Note.* *Neve* (or *neu*, composed of *ne* and *ve*) signifies "or in order that not," or "and in order that not," and is therefore not to be confounded with *neque* (or *nec*). It stands to *ne* in the same relation that *neque* does to *non*.

[§ 536.] *c)* *Quo* is properly the ablative of the relative pronoun, and stands for *ut eo* (§ 567.), "in order that," or "that by this means." But it is commonly joined only with comparatives. *Non quo* answers to the English, "not that," or "not as if" (instead of which, however, we may also say *non quod*), and *non quin* to "not as if not." The apodosis

following after such a sentence begins with *sed quod* or *sed quia* and the indicative or with *ut* and the subjunctive.

Ager non semel aratur, sed novatur et iteratur, quo meliores fetus possit et grandiores edere.

Legem brevem esse oportet, quo facilius ab imperitis teneatur.

Ad te litteras dedi, non quo haberem magnopere, quod scriberem, sed ut loquerer tecum absens.

[§ 538.] *d)* *Quin* is used after negative sentences and doubtful questions with *quis* and *quid*, which differ only in form from affirmative propositions with *nemo* and *nihil*, first, for *qui non*, *quae non*, *quod non*, and secondly for *ut non* ("that not" or "without" when followed by a participle). *Quin*, equivalent to a relative pronoun with *non*, is used especially after the expressions *nemo*, *nullus*, *nihil*, *vix*, *aegre*—*est*, *reperitur*, *invenitur*; the use of *quin* for *ut non* cannot be limited to particular expressions, but we must especially observe the phrase *facere non possum quin*, and in the passive voice, *fieri non potest quin*, where the double negative renders the affirmative meaning more emphatic.

Nihil tam difficile est, quin quaerendo investigari possit.

Nunquam tam male est Siculis, quin aliquid facite et commode dicant.

Facere non potui, quin tibi et sententiam et voluntatem declararem meam.

[§ 540.] From this we must distinguish the use of *quin* after *non dubito*, *non est dubium*, *non ambigo* (I doubt not), and many other expressions containing a negation; as *non abest*; *nihil, paulum, non multum abest*; *non, vix, aegre abstineo*; *tenere me*, or *temperari mihi non possum*; *non impedio, non recuso, nihil praetermitto*, and the like. For in these cases the negative contained in *quin* is superfluous, and is only a sort of continuation of the preceding *non*; hence it is generally not expressed in English, *quin* being rendered by "that," or by "to" with an infinitive. E. g. *non dubito quin domi sit*, I have no doubt, (that) he is at home; *nulla mora fuit, quin decernerent bellum*, they did not hesitate to decree war. Hence, as *quin* in this case is only a *form* of expression, *non* is superadded, if the dependent clause is to have a really negative meaning. Thus we find not unfrequently, at least, *non dubito quin non*, which is easily explained by translating *non dubito quin* by "I believe," e. g. *non dubito*

quin offensionem negligentiae vitare atque effugere non possim, I believe that I cannot escape the charge of negligence.

Dux ille Graeciae nusquam optat, ut Ajacis similes habeat decem, sed ut Nestoris; quod si acciderit, non dubitat quin brevi Troja sit peritura.

Num dubitas quin specimen naturae capi deceat ex optima quaque natura? Cic. *Tusc.* i. 14.

Quis igitur dubitet, quin in virtute divitiae sint?

Ego nihil praetermisi, quantum facere potui, quin Pompejum a Caesaris conjunctione avocarem.

Infesta contio vix inhiberi potuit, quin protinus suo more saxa in Polemonem jaceret.

Note. When *dubito* and *non dubito* signify "I scruple" or "hesitate," and the clause following contains the same subject, they are generally followed by the infinitive; e. g. *non dubito respondere.*

Quin, in accordance with its formation from *qui* (the ablat. of *qui*, *quis*) and *non*, also signifies "why not?" and in this sense it is joined with the indicative or imperative, as *quin dicis*, or *quin dic statim*, well say it at once.

[§ 543.] *e*) *Quominus* (for *ut eo minus*, in order that not) is used only after verbs expressing a hindrance, where also *ne*, and if a negative precedes, *quin* may be used. The principal verbs of this kind are:—*deterrehere, impedire, intercedere, obsistere, obstare, officere, prohibere, recusare, repugnare*; but there are several other expressions which convey the same meaning, e. g. *stat* or *fit per me*, I am the cause; *non pugno, nihil moror, non contineo me*, &c.

Cimon nunquam in hortis custodem imposuit, ne quis impediretur, quominus ejus rebus, quibus quisque vellet, frueretur.

Parmenio, quum audisset, venenum a Philippo medico regi parari, deterrehere eum voluit epistola scripta, quominus medicamentum biberet, quod medicus dare constitueret.

[§ 545.] 7. The subjunctive is used in clauses which are introduced into others, after relative pronouns and conjunctions, when those propositions express the thoughts or words of another person. (In many cases they are the thoughts or words of the speaker himself, but he then speaks of himself as of a third person.) To make this general rule more clear, we shall explain the various cases in which such clauses are inserted.

a) Clauses inserted in the construction of the accusative with the infinitive, when they are to express the thoughts or words of the person spoken of, or when they form an

essential part of the statement implied in the accusat. with the infinitive.

Socrates dicere solebat, omnes in eo, quod scirent, satis esse eloquentes.

Mos est Athenis laudari in contione eos, qui sint in proeliis interfecti.

Quid potest esse tam apertum, tamque perspicuum, quum coelum suspeximus, coelestiaque contemplati sumus, quam esse aliquod numen praestantissimae mentis, quo haec regantur.

[§ 547.] *b)* Clauses introduced into a proposition which is expressed by the subjunctive, are likewise in the subjunctive, when they are to be considered as an essential part of the leading proposition, being included in the purpose, request, precept or command of a person, or (with *si*) in the supposed circumstances, e. g. *Rex imperavit, ut, quae bello opus essent, pararentur.*

Eo simus animo, ut nihil in malis ducamus, quod sit vel a deo immortali, vel a natura constitutum.

Memoria erat tanta (Hortensius) quantam in nullo cognovisse me arbitror, ut, quae secum commentatus esset, ea sine scripto verbis eisdem redderet, quibus cogitavisset.

[§ 549.] *c)* Lastly, when a proposition containing the statement of a fact, and therefore expressed by the indicative, has another dependent upon it or added to it (by a conjunction or a relative pronoun), the dependent clause is expressed by the subjunctive, provided the substance of it is alleged as the sentiment or the words of the person spoken of, and not of the speaker himself. Thus the proposition: *Noctu ambulabat in publico Themistocles, quod somnum capere non posset* suggests, that Themistocles himself gave this reason for his walking at night. But I, the writer of the proposition, may express the reason as my own remark, and in this case the indicative *poterat* is required, as well as *ambulabat*.

Socrates accusatus est, quod corrumperet juventutem et novas superstitiones induceret.

Aristides nonne ob eam causam expulsus est patria, quod praeter modum justus esset?

Note 1. The clause beginning with *quod* in the second of these examples contains the reasons alleged by the accusers of Socrates; and the

subjunctive in the last example indicates that the reason there stated was alleged by the Athenians themselves, according to the well-known story, and it remains uncertain whether Aristides was really so just; but this uncertainty would not exist if the indicative had been used.

[§ 550.] *Note 2.* When a clause thus appended or inserted contains the sentiment of the subject of the leading sentence, or his own words, all references to him are expressed by the reflective pronoun *sui, sibi, se*, and by the possessive *suus*; e. g. *necessitate coactus domino navis qui sit aperit, multa pollicens, si se conservasset; frater in somnis me rogavit ut, quoniam sibi vivo non subvenissem, mortem suam ne inultam esse paterer.*

[§ 552.] 8. All sentences which contain an *indirect question*, that is, which state the subject of a direct question in a manner which makes them dependent upon some other verb, have the verb in the subjunctive mood. An indirect question, not to mention the verb "to ask" itself, generally depends upon verbs and expressions which usually require the accusative with the infinitive.

All the words which are used in direct questions are also used in introducing indirect or dependent questions, viz. *quis, quid; qui, quae, quod; quot, qualis, quantus, quam, ubi, unde, quare, cur, uter, quo* (whither?), *quomodo, utrum, an, ne* (the suffix), *num*.

Saepe ne utile quidem est scire, quid futurum sit.

Qualis sit animus, ipse animus nescit.

Incertum est, quo te loco mors expectet.

Tarquinius Superbus Prisci Tarquinii regis filius neposne fuerit, parum liquet.

[§ 554.] *Note.* With regard to disjunctive or double questions, both direct and indirect, expressed by "whether — or," it must be observed that the English "or" is never translated by *aut* or *vel*, but by *an* or by the suffix *ne*. The first question is introduced by *utrum*, or likewise by *ne*, or has no interrogative particle at all. Hence there are four forms of such double questions:—

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. <i>utrum</i> (<i>utrumne</i>) | — <i>an</i> |
| 2. — | — <i>an</i> (<i>anne</i>) |
| 3. the suffix <i>ne</i> | — <i>an</i> |
| 4. — | — the suffix <i>ne</i> . |

The English "or not" in the second part, which is used without a verb, unless the one preceding be understood, is expressed in Latin by *annon* or *necne*, the latter occurring only in indirect questions.

[§ 555.] 9. Relative pronouns and relative adverbs require the subjunctive (besides the cases already mentioned in § 549.) when the connection of the propositions is based upon a conception, that is, when the clause introduced by

the relative does not merely contain some additional feature, but is connected with the preceding clause in such a manner as to express either a consequence, an inherent quality, or a cause, a motive and purpose.

E. g. *Miles, quem metus mortis non perturbaret*, a soldier whom fear of death could not disturb. Here the clause introduced by the relative pronoun contains an inherent quality of the *miles*, which may at the same time be expressed as a consequence: — of such a character, that death could not frighten him. Let us take another case: *O miserum senem, qui mortem contemnendam esse in tam longa ætate non viderit*: here the clause *qui* — *viderit* does not contain a mere additional characteristic or quality, but rather the cause, why I call the old man wretched.

Subjunctives of this kind are expressed in English in different ways, as “a soldier not to be disturbed by fear of death,” “O wretched old man, not to have learnt,” &c. The particular cases in which a relative introduces clauses with the subjunctive, are:—

[§ 556.] a) When one of the demonstratives *is, hic, ille, talis, tantus, ejusmodi, hujusmodi*, or *tam* with an adjective precedes, and is modified or qualified by a sentence which follows. Here the relative pronoun may be resolved by *ut*, so that *cujus* is equivalent to *ut mei, tui, sui, illius, ejus*; *cui* to *ut mihi, tibi, ei, sibi*, and so on through all the cases of the singular and plural.

Qui potest temperantiam laudare is, qui summum bonum in voluptate ponat!

Non sumus ii, quibus nihil verum esse videatur, sed ii, qui omnibus veris falsa quaedam adjuncta esse dicamus.

Nulla gens tam fera, nemo omnium tam immanis est, cujus mentem non imbuerit deorum opinio.

[§ 558.] The relative pronoun is sometimes used with the subjunctive, without a demonstrative preceding it, provided it be understood.

Nunc dicis, quod ad rem pertineat.

Nonne satius est mutum esse, quam quod nemo intelligat dicere?

[§ 560.] In like manner the subjunctive is used with comparatives after *quam qui* (through all its cases), for here too the degree is defined and modified by a clause implying an innate quality and a consequence, so that *quam qui* is equivalent to *quam ut*, which in fact sometimes occurs.

Major sum quam cui possit fortuna nocere, says Niobe in her madness.

[§ 561.] *b*) After indefinite and general expressions (both affirmative and negative) the relative with the subjunctive introduces the clause containing the circumstances which characterize the class indefinitely referred to. Such expressions are *est, sunt, reperiuntur, inveniuntur, existunt, exoriuntur* (scil. *homines*); the general negatives *nemo, nullus, nihil est*; the negative indefinite questions *quis est? quid est? qui, quae, quod* (as interrogative adjectives), *quotus, quisque, quantum est?* &c. In all these cases a demonstrative may be understood before the relative.

Sunt qui censeant, una animum et corpus occidere, animumque in corpore extinguere.

Nihil est, quod tam miseros faciat, quam impietas et scelus. Quotus enim quisque est, cui sapientia omnibus omnium divitiis praeponenda videatur?

Quae latebra est, in quam non intret metus mortis?

Quid dulcius quam habere, quicum omnia audeas sic loqui ut tecum?

[§ 564.] *c*) When the clause introduced by the relative contains the reason of what precedes, the verb is put in the subjunctive. The connection between such sentences may also be expressed by "because" or "since," instead of the relative :—

O fortunate adolescens, qui tuae virtutis Homerum praeconem inveneris!

Caninius fuit mirifica vigilantia, qui suo toto consulatu somnum non viderit.

Quem ardorem studii censetis fuisse in Archimede, qui, dum in pulvere quaedam describit attentius, ne patriam quidem captam esse senserit!

[§ 567.] *d*) When the clause introduced by the relative expresses the intention and object of the action of the preceding clause, the relative is followed by the subjunctive. The relative in this case is equivalent to *ut*.

Sunt autem multi, qui eripiunt aliis, quod aliis largiantur.

Populus Romanus sibi tribunos creavit, per quos contra senatum et consules tutus esse posset.

Super tabernaculum regis, unde ab omnibus conspici posset, imago solis crystallo inclusa fulgebat.

[§ 568.] *e*) After the adjectives *dignus*, *indignus*, *aptus* and *idoneus*, the relatives are used with the subjunctive, as *dignus est*, *indignus est*, *qui laudetur*.

Voluptas non est digna, ad quam sapiens respiciat.

[§ 569.] *f*) Lastly we must here notice the circumstance that in a narrative the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive are sometimes used after relative pronouns and adverbs, when actions of repeated occurrence are spoken of. The indicative however occurs in these cases, even more frequently than the subjunctive.

Nemo Pyrrhum, qua tulisset impetum, sustinere valuit.

[§ 571.] 10. It has already been remarked that all conjunctions, and more especially those which indicate a cause, require the subjunctive, when they introduce sentences containing the thoughts or words of another person. It therefore now remains to speak of those conjunctions which require the subjunctive on account of their peculiar signification.

The particles expressing a wish, *utinam*, *ut*, and *O si*, govern the subjunctive, because the wish exists only as a conception of the mind; but there is this difference in regard to the tenses, that the present and perfect are used of wishes which are conceived as possible, and the imperfect and pluperfect of those which are to be described as not in accordance with reality. The English, "Oh, would that not" should properly be expressed in Latin only by *utinam ne*, but *utinam non* is frequently used instead of it.

[§ 572.] *Quasi* (*aeque*, *perinde*, *non secus*), *ac si*, *tamquam si*, *velut si*, or *tamquam* and *velut* alone, all of which signify "as if," "as though," always introduce a clause which contains only a conception of the mind, and are consequently used with the subjunctive. The tense depends upon that of the leading verb: *Sic cogitandum est, tamquam aliquis in pectus intimum inspicere possit.*

Dummodo (if only, if but), for which *dum* or *modo* is also used alone, governs the subjunctive because it expresses an intention or a purpose conceived by the mind; when joined with a negative, it becomes *dummodo ne*, *dum ne*, *modo ne*; e. g. *multi omnia recta et honesta negligunt, dummodo potentiam consequantur.*

[§ 573.] *Ut*, in the sense of "even if," or "although," expresses a supposition merely as a conception, and ac-

condingly governs the subjunctive. It takes the negative *non*; the same however may be expressed by *ne* with the concessive subjunctive. So also *nedum* or *nedum ut*, not to mention that.

Ut desint vires, tamen est laudanda voluntas.

Optimis temporibus clarissimi atque amplissimi viri vim tribuniciam sustinere non potuerunt: nedum his temporibus sine iudiciorum remediis salvi esse possimus.

[§ 574.] *Quamvis*, as distinct from *quamquam*, is often used in the sense of *quantumvis* and *quamlibet*, i. e. "however much," with the subjunctive. *Licet* (although), properly a verb which has become a conjunction, has the same meaning and construction as *quamvis*.

Licet strenuum metum putes esse, velocior tamen spes est.

[§ 575.] The particles of time *dum*, *donec* and *quoad* have the indicative, when they are used in the sense of *quamdiu* or "as long as;" in the sense of "until," they may have either mood; the indicative, if a thing is expressed as a fact, and the subjunctive, if it is merely conceived as a thing which may possibly be realised, or if at the same time a purpose is implied in the clause,

Lacedaemoniorum gens fortis fuit, dum Lycurgi legesangebant.

Iratis aut subtrahendi sunt ii, in quos impetum conantur facere, dum se ipsi colligant, aut rogandi orandique sunt, ut, si quam habent ulciscendi vim, differant in tempus aliud, dum defervescat ira.

[§ 576.] *Antequam* and *priusquam* in narratives are generally used with the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive, if there is some connection between the preceding and the subsequent action (but if the simple priority of one action to another is expressed, the indicative is used); e. g. *discede antequam rex veniat; discessit antequam rex veniret.*

[§ 577.] 11. With regard to *quum*, there is this difference, that *quum causale* governs the subjunctive, and *quum temporale* by itself requires the indicative, for *quum* is properly a relative adverb of time, corresponding to the demonstrative adverb *tum*, as in *tum—quum*, then—when. If therefore nothing further is to be expressed, it is joined with the indicative. But when *quum* expresses the relation of cause

and effect, it governs the subjunctive, e.g. *quum sciam, quum scirem, quum intellexerim, quum intellexissem*, i. e. as I know, as I knew, as I have learnt, as I had learnt—I will do this or that. When it has the meaning of “though” or “although,” it is likewise joined only with the subjunctive, e.g. *Phocion fuit perpetuo pauper, quum ditissimus esse posset*.

[§ 578.] In a narrative however *quum temporale* is joined with the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive, because in a continuous narrative, a preceding event is always conceived and represented as the cause of a subsequent one; e.g. *Caesar, quum Pompejum apud Pharsalum vicisset, in Asiam trajecit*: here we perceive a combination of time and cause, which is expressed by the subjunctive. This is always the case in historical narratives, although if we consider only the relation of time or priority, we might believe the indicative also to be correct. Examples are extremely numerous. See § 505.

[§ 579.] But when *quum* is a pure particle of time, that is, when it does not occur in a narrative, and when no relation of cause and effect is to be expressed, it may be joined with all the tenses of the indicative, even with the imperfect and pluperfect, in the sense of *eo tempore quum*, or *tum quum*, which expressions, in fact, often occur.

Qui non defendit injuriam, neque propulsat a suis, quum potest, injuste facit.

Sed da operam, ut valeas, et, si valebis, quum recte navigari poterit, tum naviges.

Verres confecto itinere, quum ad aliquod oppidum venerat (an action often repeated), *eadem lectica usque in cubiculum deferebatur.*

[§ 580.] 12. The following must be observed as peculiarities in the use of *quum temporale*: 1. *Quum* is joined with the perfect or imperfect indicative to express simultaneous occurrences which are indicated in English by “while.” This simultaneousness is marked more emphatically by adding *interea* or *interim*. The perfect in this case is used in historical narratives, and the imperfect in descriptions. 2. *Quum* is joined with all tenses of the indicative, and more especially with the present to express the decided beginning of an action, in which case it does not introduce a protasis, but rather an apodosis. It is commonly

preceded by adverbs, as *jam*, *nondum*, *vix*, *aegre*, or *quum* itself is joined with *repente* or *subito*.

Catulus, quum ex vobis quaereret, si in uno Cn. Pompejo omnia poneretis, si quid eo factum esset, in quo spem essetis habituri: cepit magnum suae virtutis fructum ac dignitatis, quum omnes prope una voce, in eo ipso vos spem habituros esse, dixistis.

Caedebatur virgis in medio foro Messanae civis Romanus, judices, quum interea nullus gemitus, nulla vox alia istius miseri inter dolorem crepitumque plagarum audiebatur, nisi haec: civis Romanus sum.

Evolarat jam e conspectu fere fugiens quadriremis, quum etiamtum ceterae naves uno in loco moliebantur.

Jam in conspectu, sed extra teli jactum utraque acies erat, quum priores Persae inconditum et trucem sustulere clamorem.

Jamque, qui Dareium vehebant equi, confossi hastis et dolore efferati, jugum quater et regem curru excutere coeperant, quum ille, veritus ne vivus veniret in hostium potestatem, desilit, et in equum, qui ad hoc sequebatur, imponitur.

CHAP. LXXIX.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

[§ 583.] 1. THE imperative, both in the active and passive, has two forms—the imperative present and the imperative future. (See § 151.) Both express a command, but also a wish, an advice or exhortation. The difference in the meaning of the two imperatives is this:—

The imperative present expresses that something is to be done directly or at once; as *lege*, read! *morere*, die! or that a thing which exists at present is to continue to exist, as *vive felix*.

The imperative future puts the command in connection with some other action, and expresses that something is to be done in future, when, or as soon as, something else has taken place. It is however not necessary that the other action should be expressed in words, but in many cases it is supplied by the mind.

Quum valetudini tuae consulueris, tum consulito navigationi: Prius audite paucis; quod cum dixerō, si placuerit, facitote. Cras petito: dabitur; nunc abi.

[§ 584.] 2. Hence the imperative future is properly used in *contracts, laws, and wills*, inasmuch as it is stipulated in them that things are to be done after a certain time; further, in precepts and rules of conduct, that is, to express actions which are to be repeated as often as the occasion may occur.

Regio imperio duo sunt, iique consules appellantur, militiae summum jus habent, nemini parento, illis salus populi suprema lex esto.

Ignoscito saepe alteri, nunquam tibi.

[§ 585.] 3. With the imperative the English "not" must be rendered by *ne* and "nor" by *neve*, but not by *non* or *neque*.

Hominem mortuum (inquit lex in duodecim tabulis) in urbe ne sepelito neve urito.

[§ 586.] 4. The following forms are used instead of both tenses of the imperative:—

a) *The future*, which however takes the negative *non*, if anything is forbidden; e. g. *facies*, or *non facies hoc*.

b) The third person of the present subjunctive, both in an affirmative and negative (*ne*) command, is even more frequently used than the imperative.

c) The second person of the perfect subjunctive, usually with a negative (*ne*), as *ne dixeris*, *nemini dixeris*.

5. The affirmative imperative is paraphrased by *cura* (or *curato*) *ut*, *fac ut*, or *fac* alone with the subjunctive; e. g. *cura ut quam primum venias*, *facite ut recordemini*, *fac animo forti magnoque sis*. The negative imperative is paraphrased by *fac ne*, *cave ne*, or commonly by *cave* alone (without *ne*), with the present or perfect subjunctive: *cave putes*, *cave dixeris*; but especially by *noli* with the infinitive: *noli putare*, *nolite (nolitote) existimare*.

Quod dubitas, ne feceris.

Magnum fac animum habeas et spem bonam.

CHAP. LXXX.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

[§ 588.] 1. THE infinitive expresses the action or condition implied in the verb in the form of an abstract generality, without specifying either person, number, or time ; it merely indicates the relations of an action, that is, whether it is in progress or completed. *Scribere*, to write, expresses the action as in progress ; *scripsisse*, to have written, as completed. To what time the action thus described belongs, is determined by the verb on which the infinitive depends.

Note. The one of these infinitives is usually called the present and the other the perfect infinitive. The former name is incorrect, for it is not the present time that is expressed by *scribere*, since, besides *volo scribere*, we may say, (*heri*) *volebam scribere*, *volueram scribere*, and (*cras*) *volam scribere* ; but the action is described only as in progress. The infinitives should therefore rather be called *infinitivus rei infectae* and *infinitivus rei perfectae*. If, however, we compare the two infinitives with the tenses of the verb, we are naturally struck by the resemblance between *scribere* and *scribo*, and between *scripsisse* and *scripsi* ; although, with regard to the relation of the action, the imperfect *scribebam*, and the pluperfect *scripseram* have the same claim as *scribo* and *scripsi*. Hence the first infinitive is also called *infinitivus praesentis et imperfecti*, and the other *infinitivus perfecti et plusquamperfecti* ; but neither of these designations comprises the whole of their signification.

[§ 591.] 2. In the passive voice there are also two infinitives, the one to express the progress of a state of suffering, and the other the completed state of suffering. The one is called the infinitive present, and the other the infinitive perfect ; the former is simple, *laudari*, to be praised ; the second is formed by a combination of the participle perfect with the verb *esse*, as *laudatus esse*, or in the accusative *laudatum esse*, to have been praised ; the participle of course takes the number and gender of the object to which it refers.

[§ 593.] 3. Besides these infinitives expressing an action or a state in progress and completed, there is, both in the active and passive, an infinitive of future time (*infinitivus futuri*), which denotes an action or condition as continued. It is formed in the active by a combination of the participle future active with *esse*, as *laudaturum esse* ; and in the passive by a combination of the supine in *um* with *iri*, as *lau-*

datum iri. The former, owing to its participle, may take different genders and numbers, the latter admits of no such change; e. g. *Reus videbatur damnatum iri*; *homines arbitrantur se beneficos visum iri.*

Note. The future participle in *urus* properly expresses an intention or desire; and in this sense it takes the infinitives *esse* and *fuisse*, as *laudaturum esse*, to intend praising; *laudaturum fuisse*, to have intended praising; *scio te scripturum fuisse*, I know that you have had the intention to write. The infinitive of an action that had once been intended (*scripturum fuisse*) is further used, especially in the apodosis of hypothetical sentences belonging to the past, where in direct speech the pluperfect subjunctive would be used, as *etiamsi obtemperasset auspiciis, idem even-turum fuisse puto.* *Laudandum esse* cannot be used as an infinit. fut. pass., for the participles in *dus* denote necessity.

[§ 594.] 4. Besides this a circumlocution may be employed for the infinitive of future time, by means of *futurum esse* or *fore* followed by *ut* with the subjunctive. Here, too, the difference between an action continued and an action completed in future time may be expressed: the former by the present and imperfect, and the latter by the perfect and pluperfect of the subjunctive. The choice of one of these four subjunctive tenses depends upon that of the leading verb; e. g. *credo fore ut epistolam scribas*, and *credebam fore ut epistolam scriberes*, both expressing a continued action in future time; but *credo fore ut epistolam scripseris*, and *credebam fore ut epistolam scripsisses*, expressing a completed action in future time. And so also in the passive: *credo fore ut epistola scribatur*, and *credebam fore ut epistola scriberetur*, both expressing a continued state of future suffering; but in order to express a completed state in future time, we avail ourselves in the passive of the participle perfect *scriptus*, which was wanting in the active; hence *credo* and *credebam epistolam scriptam fore*. This circumlocution by means of *futurum esse* or *fore ut* is necessary when the verb has no supine or participle future active, which is the case with many intransitives. Hence we cannot say otherwise, for example, than *spero futurum esse (fore) ut sapias, ut te hujus rei poeniteat, ut brevi omnibus his incommodis medeare*. But it is also used in many other cases, and in the passive this form occurs almost more frequently than the infinitive formed by the supine with *iri*.

Video te velle in coelum migrare, et spero fore ut contingat id nobis.

Non eram nescius, fore ut hic noster labor in varias reprehensiones incurreret.

Ptolemaeus mathematicus Othoni persuaserat, fore ut in imperium ascisceretur.

[§ 597.] 5. The infinitive may be regarded as a verbal substantive of the neuter gender, with two cases—the nominative and accusative; differing from other substantives of the same kind in this respect that it governs the case which it requires as a real verb, and at the same time expresses the complete or incomplete state of an action. The infinitive must be considered as the nominative, when it is the subject of a sentence, that is, when anything is declared of it; e. g. *invidere non cadit in sapientem*, where *invidere* is equivalent to *invidia*; *virtus est vitium fugere*, i. e. *fuga vitii*; *est ars difficilis recte rempublicam regere*, i. e. *recta gubernatio rei-publicae*; *ignoscere amico humanum est*. The infinitive must be considered as the accusative, when it is the object of a transitive verb, such as *volo*, *cupio*, *audeo*, *conor facere* or *dicere aliquid*, just as we say *cupio aliquam rem*, *nescio mentiri*, *didici vera dicere*.

Majus dedecus est parta amittere quam omnino non paravisse.

Didicisse fideliter artes emollit mores, nec sinit esse ferus.

Vincere scis, Hannibal, victoriā uti nescis.

[§ 599.] 6. When the infinitive has its own subject joined to it, it is put in the accusative.

Note. An exception here presents itself in the historical infinitive (*infinitivus historicus*), to which the subject is joined in the nominative. The historical infinitive is a peculiar mode of using the present infinitive in a narrative instead of the imperfect indicative, when actions or conditions are to be described in a lively and animated manner, as *Philippus inopinantibus advenit*. *Quem quum adesse refugientes ex agris quidam pavidi nuntiassent, trepidare Damocritus ceterique duces: et erat forte meridianum tempus, quo plerique graves cibo sopiti jacebant: excitare igitur alii alios, jubere arma capere, alios dimittere ad revocandos, qui palati per agros praedabantur.*

[§ 600.] This is the construction of the accusative with the infinitive, which like the infinitive alone is used in two ways, either as the subject or as the object of a proposition. The accusative with the infinitive is the subject, wherever, if we would or could use a substantive in its place, it would be in the nominative. So it is especially when a substantive or

adjective is added as a predicate by means of *est, erat, fuit, &c.*, as *justum, aequum, verisimile, consentaneum, apertum est, necesse est* and *opus est*, or an impersonal verb, as *apparet, constat, convenit, decet, licet, oportet*, or the third person singular of the passive, as *intelligitur, perspicitur*, and the like; e. g. *Victorem parcere victis aequum est*, it is fair that the conqueror should spare the conquered, i. e. the clemency of the conqueror towards the conquered is fair.

Hoc quidem apparet, nos ad agendum esse natos.

Constat profecto ad salutem civium inventas esse leges.

Legem brevem esse oportet, quo facilius ab imperitis teneatur.

Note. It is therefore incorrect to say that this accusative with the infinitive is dependent on *verum, constat, &c.*; for the accusative with the infinitive is the nominative or governing case.

[§ 602.] 7. The accusative with the infinitive is the object, after verbs which have a sentence for their direct object, i. e. after those which denote an action of our external or internal faculties or a declaration (*verba sentiendi et declarandi*). The principal verbs of this kind are: *audio, video, sentio, animadverto, cognosco, intelligo, percipio, disco, scio, credo, arbitror, puto, opinor, duco, statuo, memini, recordor, obliviscor; dico, trado, prodo, scribo, refero, nuntio, confirmo, nego, ostendo, demonstro, perhibeo, promitto, polliceor, spondeo*, and several others denoting *feeling, knowing, thinking, or saying*. These and other verbs of the same kind, instead of being followed by a dependent clause with a conjunction (that, *quod*), require the infinitive, and the subject of the dependent clause is put in the accusative. (In English the two clauses are sometimes put in juxtaposition without any sign of dependence or connection, e. g. he feels that he is unhappy, or he feels he is unhappy.)

Sentit animus, se sua vi, non alienq., moveri.

Ego ne utilem quidem arbitror esse nobis futurarum rerum scientiam.

Pompejos, celebrem Campaniae urbem, desedissee terrae motu audivimus.

[§ 603.] *Note 1.* The propositions which are in direct dependence upon the above-mentioned verbs are put in the accusative with the infinitive; the clauses inserted in such a proposition are, according to circumstances, either in the indicative or the subjunctive, and in the latter more especially when they are inseparably connected with the proposition

expressed by the accus. with the infinitive, containing either the words or sentiments of the person spoken of. (See § 545.)

[§ 604.] The following remarks must be especially observed: 1.) The personal pronouns which are expressed in the other moods only in case of their having the emphasis, are always expressed with the infinitive. 2.) The reflective pronoun *se*, as well as the possessive *sui*, is employed when reference is made in the dependent clause to the subject of the leading one; and in explanatory clauses, when any thing is stated as the sentiment of the subject. (§ 550.) We say, e. g. *Caesar se non sui commodi causa arma cepisse dicebat*, but an explanatory clause cannot always take these pronouns, as *Caesar, quum eum nonnulli injustitiae accusarent*, or *Caesar, quod ejus causa a plerisque damnabatur, se non sui commodi causa arma cepisse dicebat*; but when the explanatory clause contains the sentiment of the subject, we use *se* and *sui*, e. g. *Caesar, quod suum jus a senatu laesum esset, or postquam nihil sibi ac suis postulatis tributum esset, se non sua sed ipsius rei publicae causa arma cepisse dicebat*.

[§ 605.] This rule that the personal pronouns must be expressed (in the accus.) with the infinitive must be particularly attended to with regard to the verbs "to promise" and "to hope," since in English they are usually joined with the infinit. present without any pronoun. In Latin the pronouns are not only expressed, but the infinitive which follows is that of the future, e. g. *promisit se venturum, daturum esse, spero hoc me assecuturum* (with the omission of *esse*, as is very frequently the case with this infinitive and that of the perfect passive).

[§ 606.] Note 2. When the use of an infinitive active would bring two accusatives together, one of the subject and the other of the object, and an ambiguity would be likely to arise, it is the rule to prefer the passive construction, by which the accusat. of the object becomes the subject, and the other is avoided or explained by the preposition *ab* or *per*: *Ne fando quidem auditum est, crocodilum aut ibim aut felem violatum esse ab Aegyptio*. If we were to say *crocodilum violasse Aegyptium*, there would certainly be a great ambiguity.

[§ 607.] 8. The accusative of the subject in the construction of the accusative with the infinitive after the verbs denoting *saying, showing, and believing* (*dicere, tradere, narrare, nuntiare, prodere, ostendere, credere, existimare*, and some others of the same meaning), is regarded also as an accusative of the object, governed by those verbs, and hence the passive construction also is admissible, by which the accusative becomes the nominative. This is the case especially when the subject of those verbs is indefinite, as *dicunt* (they or people say) *me virum probum esse*, or *dicor vir probus esse*, and so through all persons and tenses: *diceris, dicitur vir probus esse; dicimur, dicimini, dicuntur viri probi esse* or *fecisse*. The same is frequently the case with the verbs *jubere, vetare* and *prohibere*, so that the passive of these verbs are used personally, as *vetamur, prohibemur hoc facere, abire jussus sum, consules jubentur exercitum scribere*.

Further, instead of the impersonal *videtur* (it appears) with the accusat. with the infinit., it is more common to say personally *videor, videris, videtur, videmur, videmini, videntur* with the infinitive, as *videor errasse*, it appears that I have erred; *videor deceptus esse*, it appears that I have been deceived.

Xanthippe, Socratis philosophi uxor, morosa admodum fuisse fertur et jurgiosa.

Regnante Tarquinio Superbo Sybarim et Crotonem Pythagoras venisse reperitur.

Athenis actor movere affectus vetabatur.

[§ 608.] 9. The subject cannot be expressed with the infinitive, when it is an indefinite person, for the Romans had no word to express the English "one" (French *on*), and hence we say *ignoscere amico humanum est*, to forgive a friend is humane, or it is humane that one (or we) should forgive a friend.

But even in this case the verb *esse* and those denoting "to appear," "to be considered" or "called" require the predicate, if it be declinable, to agree with the non-expressed subject in the accusative, e. g. *ignoscere amico humanum est, recordantem beneficiorum ab eo acceptorum*, it is humane that one should forgive a friend, remembering the benefit received of him.

Contentum suis rebus esse maximae sunt certissimaeque divitiae.

Licet operā prodesse multis, beneficia petentem, commendantem magistratibus, vigilantem pro re alterius.

Atticus maximum existimavit quaestum, memorem gratumque cognosci.

Magnis in laudibus totā fere fuit Graeciā victorem Olympiae citari.

[§ 609.] 10. The accusative with the infinitive sometimes stands apparently quite independent, but is to be explained by an ellipsis of *credibile est? verumne est?* This is the case in exclamations, and, when the interrogative particle (*ne*) is annexed, in interrogations expressive of indignation; e. g. Juno in Virgil (*Aen.* i. 37.) exclaims, *Mene incepto desistere victam, Nec posse Italiā Teucrorum avertere regem!* But it must be observed that a clause with *ut* may also be used to express a question with indignation, in which case

we have to supply *feri potest*? e. g. *victamne ut quisquam victrici patriae praeferat*? is it possible that any one should prefer?

[§ 610.] 11. The verbs, *I can, shall, hasten, adventure, am accustomed*, and others of the same kind, are followed in Latin as in English by the mere infinitive and not by a proposition. When they are joined with *esse, haberi, judicari, videri*, &c., the predicate is put in the nominative, e. g. *solet tristis videri, aude sapiens esse, debes esse diligens*.

But the verbs *volo, nolo, malo; cupio, opto, studeo*, admit of a twofold construction: the mere infinitive is used after them, when the subject remains the same, and when they are followed by *esse* or any of the above-mentioned verbs, the predicate is in the nominative; but the accusat. with the infinit. is used, when the subject is changed, or when the pronoun of the same person is repeated. On the one hand, therefore, we say *volo eruditus fieri*, and on the other *volo te eruditum fieri*, and *volo me eruditum fieri*. Hence it is indifferent whether I say *discipulum me haberi volo, non doctorem*, or *discipulus haberi volo, non doctor; principem se esse maluit quam videri*, or *princeps esse maluit quam videri*. (Comp. § 613.)

Volo is esse, quem tu me esse voluisti.

Qui eget multis, gratum se videri studeat.

[§ 613.] 12. There are many Latin verbs which, according to our notions, seem to require a proposition for their direct object, that is, the accusative with the infinitive, but which, nevertheless, are followed in Latin by *ut* with the subjunctive, either exclusively, or admit the construction of the accusat. with the infinit. besides. This arises from the circumstance that such propositions may be or more properly must be conceived as expressing a *design, purpose, effect, or result* of the leading proposition which is indicated by *ut* (or *ne*).

a) The verbs *patior* and *sino* are generally followed by the infinitive, and more rarely by *ut*; the verbs *opto, concedo, permitto*, which have a more forcible meaning, may have either the infinitive, or *ut*; *posco, postulo, flagito* and *cogo* have more frequently *ut* than the infinitive.

Phaëthon optavit ut in currum patris tolleretur (instead of *tolli* or *se tolli*).

Illud natura non patitur, ut aliorum spoliis nostras facultates, copias, opes augeamus.

Augustus dominum se appellari ne a liberis quidem aut nepotibus suis passus est.

[§ 614.] *b)* The verbs of *resolving* and *endeavouring* to do or prevent a thing are followed by *ut* and *ne*, when the dependent clause has a subject of its own, but when the same subject remains they are generally followed by the infinitive (i. e. the nominat. with the infinit.), though *ut* is found in this case also. Verbs of this kind are: *statuo, constituo, decerno, tento, paro, meditor, curo, nitor, contendo*, and the phrases *consilium capio, in animum induco, or animum induco*. Hence, we may say *constitui domi manere*, as well as *constitui ut domi manerem*; but we can say only *constitui ut filius meus tecum habitaret*. *Ut* is used almost exclusively after the expressions *operam do*, I exert myself; *id (hoc, illud) ago*, I endeavour or exert myself; *nihil antiquius habeo* or *duco, quam*, nothing is of more importance to me; and *videre* in the sense of *curare*.

Qui sapientes appellari volunt, inducant animum divitias, honores, opes contemnere, eaque, quae his contraria sunt, pro nihilo ducere.

Debes explicare omnia vitia filii, quibus incensus parens potuerit animum inducere, ut naturam ipsam vinceret, ut amorem illum penitus insitum ejiceret ex animo, ut denique patrem esse sese oblivisceretur.

Omne animal se ipsum diligit, ac simul ut ortum est id agit, ut se conservet.

Videndum est igitur, ut ea liberalitate utamur, quae prosit amicis, noceat nemini.

[§ 615.] *c)* The verbs *rogo, oro, praecor, peto, moneo, admoneo, commoneo, hortor, adhortor, cohortor, exhortor, suadeo, persuadeo, impello, perpello, excito, incito, impero*, and some others, are followed by *ut* or *ne* in both cases, when the subject remains the same, and when it is changed, and by the infinitive only by way of exception. The complete accusat. with the infinit. occurs with some of them only when their meaning is different, as with *moneo* and *admoneo* in the sense of "I remind" a person that a thing *is*, not *is to be*; with *persuadeo* in the sense of "I convince." But, on the other hand, even such verbs as *nuntio, dico, scribo*, are

followed by *ut*, when the meaning is “I announce, say, or write with the intention that,” &c.

Illud te oro et hortor, ut in extrema parte muneris tui diligentissimus sis.

Moneo obtestorque, ut hos, qui tibi genere propinqui sunt, caros habeas, neu malis alienos adjungere, quam sanguine conjunctos retinere.

Themistocles persuasit populo, ut pecuniā publicā, quae ex metallis rediret, classis centum navium aedificaretur.

Tibi persuade, praeter culpam et peccatum homini accidere nihil posse, quod sit horribile aut pertimescendum.

[§ 617.] *Note.* The verbs of commanding, as *imperare, mandare, praescribere, edicere* (to issue a command), *legem dare, decernere*, are followed by *ut* according to the above rule. *Jubere* and *vetare* alone form an exception, being construed with the accusat. with the infinit., but attention must be paid as to whether the infinit. active or passive is to be used; e. g. *militem occidi jussit*, he ordered the soldier to be put to death; *eum abire jussit*, he ordered him to depart; *vetuit castra vallo muniri*, and *vetuit legatos ab opere discedere*.

[§ 618.] *d)* The verbs of *effecting*, viz. *facio, efficio, perficio, impetro*, and *consequor*, are never construed with the infinitive or the accusative with the infinitive, but with *ut* or *ne*; since the relation of dependence upon these verbs is regarded in Latin as that of an intended result. Hence arises a frequent circumlocution by means of *facere ut* to express a real fact, and instead of *dimisit milites*, we accordingly find *fecit ut dimitteret milites*.

Epaminondas perfecit, ut auxilio sociorum Lacedaemonii privarentur.

[§ 620.] 13. Hence it not unfrequently happens in narratives, that the verbs of *begging, commanding, admonishing, &c.* are first followed by *ut* or *ne* and the subjunctive, and afterwards by the accusative with the infinitive, only the words or sentiments of the subject of the narrative being recorded. For the purpose of explanation, we supply from the preceding verb the general idea of *thinking* or *saying*, which is implied in the leading verb; e. g. *Caesar exercitui imperavit, ne in jussu suo concurreret: se, quum id fieri vellet, vexillum signum daturum.*

His (colonis Athen.) consulentibus nominatim Pythia praecepit, ut Miltiadem sibi imperatorem sumerent: id ei fecissent, incepta prospera futura.

[§ 621.] 14. Lastly, *ut* is used, and not the accusative with the infinitive (which would here be the accusative of the subject):—

a) After the expressions denoting “it happens:” *fit* (*feri non potest*), *accidit*, *incidit*, *contingit* (chiefly of desirable things), *evenit*, *usu venit*, *occurrit* and *est* (it is the case or happens, and hence also after *esto*, be it that).

b) After the words denoting “it remains,” or “it follows:” *futurum*, *extremum*, *prope*, *proximum*, and *reliquum est*, *relinquitur*, *sequitur*, *restat*, and *superest*; sometimes also *accidit ut* (“to this must be added that,” where, however, *quod* is more common).

Fieri autem potest, ut recte quis sentiat, et id, quod sentit, polite eloqui non possit.

Persaepe evenit, ut utilitas cum honestate certet.

Amicis quoniam satisfeci, reliquum est, ut egomet mihi consulam.

[§ 624.] 15. The verbs denoting *willingness* and *permission*, which may take *ut* instead of the accusative with the infinitive (*volo*, *nolo*, *malo*, *sino*, *permitto* and *licet*); those which denote asking, advising, reminding (especially *postulo*, *peto*, *rogo*, *oro*, *precor*, *hortor*, *suadeo*, *censeo*, *moneo*, *admo-neo*), which are generally construed only with *ut*, and some others of a similar kind, as *curo*, *decerno*, *mando*, *jubeo*, may also be followed by the subjunctive alone, without *ut*. To these we must add the two imperatives *fac* (in its periphrastic sense “take care that”) which usually takes *ut*, and *cave*, which usually takes *ne*; for they too are frequently joined with the subjunctive alone.

Malo te sapiens hostis metuat, quam stulti cives laudent.

Summa militum alacritate, jubentium quocunque vellet duceret, oratio excepta est.

Quod plerumque in atroci negotio solet, senatus decrevit, darent operam consules, ne quid respublica detrimenti caperet.

[§ 625.] *Note.* *Oportet* and *necesse est* may likewise be followed either by the accusative with the infinitive, or by the subjunctive alone; e.g. *leges oportet breves sint*; *virtus necesse est vitium aspernetur atque oderit*. *Opus est* generally takes the infinitive; *ut* occurs very rarely.

[§ 626.] 16. The infinitive and the accusative with the infinitive, according to § 597., serve to represent a proposi-

tion as a single thought, so that it resembles an abstract noun.

Quod with a tense of the indicative or subjunctive, on the other hand, represents a proposition simply as a fact. This is obviously the case, e. g. when in replying to a person, we take up and repeat a previous remark of his. It is frequently indifferent whether we express a proposition by the accusative with the infinitive, or by *quod*, as, for example, in those cases where the predicate "it is agreeable" or "disagreeable," "it is pleasant" or "unpleasant," follows the proposition. But the infinitive is always more properly made the subject, when the predicate expresses an abstract idea; but when it implies a fact, the proposition is more properly introduced by *quod*, to which is frequently joined a demonstrative pronoun *hoc*, *id*, *illud*, in order to mark its character as a fact still more emphatically.

Inter causas malorum nostrorum est, quod vivimus ad exempla.

Supra belli Latini metum id quoque accesserat, quod triginta jam conjurasse populos satis constabat.

Ex tota laude Reguli illud est admiratione dignum, quod captivos Poenorum retinendos censuit.

[§ 627.] *Note.* The use of *quod* in repeating a previous expression or proposition of a person for the purpose of answering it occurs most frequently in letters: and *quod* in this case may be rendered in English by "with regard to," or "as regards;" e. g. *Quod scribis te velle scire, qui sit rei publicae status: summa dissensio est. Quod mihi de filia gratularis: agnosco humanitatem tuam.*

[§ 628.] 17. A purely objective proposition is expressed by *quod* only when it depends upon the very general transitive verbs *addere* (mostly in the imperative *adde huc*) and *facere* joined with an adverb, as *bene facis quod me mones*.

Hippocrates, clarus arte medicinae, videtur honestissime fecisse, quod quosdam errores suos, ne posterii errarent, confessus est.

[§ 629.] But after the verbs denoting a feeling of pain or joy, and the outward expression of these feelings, viz. *gaudeo*, *delector*, *angor*, *doleo*, *graviter fero*, *succenseo*, *poenitet*, *miror*, *admiror*, *glorior*, *gratulor*, *gratias ago*, *queror*, *indignor*, and others of a similar meaning, we may either use *quod* in the sense of "because," or "of" or "at the fact that," or the accusative with the infinitive. Whether *quod* is to be joined with the indicative or

subjunctive, must be determined by the general rules concerning these moods: the indicative expresses a fact, and the subjunctive a conception.

Meum factum probari abs te triumpho gaudio.

Quod spiratis, quod vocem mittitis, quod formas hominum habetis, indignantur.

Vetus illud Catonis admodum scitum est, qui mirari se ajebat, quod non rideret haruspex, haruspicem cum vidisset.

[§ 630.] 18. *Quod* is used exclusively in explanatory or periphrastic propositions, which refer to a preceding demonstrative pronoun (*hoc, id, illud, istud*), unless this pronoun be added in the nominative or accusative, as a pleonasm to verbs governing the accusative with the infinitive. Hence this rule finds its certain application only when the demonstrative pronoun is in some other case, or dependent upon a preposition.

Mihi quidem videntur homines hac re maxime beluis praestare, quod loqui possunt.

Socrates apud Platonem hōc Periclem ceteris praestitisse oratoribus dicit, quod is Anaxagorae fuerit auditor.

CHAP. LXXXI.

USE OF THE PARTICIPLES.

[§ 631.] 1. THE Participle expresses the action or condition of the verb in the form of an adjective, governing the case of the verb, and at the same time marking the complete or incomplete state of the action or condition. In Latin, as in English, this form of the verb is very defective, for it has, in the active, one participle to express an action still going on, as *scribens*, writing; and, in the passive, one to express the completed state of suffering, as *scriptus*, written; consequently, there is no participle of a completed action (for which we say *having written*), nor of a state of suffering still going on. The Latin deponent is the only kind of verb which has the participles complete, its passive form having an

active meaning: *imitans*, imitating, and *imitatus*, one who has imitated.

To these, however, we must add two participles, one in the active and the other in the passive, which express the action or suffering as not yet begun, that is, as something which is to take place in future, whence they are called participles of the future. The participle future active properly expresses the intention to perform an action, as *scripturus*, one who intends or has to write, but has also the signification of simple futurity, "one who is about to write." The participle future passive expresses in the nominative the necessity that something should be done or suffered, as *epistola scribenda*, a letter which must be written, and not one that will be written. In the other cases it serves to supply the very sensible want of a participle present passive, expressing a state of suffering going on. But of this hereafter, § 652. foll.

[§ 632.] *Note.* The want of the participle of a completed action in the active is often felt very sensibly, for neither circumlocution nor the change into the passive form (e. g. *victoriā partā*, after he had gained the victory) always conveys exactly what is meant. But the perfect participles of deponents are a very convenient means of supplying this want, as their number is not small, and it is always easy to find some deponent which is synonymous with an active; in the case just mentioned we may say *victoriam adeptus, assecutus, or consecutus*.

On the other hand, the Latin writers use many perfect participles of deponents in a passive sense, along with the proper active one; as *juratus, pransus, coenatus*; and *arsus, gavisus, solitus, fisus, confisus*, which are derived from semi-deponents, (§ 148.).

[§ 635.] 2. Participles are employed in Latin more frequently than in English, not only to express the verb in explanatory clauses, which are connected by a relative pronoun with a noun of the leading sentence; but clauses which are introduced by means of particles of time (e. g. *as, when, although, since*), may be expressed by participles, provided their subject occurs in the leading sentence.

Est enim lex nihil aliud, nisi recta et a numine deorum tracta ratio, imperans honesta, prohibens contraria.

Curio, ad focum sedenti, magnum auri pondus Samnites quum attulissent, repudiati ab eo sunt.

Dionysius tyrannus, Syracusis expulsus, Corinthi pueros docebat.

Dionysius, cultros metuens tonsorios, candenti carbone sibi adurebat capillum.

Risus interdum ita repente erumpit, ut eum cupientes tenere nequeamus.

[§ 637.] 3. Substantives expressing the action of the verb; e. g. the building, instituting, writing, hearing, are expressed by the participles perfect and future passive, the Latin language not always having substantives of this kind (at least they are not in common use). There is of course this difference, that the perfect participle is employed when the action is to be represented as completed, and the future participle, when it is conceived as still incomplete. (Respecting the participle future passive, see § 649.) This is done in all the cases of such participles, and even when they are governed by the prepositions *ad*, *ante*, *ob*, *post*, *propter*, *ab*, and *ex*; e. g. *hae litterae recitatae magnum luctum fecerunt*, the reading of this letter; *Tarentum captum*, the taking of Tarentum; *receptus Hannibal*, the reception of Hannibal; *ob receptum Hannibalem*, on account of the reception of Hannibal; *sibi quisque caesi regis expetebat decus*, the glory of having killed, or of killing the king (for both expressions are here equivalent).

Scipio propter Africam domitam Africanus appellatus est. Thebae et ante Epaminondam natum et post ejus interitum perpetuo alieno paruerunt imperio. (So also *post Christum natum*, *ab urbe condita*, &c.)

[§ 639.] 4. The participle future active is used especially with verbs of motion (such as *go*, *send*, &c.) to express a purpose, which we indicate in English by the particle "to;" the conjunction *ut*, or a relative pronoun with the subjunctive, however, is very commonly used in Latin instead of the participle.

Hannibal in Etruriam ducit, eam quoque gentem aut vi aut voluntate adjuncturus.

[§ 640.] 5. In the cases hitherto considered the participle supplies the place of an inserted clause, the subject of which is a noun contained in the leading proposition. If, however, a new subject is introduced, it is put with the participle in the ablative, independent of the leading proposition. This construction is called the ablative absolute. (*Ablativus absolutus* or *consequentiae*.) A similar construction is sometimes used in English, as "he could not live in his own

country any longer, his influence being too great for the republic ;" but it is more common to express such sentences by the conjunctions "as" "when," or by a verbal substantive with a preposition, e. g. *Cyro regnante*, in the reign of Cyrus ; *Cyro mortuo* or *occiso*, after the death or fall of Cyrus, or after Cyrus had been killed.

Pythagoras quum Tarquinio Superbo regnante in Italiam venisset, magnam illam Graeciam quum honore disciplinae, tum etiam auctoritate tenuit.

L. Valerii virtute, regibus exterminatis, libertas in re publica constituta est.

[§ 642.] 6. An ablative absolute may also be used instead of the other particles "when," "since," "while," "although," which were mentioned in § 635. (Some writers even retain the conjunctions *quamquam* and *quamvis* with the ablat. absolute.)

Reluctante natura, irritus labor est.

Eclipses non ubique cernuntur, aliquando propter nubila, saepius globo terrae obstante.

Haud scio an, pietate adversus deos sublata, fides etiam et societas generis humani et una excellentissima virtus justitia tollatur.

Mucius solus in castra Porsenae venit, eumque interficere, proposita sibi morte, conatus est.

[§ 644.] 7. Instead of a participle certain substantives also may be used, which express the action of a verb, as *dux*, *comes*, *adjutor*, and *adjutrix*, *auctor*, *testis*, *judex*, *interpres*, *magister*, *praeceptor*, and *magistra*, *praeceptrix* ; e. g. *duce natura* in the sense of *ducente natura*, under the guidance of nature ; *comite fortuna*, i. e. *comitante fortuna* ; *judice Polybio*, according to the judgment of Polybius. So also official titles, as *consul*, *praetor*, *imperator*, *rex*, generally only to denote time, as *Cicerone consule*, in the consulship of Cicero.

Magis auctoribus (on the advice of the Magi) Xerxes inflammasse templa Graeciae dicitur.

Sapientia enim est una, quae maestitiam pellat ex animis, quae nos exhorrescere metu non sinat : qua praeceptrice in tranquillitate vivi potest, omni cupiditatum ardore restincto.

O quam facile erat orbis imperium occupare, aut mihi, Romanis militibus, aut, me rege, Romanis!

[§ 645.] As the Latins have no participle of *esse* in current use, an adjective alone must sometimes supply the place of a participle: e. g. *deo propitio*, when God is gracious; *sereno coelo, aspera hieme, me ignaro, illis consciis*.

Romani, Hannibale vivo, nunquam se sine insidiis futuros arbitrabantur.

Obrius fit Miloni Clodius expeditus, nullā rhedā, nullis impedimentis, nullis Graecis comitibus.

[§ 647.] 8. The simple ablative of the participle perfect passive sometimes supplies the place of the whole construction of the ablative absolute, the proposition following being considered as a noun of the neuter gender, and as the subject of the participle, e. g. *Hannibal, cognito insidias sibi parari, fuga salutem quaesivit*, equivalent to *cognitis insidiis sibi paratis*. This use however is confined to a few participles, as *audito, cognito, comperto* (in a passive sense), *explorato, desperato, nuntiato, edicto*.

Alexander, audito Dareum appropinquare cum exercitu, obriam ire constituit.

[§ 649.] 9. The participle future passive has in the nominative (and in the construction of the accusative with the infinitive, in the accusative also) the signification of *necessity*, and less frequently that of *possibility*: *laudandus*, one who must be praised, or ought to be praised. The person by whom a thing must be done is expressed with this participle by the dative, and not by the preposition *ab*.

The neuter of this participle, joined with a tense of *esse*, retains the signification of necessity, as *audendum est, moriendum est, omnibus hominibus moriendum est*, we must venture, we must die, &c. If the verb is transitive, the participle is made to agree with the subject in gender and number; e. g. *virtus laudanda est*, virtue must be praised, or we must praise virtue; *omnes captivi occidendi sunt*, all the prisoners must be put to death, or we must put to death, &c.; *haec via tibi ineunda (ingredienda) est*, you must take this road, or this road must be taken by you.

Quum suo cuique judicio sit utendum, difficile factu est, me id sentire semper, quod tu velis.

Diligentia in omnibus rebus plurimum valet: haec praecipue colenda est nobis, haec semper adhibenda.

[§ 652.] 10. In the remaining cases this participiè usually supplies the place of the participle present passive, that is, it has the meaning of a continued passive state; e. g. *occupatus sum in literis scribendis*, in letters which are being written; *peritus rei publicae regendae*. A reference to future time also may be implied, but this arises from the connection, and not from the participle itself; e. g. *consilium libertatis recuperandae*; *missus erat ad naves comparandas*. For the rest see the chapter on the Gerund.

[§ 654.] 11. This participle should properly be formed only from active transitive verbs, but it is formed also from deponents which have a transitive meaning; e. g. *in imitando hoc scriptore*, i. e. if this writer is imitated. Of intransitive verbs, however, only the neuter of this participle is used with *est*, *erat*, &c.: *quiescendum est*, *dormiendum est*, *eundum est*.

CHAP. LXXXII.

USE OF THE GERUND.

[§ 655.] 1. THE Gerund is in form nothing else than the four oblique cases of the neuter of the participle future passive. It governs the case of its verb, and with regard to its signification it supplies the place of a declinable infinitive present active, and is a verbal substantive, just as in English the present participle is used as a verbal substantive. Thus we find: *illud ediscendo scribendoque commune est*, this is common to learning by heart and writing; *amicitia dicta est ab amando*.

[§ 656.] 2. The relation of the gerund to the real participle future passive is this: as the gerund has an active meaning, e. g. *consilium scribendi*, the design of writing or to write, it may have an accusative as its object, as *consilium scribendi epistolam*, and this construction may, without any change of meaning, be changed into the passive: *consilium scribendae epistolae*, the design of a letter to be written, or that a letter should be written. The accusative is thus changed into the case in which the gerund stood. This

change into the passive may take place wherever no ambiguity is likely to arise, i. e. wherever the gender is distinguishable; hence it generally does not take place, when the accusative dependent upon the gerund is the neuter of a pronoun or adjective; e. g. *studium illud efficiendi*, *cupido plura cognoscendi*, not *illius efficiendi*, or *plurium cognoscendorum*, because it would be impossible to see whether the genitives *illius* and *plurium* are masculine or neuter. Hence it is better to say *lex appellata est a suum cuique tribuendo*, than *a suo cuique tribuendo*. But independently of this reason, the change of the active construction into the passive with the participle future is sometimes avoided, even where no ambiguity would arise.

[§ 659.] 3. The particular cases in which the gerund, and, under the limitations above mentioned, the participle future passive are used, are the following:—

a) The genitive of the gerund is used after substantives and after relative adjectives. (See § 436.) In English, substantives and relative adjectives are followed either by “of” with the participle present, or by “to” with the infinitive; e. g. *ars dicendi*, the art of speaking; *discendi cupidus*, desirous to learn. Such substantives, among many others, are: *ars*, *causa*, *consilium*, *consuetudo*, *cupiditas*, *facultas*, *occasio*, *potestas*, *spes*, *studium*, *voluntas*. The ablatives *causā* and *gratiā* are also joined with the genitive of the gerund: e. g. *discendi causa*, for the sake or purpose of learning; *quidam canes venandi gratia comparantur*.

Beate vivendi cupiditate incensi omnes sumus.

Parsimonia est scientia vitandi sumptus supervacuos, aut ars re familiari moderate utendi.

Epaminondas studiosus erat audiendi.

b) If the verb governs the accusative, the passive construction with the participle future is commonly preferred.

Quis ignorat Gallos usque ad hanc diem retinere illam immanem ac barbaram consuetudinem hominum immolandorum?

Inita sunt a Catilina ejusque sociis consilia urbis delendae, civium trucidandorum, nominis Romani extinguendi.

Timotheus rei militaris (belli gerendi) fuit peritus, neque minus civitatis regendae.

[§ 660.] *Note.* The rule respecting the agreement of the participle

with the noun in gender and number is apparently violated in the genitive of the personal pronouns: for *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*, even when feminine, are joined with the neuter form of the participle; for these genitives are properly derived from the neuters *meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum*. Hence we say: *da mihi copiam tui placandi*, both in speaking to a man and to a woman; *haec dixi vestri adhortandi causa*.

[§ 664.] 4. The dative of the gerund is used after adjectives which govern this case (§ 409.), especially after *utilis, inutilis, noxius, par, aptus, idoneus*, and after substantives and verbs denoting a purpose or design. In this sense, however, it is more common to use *ad* with the accusative of the gerund, or a clause with *ut*. The expressions which from their meaning are most frequently joined with the dative of the gerund, are: *studere, intentum esse, tempus impendere, tempus consumere* or *inumere, operam dare, sufficere, satis esse, deesse* and *esse* in the sense "serving for," "being adequate to." The participle future passive, as was remarked above, is used when the verb governs an accusative.

Aqua nitrosa utilis est bibendo.

- *Brutus quum studere revocandis in urbem regibus liberos suos comperisset, secūri eos percussit.*
Tiberius quasi firmandae valetudini in Campaniam concessit.

[§ 666.] 5. The accusative of the gerund is invariably dependent upon prepositions, most frequently upon *ad* (to), or *inter* (during or amidst), but sometimes also upon *ante, circa*, and *ob*; and in this case the change into the passive construction with the participle future, takes place almost invariably when the gerund governs an accusative.

Mores puerorum se inter ludendum simplicius detegunt.

Musicen natura ipsa nobis videtur ad tolerandos facilius labores velut muneri dedisse.

Note. The beginner must particularly attend to the use of the gerund (without a noun) with *inter*, which is equivalent to our "during" or "amidst;" e. g. *inter eundum, inter bibendum, inter ambulandum, inter vapulandum*.

[§ 667.] 6. The ablative of the gerund is used:—a) Without a preposition, as an *ablativus instrumenti*. b) With the prepositions *ab, de, ex*, and *in*. In the first case the construction is commonly, and in the latter always, changed into the passive, when the gerund governs an accusative.

Hominis mens discendo alitur et cogitando.

Superstitione tollenda non tollitur religio.

Fortitudo in laboribus periculisque subeundis cernitur, temperantia in praetermittendis voluptatibus, prudentia in delectu bonorum et malorum, justitia in suo cuique tribuendo.

CHAP. LXXXIII.

USE OF THE SUPINE.

[§ 668.] 1. The two Supines are, in form, cases of a verbal substantive of the fourth declension, but they govern the case of their verb.

2. The supine in *um* is used with verbs which express motion to a place; e. g. *ire, proficisci, contendere, pergere, festinare, venire, mittere, trajicere*: and it indicates the object; e. g. *cubitum ire*, to go to sleep: *exploratum, frumentatum, pabulatum mittere, oratum obsecratumque venire*. The same meaning is implied in the expression *alicui nuptum dare*, to give a woman in marriage. But the Latin writers in general prefer using the gerund in the accusat. with *ad*, or in the genit. with *causa*, or the participle future active, instead of the supine.

Philippus Argis a Pausania, quum spectatum ludos iret, juxta theatrum occisus est. (The same may be expressed by *ad spectandos ludos, ludos spectandi causa, ludorum spectandorum causa, ludos spectaturus*, or *ut ludos spectaret.*)

[§ 670.] 3. The supine in *u* is used after the substantives *fas, nefas*, and *opus*, and after the adjectives *good* or *bad*, *agreeable* or *disagreeable*, *worthy* or *unworthy*, *easy* or *difficult*, and some others of similar meaning. Of the adjectives which are joined with this supine, the following occur most frequently: *honestus, turpis, jucundus, facilis, incredibilis, memorabilis, utilis, dignus* and *indignus*. But the number of supines in *u* actually in use is very small, and almost

limited to the following: *dictu*, *auditu*, *cognitu*, *factu*, *inventu*, *memoratu*, to which we may add *natu* (by birth, according to age), which occurs in the expressions *grandis*, *major*, *minor*, *maximus*, and *minimus natu*.

Pleraque dictu quam re sunt faciliora.

Quid est tam jucundum cognitu atque auditu, quam sapientibus sententiis gravibusque verbis ornata oratio?

A P P E N D I X.

THE words of a language consist of long and short syllables. In measuring syllables the time consumed in pronouncing a short syllable is taken as a standard, and this portion of time is called *mora*. A long syllable takes two *morae*, and is therefore, in this respect, equal to two short syllables. Which syllables, in the Latin language, are considered short, and which long, has been shown in Chap. III. From the combination of syllables of a certain quantity arise what are called Feet (*pedes*), of which there are four of two syllables, eight of three syllables, sixteen of four syllables, thirty-two of five syllables, &c., since the respective number of syllables admits of so many variations. For the sake of brevity, specific names have been given to those feet which consist of two, three, and four syllables:—

a) of two syllables :

- υ υ Pyrrhichius ; *bone, pater, lege.*
- — Spondeus ; *audax, constans, virtus.*
- υ — Iambus ; *potens, patres, legunt.*
- υ Trochaeus, or Choreus ; *laetus, fortis, gaudet.*

b) Of three syllables :

- υ υ υ Tribrachys ; *domine, dubius, legere.*
- — — Molossus ; *mirari, libertas, legerunt.*
- υ υ Dactylus ; *improbis, omnia, legerat.*
- υ — υ Amphibrachys ; *amare, peritus, legebat.*
- υ υ — Anapaestus ; *bonitas, meditans, legerent.*
- υ — — Bacchius ; *dolores, amavi, legebant.*
- υ — Amphimacer, Creticus ; *fecerant, legerant, cogitans.*
- — υ Palimbacchius, Antibacchius ; *praeclarus, peccata, legisse.*

c) Of four syllables :

- ∪ ∪ ∪ ∪ Proceleusmaticus ; *celeriter, memoria, relegere.*
 - - - - Dispondeus ; *praeceptores, interrumpunt, perlegerunt.*
 ∪ ∪ - - Ionicus a minori ; *adolescens, generosi, adamari.*
 - - ∪ ∪ Ionicus a majori ; *sententia, mutabilis, perlegerat.*
 ∪ ∪ - ∪ Ditrochaeus, Dichoreus ; *educator, infidelis, eruditus.*
 ∪ - ∪ - Diſiambus ; *amoenitas, renuntians, supervenis.*
 ∪ - - ∪ Antispastus ; *verecundus, abundabit, perillustis.*
 - ∪ ∪ - Choriambus ; *impatiens, credulitas, eximios.*
 - ∪ ∪ ∪ Paeon primus ; *credibilis, historia, attonitus.*
 ∪ - ∪ ∪ ——— secundus ; *modestia, amabilis, idoneus.*
 ∪ ∪ - ∪ ——— tertius ; *puerilis, opulentus, medicamen.*
 ∪ ∪ ∪ - ——— quartus ; *celeritas, misericors, refugiens.*
 ∪ - - - Epitritus primus ; *laborando, reformidant, salutantes.*
 - ∪ - - ——— secundus ; *administrans, imperatrix, comprobavi.*
 - - ∪ - ——— tertius ; *auctoritas, intelligens, dissentiens.*
 - - - ∪ ——— quartus ; *assentator, infinitus, naturalis.*

2. These feet are united with one another by Rhythm ; that is, the uniformity of the duration of time, in the raising and sinking of the voice, or *Arsis* (') and *Thesis*.

3. The *Arsis* is either equal to the *Thesis*, or twice as long, as will be seen in the difference of the two feet, the Dactyl and the Trochee, ∠ ∪ ∪ and ∠ ∪, the *Arsis* (marked thus ') being combined with the long syllable. The same proportion exists when the *Thesis* precedes the *Arsis* in the Anapaest and Iambus ∪ ∪ ∠ and ∪ ∠. The first species, in which the *Arsis* forms the beginning, is called the *descending* Rhythm ; the other in which the *Thesis* forms the beginning, the *ascending*.

4. The Iambic verse usually consists of the combination of six Iambi, whence it is called in Latin *senarius*, and in Greek trimeter, two united feet being termed a *metrum* (or dipodia). Its metre is this :—

∪ ∠ ∪ ∠ | ∪ ∠ ∪ ∠ | ∪ ∠ ∪ ∠

but the last syllable of all verses is anceps, and the last foot of a *senarius*, therefore, may be a Pyrrhic : ∪ ∪.

Pure Iambic feet, however, would become monotonous, and hence a tribrachys may be employed in every place except the last, the long syllable being resolved into two shorts; or, secondly, a Spondee may be substituted for the Iambus in all places except the last, and the Spondee again may be resolved into a Dactyl or Anapaest. The last foot alone is thus preserved pure. But in reciting Iambic verses it is necessary to read according to the Iambic rhythm, that is, in such a manner as to place the ictus on the second half of the foot, and if this half consists of two syllables, upon the first of them, for two syllables cannot be equally raised by the ictus. Hence the Tribrachys in Iambics is read $\cup \cup \cup$, the Spondee $_ _$, the Dactyl $_ \cup \cup$, and the Anapaest according to its own peculiar rhythm.

5. We shall subjoin, as an example, the first fable of Phaedrus, divided according to Dipodiae; every Arsis is indicated by the ictus. (Respecting the elisions, see § 8.)

Ad rí|vum eún|dem l'úpūs et á|gnus vénerant
Sítí compúl|si: s'úpèr|íor | stabát lupus
Longé|que infé|rí|or ágnus. Túnc | fauce improba
Latro incitá|tus, jurgii | causam íntulit.
Cur, inquit, túr|buléntam fē|císti mihi
Istám bibén|ti? Lánigér | contrá timens:
Qui póssum, quae|so, f'ácere quód | quèrèrís, lupe?
A té decúr|rit ad meós | haustús liquor.
Repúlsus il|le véritá|tis víribus
Ante hós sex mén|ses m'ále, áit, dí|xistí mihi.
Respóndit á|gnus: é'quidem ná|tus nón eram.
Pătēr hércülē' tú|us, inquit, m'álē|dixít mihi.
Atque itā corrē|ptum l'ácérat in|justá nece.

6. The dactylic verse most commonly employed is the dactylic hexameter, also called the heroic verse, being used principally in heroic epics, after the example of Homer.

It consists of six feet or dactyls, the last of which however is shortened by one syllable. In the first four places, a spondee may stand, but it rarely occurs in the fifth, because such a verse (called *spondiacus*) would sound rather heavy.

The scheme therefore stands thus:

$_ \cup \cup$ | $_ \cup \cup$ | $_ \cup \cup$ | $_ \cup \cup$ | $_ \cup \cup$ | $_ \cup \cup$

7. In this verse we have to pay particular attention to its incision or *caesura*. A *caesura* is the interruption of the rhythm by the end of a word. For, as in reading we make a pause at the end of a word, in order to be understood, there arises a sort of opposition between the sense and the rhythm, which is removed in good reading by making a short pause on account of the sense, but taking up at the same time the interrupted rhythm. An hexameter may have many *caesurae*, e. g.

Donec eris felix, multos numerabis amicos,

where the end of the words is throughout at variance with the end of the feet; but one *caesura* in the middle of the line is necessary, in order to divide the verse, which would otherwise be too long, into two halves. It occurs either in the third foot after the *arsis*, and is called *penthemimeres* (πενθημιμερής), because five half feet have preceded it; or in the fourth, likewise after the *arsis*, and is called *hepthemimeres* (ἑπθημιμερής). The former is by far the most frequent, e. g. in the following verses of Ovid, where all the *caesurae* are *penthemimeres*, with the exception of one.

Silva vetus stabat, || nulla violata securi.
Est specus in medio, || virgis ac vimine densus,
Efficiens humilem || lapidum compagibus arcum,
Uberibus fecundus aquis. || Hoc conditus antro
Martius anguis erat, || cristis praesignis et auro.
Ignem micant oculi, || corpus tumet omne veneno,
Tresque vibrant linguae, || triplici stant ordine dentes.

In determining the principal *caesura* of an hexameter, we are assisted by the punctuation, which the poets usually make to coincide with the principal *caesura*, if it does not coincide with the end of the verse.

8. Next to the hexameter, the pentameter is the most common dactylic verse. It has its name from the five complete feet which it appears to contain, for of the six dactyls, the third and sixth are imperfect and consist only of two halves each.

⌊ ∞ | ⌊ ∞ | ⌊ | ⌊ ∪ ∪ | ⌊ ∪ ∪ | ⌊

There is always a caesura after the third Arsis, and the pause there consists of two Morae. In the second half of the verse, the place of the dactyls cannot be supplied by spondees as in the first. This verse is employed most frequently with an hexameter preceding it, and these two verses together are called a distich, e. g.

*Artibus ingenuis, | quarum tibi maxima cura est,
Pectora mollescent, | asperitasque fugit.*

THE END.

LONDON :
Printed by A. SPOTTISWOODE,
New-Street-Square.

APPROVED WORKS

FOR COLLEGES AND GRAMMAR SCHOOLS.

I.

ZUMPT'S LARGER GRAMMAR OF THE LATIN TONGUE,
Translated from the Ninth Edition of the original, and adapted for the use of English Students. By L. SCHMITZ, Ph. D. Rector of the High School of Edinburgh; with Additions and Corrections, communicated by the Author. 8vo. 14s.

II.

A COMPLETE LATIN-ENGLISH AND ENGLISH-LATIN DICTIONARY. For the use of Colleges and Schools. From the best sources, chiefly German. By the Rev. J. E. RIDDLE, M.A. of St. Edmund Hall, Oxford. New Edition. 8vo. 31s. 6d.

Separately { The English-Latin Dictionary, 10s. 6d.
The Latin-English Dictionary, 11. 1s.

III.

THE YOUNG SCHOLAR'S LATIN-ENGLISH AND ENGLISH-LATIN DICTIONARY; being the Rev. J. E. RIDDLE's Abridgment of his larger Dictionary. New Edition. Square 12mo. 12s.

Separately { The Latin-English Dictionary, 7s.
The English-Latin Dictionary, 5s. 6d.

IV.

DELECTUS SENTENTIARUM ET HISTORIARUM; ad usum Tironum accommodatus: cum Notulis et Lexico. Auctore R. VALPY, D.D. New Edition. 12mo. 2s. 6d.

KEY; being a Literal Translation. By a PRIVATE TEACHER. New Edition. 12mo. 3s. 6d.

V.

THE NEW SPEAKER AND HOLIDAY TASK-BOOK.

Selected from Classical Greek, Latin, and English writers:—Demosthenes, Thucydides, Homer, Sophocles, Cicero, Livy, Virgil, Lucretius, Shakespeare, Milton, Burke, Bacon, &c. By the Rev. W. SEWELL, B.D. 12mo. [*Nearly ready.*]

VI.

THE ÆNEID, GEORGICS, AND BUCOLICS OF VIRGIL: with Marginal References, and concise Notes from Wagner, Heyne, and Anthon. Edited, from the Text of Wagner, by the Rev. JAS. PYCROFT, B.A. Fcp. 8vo. 7s. 6d. or, without Notes, 3s. 6d.

Approved Works for Colleges and Grammar Schools.

~~~~~

VII.

**P. VIRGILII MARONIS BUCOLICA, GEORGICA, ÆNEIS.** Accedunt, in gratiam Juventutis, Notæ quædam Anglice scriptæ. Edited by A. J. VALPY, M.A. New Editions. 18mo. 7s. 6d.; or, without Notes, 3s. 6d.

VIII.

**Q. HORATII FLACCI OPERA.** Ad fidem optimorum exemplarium castiga; cum Notulis Anglicis. Edited by A. J. VALPY, M.A. New Editions. 18mo. 6s.; or, without Notes, 3s. 6d.

\*.\* The objectionable odes and passages have been expunged.

IX.

**OVIDII METAMORPHOSES;** in usum Scholarum excerptæ: quibus accedunt Notulæ Anglicæ et Questiones. Studio C. BRADLEY, A.M. Editio Nova. 12mo. 4s. 6d.

X.

**ELECTA EX OVIDIO ET TIBULLO:** cum Notis Anglicis. By the Rev. F. E. J. VALPY, M.A. Master of Burton-on-Trent School. New Edition. 12mo. 4s. 6d.

XI.

**P. TERENTII AFRI COMÆDIÆ SEX.** Ex Editione TH. FRID. GOD. REINHARDT. With Explanatory Notes, by D. B. HICKIE, LL.D. New Edition. 12mo. with Portrait, 9s. 6d.

XII.

**C. JULII CÆSARIS COMMENTARII DE BELLO GAL-LICO.** Ex recensione FR. OUDENDORPII. With Explanatory Notes, and Historical, Geographical, and Archæological Indexes. By CHARLES ANTHON, LL.D. New Edition. 12mo. 4s. 6d.

XIII.

**C. CRISPI SALLUSTII OPERA.** With an English Commentary, and Geographical and Historical Indexes. By CHARLES ANTHON, LL.D. New Edition. 12mo. 5s.

XIV.

**M. TULLII CICERONIS ORATIONES SELECTÆ.** Ex recensione Jo. AUG. ERNESTI. With an English Commentary, and Historical, Geographical, and Legal Indexes. By CHARLES ANTHON, LL.D. New Edition. 12mo. 6s.

---

LONDON:  
LONGMAN, BROWN, GREEN, & LONGMANS.

# **A Select Catalogue of BOOKS ON EDUCATION,**

PRINTED FOR

**LONGMAN, BROWN, GREEN, AND LONGMANS.**

## **NEW WORKS.**

### **VALPY'S VIRGIL, IMPROVED BY PYCROFT: WITH MARGINAL REFERENCES.**

The *Æneid*, *Georgics*, and *Bucolics* of Virgil: with Marginal References, and concise Notes from Wagner, Heyne, and Anthon. Edited, from the Text of Wagner, by the Rev. Jas. Pycroft, B.A. Fcp. 8vo. 7s. 6d. bound; without Notes, 3s. 6d. bound.

\*. The advantage of marginal references in studying an author is too obvious to require a lengthened argument in its favour. This principle, which has been found so invaluable in the study of the Holy Scriptures, is now for the first time applied to a school edition of a Classic writer. It is proposed to publish editions of other Classics on the same plan.

### **ZUMPT'S SCHOOL LATIN GRAMMAR.**

Translated, and adapted for English Schools, by Dr. L. Schmitz, Rector of the High School of Edinburgh, Translator of Zumpt's larger "Latin Grammar;" with the concurrence of Prof. Zumpt. 12mo. [Nearly ready.]

### **THE DEBATER:**

A new Theory of the Art of Speaking; being a series of complete Debates, Outlines of Debates, and Questions for Discussion: with ample References to the best Sources of Information on each particular Topic. By Frederic Rowton, Lecturer on General Literature. Fcp. 8vo. 6s. cloth.

### **THE NEW SPEAKER AND HOLIDAY TASK-BOOK.**

Selected from Classical Greek, Latin, and English Writers:—Demosthenes, Thucydides, Homer, Sophocles, Cicero, Livy, Virgil, Lucretius, Shakspeare, Milton, Burke, Bacon, &c. By the Rev. W. Sewall, B.D. 12mo. [Nearly ready.]

### **THE MODERN POETICAL SPEAKER:**

A Collection of Pieces adapted for Recitation, carefully selected from the English Poets of the Nineteenth Century. By Mrs. Palliser. Dedicated, by permission, to the Right Hon. the Dowager Lady Lyttelton. 12mo. 6s. bound.

### **THE LADIES' COMPLETE ARITHMETICIAN;**

Or, Conversational Arithmetic. In which all the Rules are explained in Easy and Familiar Language. To which is added, a short History of the Coinage; with Tables of the Weights and Measures of the Ancients. For the use of Ladies' Schools and private Families. By Mrs. Henry Ayres. 2d Edit. 12mo. [Ready.]

\*. A Key to this work is just ready.

### **A MANUAL OF ENGLISH ANTIQUITIES.**

By James Eccleston, B.A. Head Master of Sutton Coldfield Grammar School. 8vo. with numerous Engravings on Wood. [In the press.]

### **A CATECHISM OF CHURCH HISTORY:**

Designed for the use of Schools and Students in Theology, whether preparing for University or Episcopal Examination. By the Rev. W. T. Wilkinson, A.M. Theological Tutor of Cheltenham College. Fcp. 8vo. [In the press.]

### **ANTHOLOGIA OXONIENSIS:**

Sive, Florilegium e Lusibus Poeticis diversorum Oxoniensium Græcis et Latinis. Decerpit Gulielmus Linwood, A.M. *Ædis Christi Alumnus*. 8vo. 14s. cloth.

# ELEMENTARY GREEK WORKS, LEXICONS, GRAMMARS, ETC.

## Kühner's Elementary Greek Grammar.

An Elementary Grammar of the Greek Language. By Dr. Raphael Kühner, Co-Rector of the Lyceum at Hanover. Translated by J. H. Milford, St. John's College, Cambridge; late Second Classical Master at HENRY Grammar School. 8vo. 5s. cloth.

## Questions on Wordsworth's Greek Grammar.

Examination Questions on the *Grammar* Rudiments. In usum Scholarum. By CHARLES ENGLISH, Master of the Episcopal School, Haddington. 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

## Brasse's Greek Gradus.

A Greek Gradus; or, a Greek, Latin, and English Prosodial Lexicon: containing the Interpretation, in Latin and English, of all words which occur in the Greek Poets, from the Earliest Period to the time of Ptolemy Philadelphus: with the Quantity of the Syllables verified by Authorities; and combining the advantages of a Lexicon of the Greek Poets and a Greek Gradus. By the late Rev. Dr. BRASSE. To which is added, a Synopsis of the Greek Metres, by the Rev. J. R. Major, D.D. 2d Edition, revised by the Rev. F. E. J. Valpy, M.A. 8vo. 15s. cloth.

## Giles's Greek and English Lexicon.

A Lexicon of the Greek Language, for the use of Colleges and Schools; containing—1. A Greek-English Lexicon, combining the advantages of an Alphabetical and Derivative Arrangement; 2. An English-Greek Lexicon, more copious than any that has ever yet appeared. To which is prefixed, a concise Grammar of the Greek Language. By the Rev. J. A. GILES, LL.D. 2d Edit. 8vo. 25s. cloth.

\*,\* The English-Greek Lexicon, separately. 7s. 6d. cloth.

## Pycroft's Greek Grammar Practice.

In Three Parts: 1. Lessons in Vocabulary, Nouns, Adjectives, and Verbs in Grammatical order; 2. Greek, made out of each column for translation; 3. English of the same for retranslation. By the Rev. JAMES PYCROFT, B.A. 12mo. 3s. 6d. cloth.

## Moody's Eton Greek Grammar in English.

The New Eton Greek Grammar; with the Marks of Accent, and the Quantity of the Penult: containing the Eton Greek Grammar in English; the Syntax and Prosody as used at Eton; also, the Analogy between the Greek and Latin Languages; Introductory Exercises and Lessons: with numerous Additions to the text. The whole being accompanied by Practical and Philosophical Notes. By the Rev. CLEMENT MOODY, A.M. 2d Edition, 12mo. 4s. cloth.

## Valpy's Greek Grammar.

The Elements of Greek Grammar: with Notes. By R. VALPY, D.D. New Edit. 8vo. 6s. 6d. boards; bound, 7s. 6d.

## Valpy's Greek Delectus, and Key.

Delectus Sententiarum Græcarum, ad usum Titulum accommodatus: cum Notulis et Lexico. Auctore R. VALPY, D.D. Editio Nova, eademque aucta et emendata, 12mo. 4s. cloth.

KEY to the above, being a Literal Translation into English, 12mo. 2s. 6d. sewed.

## Valpy's Second Greek Delectus.

Second Greek Delectus; or, New Analecta Minora: intended to be read in Schools between Dr. Valpy's Greek Delectus and the Third Greek Delectus: with English Notes, and a copious Greek and English Lexicon. By the Rev. F. E. J. VALPY, M.A. 3d Edition, 8vo. 9s. 6d. bound.

## Valpy's Third Greek Delectus.

The Third Greek Delectus; or, New Analecta Majora: with English Notes. In Two Parts. By the Rev. F. E. J. VALPY, M.A. 8vo. 15s. 6d. bound.

\*,\* The Parts may be had separately.

PART I. PROSE. 8vo. 8s. 6d. bound. — PART 2. POETRY. 8vo. 9s. 6d. bound.

**Valpy's Greek Exercises, and Key.**

Greek Exercises; being an Introduction to Greek Composition, leading the student from the Elements of Grammar to the higher parts of Syntax, and referring the Greek of the words to a Lexicon at the end: with Specimens of the Greek Dialects, and the Critical Canons of Dawes and Porson. 4th Edition. with many Additions and Corrections. By the Rev. F. E. J. VALPY, M.A. 12mo. 6s. 6d. cloth.

KEY, 12mo. 3s. 6d. sewed.

**Neilson's Greek Exercises, and Key.**

Greek Exercises, in Syntax, Ellipsis, Dialects, Prosody, and Metaphrasis. To which is prefixed, a concise but comprehensive Syntax; with Observations on some Idioms of the Greek Language. By the Rev. W. NEILSON, D.D. New Edition, 8vo. 5s. boards.—KEY, 2s. boards.

**Howard's Introductory Greek Exercises, and Key.**

Introductory Greek Exercises to those of Huntingford, Dunbar, Neilson, and others; arranged under Models, to assist the learner: with Exercises on the different Tenses of Verbs, extracted from the Table or Picture of Cebes. By N. HOWARD. New Edition. 12mo. 5s. 6d. cloth.—KEY, 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

**Dr. Major's Greek Vocabulary.**

Greek Vocabulary; or, Exercises on the Declinable Parts of Speech. By the Rev. J. R. MAJOR, D.D. 2d Edition, 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

**Collectanea Græca Majora :**

Ad usum Academicæ juventutis accommodatæ. Cum Notis Philologicis, quas partim collegit, partim scripsit ANDREAS DALZIEL, A.M. New Editions. 3 vols 8vo. £1. 14s. 6d. bound.

Vol. 1. *Excerpta ex Variis Orationis Solutæ Scriptoribus.* 4th Edition. 8vo. 9s. 6d. bound.

Vol. 2. *Excerpta ex Variis Poëtis.* 6th Edition. Edited by the Rev. CANON TATE. 8vo. 11s. bound.

Vol. 3. *Excerpta ex duobus principibus Oratoribus et Variis Poëtis.* New Edit. 8vo. 14s. bound.

**Dr. Major's Guide to the Greek Tragedians.**

A Guide to the Reading of the Greek Tragedians; being a series of articles on the Greek Drama, Greek Metres, and Canons of Criticism. Collected and arranged by the Rev. J. R. MAJOR, D.D. 2d Edition, enlarged, 8vo. 9s. cloth.

***The Rev. J. Seager's Translations.*****Bos on the Greek Ellipsis.**

Professor Schæffer's Edition, with Notes. 8vo. 9s. 6d. boards.

**Hermann's Elements of**

the Doctrine of Metres. 8vo. 8s. 6d. boards.

**Hoozeveen on the Greek**

Particles. 8vo. 7s. 6d. boards.

**Maittaire on the Greek**

Dialects. From the Edition of Sturrius. 8vo. 9s. 6d. boards.

**Viger on the Greek**

Idioms. Abridged and translated into English, from Professor Hermann's last Edition, with Original Notes. 2d Edition, with Additions and Corrections. 8vo. 9s. 6d. boards.

\*. The above Five Works may be had in 2 vols. 8vo. £2. 2s. cloth.

**Dr. Smithers' Classical Student's Manual.**

The Classical Student's Manual; containing an Index to every Page, Section, and Note, in Matthias's Greek Grammar—Hermann's Annotations to Viger on Idioms—Bos on Ellipsis—Hoozeveen on the Particles—and Kuster on the Middle Verb; in which Thucydides, Herodotus, Æschylus, Sophocles, Pindar, Homer's Iliad, Xenophon's Anabasis, and the four Plays of Euripides, edited by Professor Parson, are illustrated with Philological and Explanatory Observations by the Rev. W. COLLIER SMITHERS, A.M. Ph.D. 3d Edition, 8vo. 10s. 6d. cloth.



**LATIN WORKS, DICTIONARIES, GRAMMARS, ETC.****Riddle and Arnold's English-Latin Lexicon.**

A Copious English-Latin Lexicon, compiled from the best Sources. By the Rev. J. E. RIDDLE, M.A. Author of "A Complete Latin-English Dictionary," &c.; and the Rev. T. Kerchever Arnold, M.A. Rector of Lyndon, and late Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge, Author of "A Practical Introduction to Latin Prose Composition," &c. 8vo. [In the press.]

**Riddle's Latin Dictionary.**

A Complete Latin-English and English-Latin Dictionary. For the use of Colleges and Schools. From the best sources, chiefly German. By the Rev. J. E. RIDDLE, M.A. of St. Edmund Hall, Oxford. 4th Edition, corrected and enlarged, 8vo. 31s. 6d. cloth.

Separately { The English-Latin Dictionary, 10s. 6d. cloth.  
The Latin-English Dictionary, £1. 1s. cloth.

**Riddle's Young Scholar's Latin Dictionary.**

The Young Scholar's Latin-English and English-Latin Dictionary; being Mr. Riddle's Abridgment of his larger Dictionary. 4th Edition, corrected and enlarged, square 12mo. 12s. bound.

Separately { The Latin-English Dictionary, 7s. bound.  
The English-Latin Dictionary, 5s. 6d. bound.

**Riddle's Diamond Latin-English Dictionary.**

A Diamond Latin-English Dictionary. A Guide to the Meaning, Quality, and right Accentuation of Latin Classical Words. By the Rev. J. E. RIDDLE, M.A. New Edition, royal 32mo. 4s. bound.

**A Grammar of the Latin Language.**

By C. G. ZUMPT, Ph. D. Professor in the University of Berlin, and Member of the Royal Academy of Berlin. Translated from the 9th Edition of the original, and adapted for the use of English students, by L. SCHMITZ, Ph. D. Rector of the High School of Edinburgh; with Additions and Corrections, communicated by the Author. 8vo. 14s. cloth.

\* \* Zumpt's School Grammar of the Latin Language, translated and adapted for English Schools by Dr. SCHMITZ, is nearly ready.

**Pycroft's Latin Grammar Practice.**

Latin Grammar Practice: 1. Lessons in Vocabulary, Nouns, Adjectives, and Verbs, in Grammatical Order; 2. Latin, made out of each column, for Translation; 3. English of the same, for Re-translation. By the Rev. JAMES PYCROFT, B.A. 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

**Valpy's Latin Grammar.**

The Elements of Latin Grammar: with Notes. By R. VALPY, D.D. New Edition, with numerous Additions and Corrections, 12mo. 2s. 6d. bound.

**Dr. Kennedy's Latin Grammar.**

Latinæ Grammaticæ Curriculum; or, a Progressive Grammar of the Latin Language, for the use of all Classes in Schools. By Rev. B. H. KENNEDY, D.D. Head Master of Shrewsbury School. 3d Edition, 12mo. 4s. 6d. cloth.

**Moody's Eton Latin Grammar in English.**

The New Eton Latin Grammar, with the Marks of Quantity and the Rules of Accent; containing the Eton Latin Grammar as used at Eton, and its Translation into English: with Notes and copious Additions. By Rev. CLEMENT MOODY, M.A. 7th Edition. 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

The Eton Latin Accidence: with Additions and Notes. New Edition, 12mo. 1s.

**Graham's First Steps to Latin Writing.**

First Steps to Latin Writing: intended as a Practical Illustration of the Latin Accidence. To which are added, Examples on the principal Rules of Syntax. By G. F. GRAHAM. 2d Edition, considerably enlarged, 12mo. 4s. cloth.

**Valpy's Latin Delectus, and Key.**

Delectus Sententiarum et Historiarum; ad usum Tironum accommodatus: cum Notulis et Lexico. Auctore R. VALPY, D.D. New Edition, with Explanations and Directions; and a Dictionary, in which the Genders of Nouns, and the principal parts of Verbs, are inserted. 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

KEY; being a Literal Translation. By a PRIVATE TEACHER. New Edition, carefully revised, and adapted to the alterations in the new edition of the text, by W. R. BURTON, 12mo. 3s. 6d. cloth.

**Valpy's Second Latin Delectus.**

The Second Latin Delectus; designed to be read in Schools after the Latin Delectus, and before the *Analecta Latina Majora*: with English Notes. By the Rev. F. E. J. VALPY, M.A. 2d Edition, 8vo. 6s. bound.

**Valpy's First Latin Exercises.**

First Exercises on the principal Rules of Grammar, to be translated into Latin: with familiar Explanations. By the late Rev. R. VALPY, D.D. New Edition, with many Additions, 18mo. 1s. 6d. cloth.

**Valpy's Second Latin Exercises.**

Second Latin Exercises; applicable to every Grammar, and intended as an Introduction to Valpy's "*Elegantiae Latinae*." By the Rev. E. VALPY, B.D. 6th Edit. 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

**Valpy's Latin Vocabulary.**

A New Latin Vocabulary; adapted to the best Latin Grammars: with Tables of Numeral Letters, English and Latin Abbreviations, and the Value of Roman and Grecian Coins. By R. VALPY, D.D. 11th Edition, 12mo. 2s. bound.

**Valpy's *Elegantiae Latinae*, and Key.**

*Elegantiae Latinae*; or, Rules and Exercises illustrative of Elegant Latin Style: intended for the use of the Middle and Higher Classes of Grammar Schools. With the Original Latin of the most difficult Phrases. By Rev. E. VALPY, B.D. late Master of Norwich School. 11th Edition, corrected, 12mo. 4s. 6d. cloth.

KEY, being the Original Passages, which have been translated into English, to serve as Examples and Exercises in the above. 12mo. 2s. 6d. sewed.

**Valpy's Latin Dialogues.**

Collected from the best Latin Writers, for the use of Schools, as well as of Private Students. 7th edit. 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

**Butler's Praxis, and Key.**

A Praxis on the Latin Prepositions: being an attempt to illustrate their Origin, Signification, and Government, in the way of Exercise. By the late Bishop BUTLER. 6th Edition, 8vo. 6s. 6d. boards.—KEY, 6s. boards.

**An Introduction to the Composition of Latin Verse;**

containing Rules and Exercises intended to illustrate the Manners, Customs, and Opinions, mentioned by the Roman Poets, and to render familiar the principal Idioms of the Latin Language. By the late CHRISTOPHER RAPIER, A.B. 2d Edition, carefully revised by THOMAS KERCHEVER ARNOLD, M.A. 12mo. 3s. 6d. cloth.—KEY, 2s. 6d. sewed.

**Howard's Introductory Latin Exercises.**

Introductory Latin Exercises to those of Clarke, Ellis, Turner, and others: designed for the Younger Classes. By NATHANIEL HOWARD. A New Edition, 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

**Howard's Latin Exercises extended.**

Latin Exercises Extended; or, a Series of Latin Exercises, selected from the best Roman Writers, and adapted to the Rules of Syntax, particularly in the Eton Grammar. To which are added, English Examples to be translated into Latin, immediately under the same rule. Arranged under Models. By NATHANIEL HOWARD. New Edition. 12mo. 3s. 6d. cloth.—KEY, 12mo. 2s. 6d.

**Bradley's Exercises, &c. on Latin Grammar.**

Series of Exercises and Questions; adapted to the best Latin Grammars, and designed as a Guide to Parsing, and an Introduction to the Exercises of Valpy, Turner, Clarke, Ellis, &c. &c. By the Rev. C. BRADLEY. 4th Edition. 12mo. 2s. 6d. bound.

**Bradley's Latin Prosody, and Key.**

Exercises in Latin Prosody and Versification. 8th Edition, with an Appendix on Lyric and Dramatic Measures, 12mo. 3s. 6d. cloth.—KEY, 12mo. 2s. 6d.

**The London Vocabulary, English and Latin;**

designed for the Use of Schools. By Js. GREENWOOD. Revised and arranged systematically, to advance the learner in scientific as well as verbal knowledge. By N. HOWARD. New Edition. 18mo. 1s. 6d. cloth.

**Beza's Latin Testament.**

Novum Testamentum Domini Nostri Jesu Christi, interprete THEODORA BEZA. Editio Stereotypa. 12mo. 3s. 6d. bound.

**Valpy's Epitome Sacræ Historiæ.**

Sacræ Historiæ Epitome, in usum Scholarum: cum Notis Anglicis. By the Rev. F. E. J. VALPY, M.A. 7th Edition, 18mo. 2s. cloth.

~~~~~

EDITIONS OF GREEK CLASSIC AUTHORS.
Valpy's Homer.

Homer's Iliad, complete: English Notes, and Questions to first Eight Books. Text of Heyne. By the Rev. E. VALPY, B.D. late Master of Norwich School. 6th Edition, 8vo. 10s. 6d. bound.—Text only, 6th Edition, 8vo. 6s. 6d. bound.

Major's Euripides.

Euripides. From the Text, and with a Translation of the Notes, Preface, and Supplement, of Porson; Critical and Explanatory Remarks, original and selected; Illustrations and Idioms from Matthiæ, Dawes, Viger, &c.; and a Synopsis of Metrical Systems. By Dr. MAJOR. 8vo. 24s. cloth.
* * The Five Plays separately, price 5s. each.

Burges's Æschylus.

Æschylus—The Prometheus: English Notes, &c. By G. BURGES, A.M. Trinity College, Cambridge. 2d Edition, post 8vo. 5s. boards.

Linwood's Sophocles.

Sophocles Tragicæ superstites. Recensuit et brevi Annotatione instruxit G. LINWOOD, M.A. Ædis Christi apud Oxonienses Alumnus. 8vo. 16s. cloth.

Brasse's Sophocles.

Sophocles, complete. From the Text of Hermann, Erfurdt, &c.; with original Explanatory English Notes, Questions, and Indices. By Dr. BRASSE, Mr. BURGES, and Rev. F. VALPY. 2 vols. post 8vo. 34s. cloth.
* * The Seven Plays separately, price 5s. each.

Balfour's Xenophon's Anabasis.

The Anabasis of Xenophon. Chiefly according to the Text of Hutchinson. With Explanatory Notes, and Illustrations of Idioms from Viger, &c., copious Indexes, and Examination Questions. By F. C. BALFOUR, M.A. Oxon. F.R.A.S. LL.D. 4th Edition. Post 8vo. 8s. 6d. boards.

Hickie's Xenophon's Memorabilia.

The Memorabilia of Xenophon: with Notes, Critical and Explanatory, from the best Commentators, and by the Editor; Questions for Examination; and Indices. By D. B. HICKIE, LL.D. Post 8vo. (In the press.)

Barker's Xenophon's Cyropædia.

The Cyropædia of Xenophon. Chiefly from the text of Dindorf. With Notes, Critical and Explanatory, from Dindorf, Fisher, Hutchinson, Poppo, Schneider, Sturtz, and others, accompanied by the editor's. With Examination Questions, and Indices. By E. H. BARKER. Post 8vo. 9s. 6d. bds.

Stocker's Herodotus.

Herodotus; containing the Continuous History alone of the Persian Wars: with English Notes. By the Rev. C. W. STOCKER, D.D. Vice-Principal of St. Alban's Hall, Oxford. New Edition. 2 vols. post 8vo. 18s. cloth.

Barker's Demosthenes.

Demosthenes—Oratio Philippica I., Olynthiaca I. II. and III., De Pace, Æschines contra Demosthenem, De Corona. With English Notes. By E. H. BARKER. 2d Edit. post 8vo. 8s. 6d. boards.

Dakins' Greek Testament.

~~~~~

Novum Testamentum Græcum, juxta exemplar Westeni Glasguae impressum. Accedunt Prolegomena in Evangelia, in Acta et Epistolas Apostolorum. Curante G. W. DAKINS, S.T.P. et LL.D. Editio nova, accurate impressa et recensita. 12mo. 5s. bound.

## EDITIONS OF LATIN CLASSIC AUTHORS.

**Valpy's Virgil, with Marginal References by Pycroft.**

The *Æneid*, *Georgics*, and *Bucolics* of Virgil: with Marginal References, and concise Notes from Wagner, Heyne, and Anthon. Edited, from the Text of Wagner, by the Rev JAS. PYCROFT, B.A. Trin. Coll. Oxford. Fcp. 8vo. 7s. 6d. bound; without Notes, 3s. 6d. bound. [Vide page 1.

**Valpy's Virgil.—(The Original Edition.)**

P. Virgillii Maronis *Bucolica*, *Georgica*, *Æneis*. Accedunt, in gratiam Juventutis, Notæ quædam Anglicæ scriptæ. Edited by A. J. VALPY, M.A. New Edition, 18mo. 7s. 6d. bound.—The Text only, New Edition, 3s. 6d. bound.

**Bradley's Ovid's Metamorphoses.**

Ovidii *Metamorphoses*; in usum Scholarum excerptæ: quibus accedunt Notulæ Anglicæ et Quæstiones. Studio C. BRADLEY, A.M. Editio Nona, 12mo. 4s. 6d. cloth.

**Valpy's Ovid's Epistles and Tibullus.**

Electa ex Ovidio et Tibullo: cum Notis Anglicis. By the Rev. F. E. J. VALPY, M.A. Master of Burton-on-Trent School. 4th Edition, 12mo. 4s. 6d. cloth.

**Bradley's Phædrus.**

Phædri Fabulæ; in usum Scholarum expurgatæ: quibus accedunt Notulæ Anglicæ et Quæstiones. Studio C. BRADLEY, A.M. Editio Nona, 12mo. 2s. 6d. cl.

**P. Terentii Afri Comœdiæ Sex.**

Ex Editione TH. FRID. GOD. REINHARDT. With Explanatory Notes, by D. B. HICKIE, LL.D. 2d Edition. 12mo. with Portrait, 9s. 6d. cloth.

**Valpy's Juvenal and Persius.**

Decimi J. Juvenalis et Persii Flacci *Satiræ*. Ex edd. Ruperti et Kœnig expurgatæ. Accedunt, in gratiam Juventutis, Notæ quædam Anglicæ scriptæ. Edited by A. J. VALPY, M.A. 3d Edit. 12mo. 5s. 6d. cl.—Text only, 3s. cl.

**Valpy's Horace.**

Q. Horatii Flacci Opera. Ad fidem optimorum exemplarium castigata; cum Notulis Anglicis. Edited by A. J. VALPY, M.A. New Edition, 18mo. 6s. 6d. The same, without Notes. New Edition, 3s. 6d. bound.

\*. The objectionable odes and passages have been expunged.

**The Rev. Canon Tate's Edition of Horace.**

Horatius Restitutus; or, the Books of Horace arranged in Chronological Order, according to the Scheme of Dr Bentley, from the Text of Gesner, corrected and improved: with a Preliminary Dissertation, very much enlarged, on the Chronology of the Works, on the Localities, and on the Life and Character of that Poet. By JAMES TATE, M.A. 2d edition, to which is now added, an original Treatise on the Metres of Horace, 8vo. cloth, 12s.

**Barker's Tacitus—Germany and Agricola.**

The Germany of C. C. Tacitus, from Passow's Text; and the Agricola, from Brotier's Text: with Critical and Philological Remarks, partly original and partly collected. By E. H. BARKER, late of Trinity College, Cambridge. 5th Edition, revised, 12mo. 5s. 6d. cloth.

**Valpy's Tacitus, with English Notes.**

C. Cornelii Taciti Opera. From the Text of Brotier; with his Explanatory Notes, translated into English. By A. J. VALPY, M.A. 3 vols. post 8vo. 24s. bds.

**C. Crispi Sallustii Opera.**

With an English Commentary, and Geographical and Historical Indexes. CHARLES ANTHON, LL.D. New Edition. 12mo. 5s. cloth.

**C. Julii Cæsaris Commentarii de Bello Gallico.**

Ex recensione FR. OUDENDORPII. With Explanatory Notes, and Historical, Geographical, and Archæological Indexes. By CHARLES ANTHON, LL.D. New Edition. 12mo. 4s. 6d. cloth.

**M. Tullii Ciceronis Orationes Selectæ.**

Ex recensione Jo. AUG. ERMSTII. With an English Commentary, and Historical, Geographical, and Legal Indexes. By CHARLES ANTHON, LL.D. New Edition. 12mo. 6s. cloth.

**Barker's Cicero de Amicitia, &c.**

Cicero's Cato Major, and Lælius: with English Explanatory and Philological Notes; and with an English Essay on the Respect paid to Old Age by the Egyptians, the Persians, the Spartans, the Greeks, and the Romans. By the late E. H. BARKER, Esq. of Trinity College, Cambridge. 6th Edition, 12mo. 4s. 6d. cloth.

**Valpy's Cicero's Offices.**

M. Tullii Ciceronis de Officiis Libri Tres. Accedunt, in usum Juventutis, Notæ quædam Anglicæ scriptæ. Edited by A. J. VALPY, M.A. Editio Quinta, aucta et emendata, 12mo. 6s. 6d. cloth.

**Valpy's Cicero's Twelve Orations.**

Twelve Select Orations of M. Tullius Cicero. From the Text of Jo. Casp. Orellius; with English Notes. Edited by A. J. VALPY, M.A. 3d Edition, post 8vo. 7s. 6d. boards.

**Bradley's Cornelius Nepos.**

Cornelii Nepotis Vitæ Excellentium Imperatorum: quibus accedunt Notulæ Anglicæ et Questiones. Studio C. BRADLEY, A.M. Editio Octava, 12mo. 3s. 6d. cl.

**Bradley's Eutropius.**

Eutropii Historiæ Romanæ Libri Septem: quibus accedunt Notulæ Anglicæ et Questiones. Studio C. BRADLEY, A.M. Editio Duodecima, 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

**Hickie's Livy.**

The First Five Books of Livy: with English Explanatory Notes, and Examination Questions. By D. B. HICKIE, LL.D. 2d Edition, post 8vo. 8s. 6d. boards.

**Fasciculus Primus Historiæ Britannicæ.**

The First Chapter of the History of England, selected from the Writings of Cæsar and Tacitus. To which are added, Explanatory Notes for the use of Schools. By W. DRAKE, M.A. 12mo. 3s. 6d. cloth.

**WORKS BY THE REV. S. T. BLOOMFIELD, D.D. F.S.A.****Bloomfield's New Greek Vocabulary.**

Lexilogus Scholasticus; or, a Greek and English Vocabulary on a new and improved plan: comprising all the Primitives, with some select Derivatives; and presenting a brief Epitome in outline of the Greek Language. 18mo. 3s. cloth.

**Bloomfield's Epitome of the Greek Gospels.**

Epitome Evangelica; being Selections from the Four Greek Gospels: with a Clavis and Grammatical Notes. Intended as a Companion to the Author's "Lexilogus Scholasticus," and as an Introduction to his "College and School Greek Testament." 18mo. 4s. cloth.

**Bloomfield's Greek Lexicon to the New Testament.**

Greek and English Lexicon to the New Testament; especially adapted to the use of Colleges and the higher Classes in the Public Schools, but also intended as a convenient Manual for Biblical Students in general. 2d Edition, greatly enlarged and improved. Fcp. 8vo. 10s. 6d. cloth.

**Bloomfield's College and School Greek Testament.**

The Greek Testament: with brief English Notes, Philological and Explanatory. Especially formed for the use of Colleges and the Public Schools, but also adapted for general purposes, where a larger work is not requisite. 4th Edition, greatly enlarged and improved, 12mo. 10s. 6d. cloth.

**Bloomfield's Greek Testament.**

The Greek Testament: with copious English Notes, Critical, Philological, and Explanatory. 6th Edition, greatly enlarged and improved. 2 vols. 8vo. with Map of Palestine, £2, cloth.

**Bloomfield's Greek Thucydides.**

The History of the Peloponnesian War, by Thucydides. A New Recension of the Text; with a carefully amended Punctuation; and copious Notes, Critical, Philological, and Explanatory; almost entirely original, but partly selected and arranged from the best Expositors, and forming a continuous Commentary: accompanied with full Indices, both of Greek Words and Phrases explained, and matters discussed in the Notes. 2 vols. 8vo. with Maps and Plans, 38s. cloth.

**Bloomfield's Translation of Thucydides.**

The History of the Peloponnesian War. By THUCYDIDES. Newly translated into English, and accompanied with very copious Notes, Philological and Explanatory, Historical and Geographical; with Maps and Plates. 3 vols. 8vo. £2. 5s. boards.

**HISTORY, CHRONOLOGY, AND MYTHOLOGY.****Lempriere's Classical Dictionary, abridged**

For Public and Private Schools of both Sexes. By the late E. H. BARKER, Trinity College, Cambridge. A New Edition, revised and corrected throughout. By J. CAUVIN. 8vo. 12s. bound.

**Blair's Chronological and Historical Tables.**

From the Creation to the Present Time: with Additions and Corrections from the most Authentic Writers; including the Computation of St. Paul, as connecting the Period from the Exode to the Temple. Under the superintendence of Sir HENRY ELLIS, K.H. Principal Librarian of the British Museum. Imp. 8vo. 31s. 6d. half-bound morocco.

**Mangnall's Questions.—THE ONLY GENUINE AND COMPLETE EDITION.**

Historical and Miscellaneous Questions, for the Use of Young People; with a Selection of British and General Biography, &c. &c. By R. MANGNALL. New Edition, with the Author's last Corrections, and other very considerable Additions and Improvements. 12mo. 4s. 6d. bound.

**Corner's Sequel to Mangnall's Questions.**

Questions on the History of Europe: a Sequel to Mangnall's Historical Questions; comprising Questions on the History of the Nations of Continental Europe not comprehended in that work. By JULIA CORNER. New Edition, 12mo. 5s. bound.

**Knapp's Universal History.**

An Abridgment of Universal History, adapted to the Use of Families and Schools; with appropriate Questions at the end of each Section. By the Rev. H. J. KNAPP, M.A. New Edition, with the series of events brought down to the present time. 12mo. 5s. bound.

**Hort's Pantheon.**

The New Pantheon; or, an Introduction to the Mythology of the Ancients, in Question and Answer: compiled for the Use of Young Persons. To which are added, an Accentuated Index, Questions for Exercise, and Poetical Illustrations of Grecian Mythology, from Homer and Virgil. By W. J. HORT. New Edition, enlarged. 18mo. 17 Plates, 5s. 6d. bound.

**Hort's Chronology.**

An Introduction to the Study of Chronology and Ancient History: in Question and Answer. By W. J. HORT. New Edition, 18mo. 4s. bound.

**Tables of Chronology, and Regal Genealogies.**

Combined and separate. By the Rev. J. H. HOWLETT, M.A. 2d Edition, 4to. 5s. 6d. cloth.

**Metrical Chronology;**

In which most of the important Dates in Ancient and Modern History are expressed by Consonants used for Numerals, and formed, by aid of Vowels, into significant Words: with Historical Notes and Questions for the Exercise of Young Persons. By Rev. J. H. HOWLETT, M.A. 3d Edit. post 8vo. 7s. cloth.

**School Chronology; or, the Great Dates of History.**

Drawn up for the use of the Collegiate Schools, Liverpool. Third Edition. Square 12mo 1s. stitched.

**Valpy's Poetical Chronology.**

Poetical Chronology of Ancient and English History: with Historical and Explanatory Notes. By R. VALPY, D.D. New Edit. 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

**The Chronology of History;**

Containing Tables, Calculations, and Statements, indispensable for ascertaining the Dates of Historical Events and of Public and Private Documents, from the Earliest Periods to the Present Time. By Sir HARRIS NICOLAS, K.C.M.G. New Edition. Fcp. 8vo. 6s. cloth.

**Keightley's Outlines of History.**

Outlines of History, from the Earliest Period. By THOMAS KEIGHTLEY, Esq. New Edition, corrected and improved. Fcp. 8vo. 6s. cloth; 6s. 6d. bound.

**Sir Walter Scott's History of Scotland.**

History of Scotland. By Sir WALTER SCOTT, Bart. New Edition, 2 vols. fcp. 8vo. with Vignette Titles, 12s. cloth.

**Valpy's Elements of Mythology.**

Elements of Mythology; or, an Easy History of the Pagan Deities: intended to enable the young to understand the Ancient Writers of Greece and Rome. By R. VALPY, D.D. 8th Edition, 12mo. 2s. bound.

**GEOMETRY, ARITHMETIC, LAND-SURVEYING, ETC.****Sandhurst College Astronomy and Geodesy.**

Practical Astronomy and Geodesy: including the Projections of the Sphere and Spherical Trigonometry. For the use of the Royal Military College, Sandhurst. By JOHN NARRIEN, F.R.S. & R.A.S. Professor of Mathematics, &c. in the Institution. 8vo. 14s.

**Sandhurst College Trigonometry.**

Plain Trigonometry and Mensuration. By W. SCOTT, Esq. A.M. and F.R.A.S. 8vo. 9s. 6d. cloth.

**Sandhurst College Elements of Euclid.**

Elements of Geometry: consisting of the first four, and the sixth, Books of Euclid, chiefly from the Text of Dr. Robert Simson; with the principal Theorems in Proportion, and a Course of Practical Geometry on the Ground. Also, Four Tracts relating to Circles, Planes, and Solids; with one on Spherical Geometry. By JOHN NARRIEN, F.R.S. and R.A.S. 8vo. 10s. 6d. bd.

**Sandhurst College Arithmetic and Algebra.**

Elements of Arithmetic and Algebra. By W. SCOTT, Esq. A.M. and F.R.A.S. Second Mathematical Professor in the Institution. 8vo. 16s. bound.

**Professor Thomson's Elementary Algebra.**

An Elementary Treatise on Algebra, Theoretical and Practical. By JAMES THOMSON, LL.D. Professor of Mathematics in the University of Glasgow. 2d Edition. 12mo. 6s. cloth.

\* A Key to this work is in the press.

**Nesbit's Mensuration, and Key.**

A Treatise on Practical Mensuration containing the most approved Methods of drawing Geometrical Figures; Mensuration of Superficies; Land Surveying; Mensuration of Solids; the Use of the Carpenter's Rule; Timber Measure, &c. By A. NESBITT. 13th Edition, corrected and greatly improved, with nearly 700 Practical Examples, and nearly 800 Woodcuts, 12mo. 6s. bound.

REV. 7th Edition, 12mo. 6s. bound.

**Nesbit's Land Surveying.**

A Complete Treatise on Practical Land Surveying. By A. NESBITT. 7th Edition, greatly enlarged, 8vo. with Plates, Woodcuts, and Field-book, 12s. boards.

**Crocker's Land Surveying.**

Crocker's Elements of Land Surveying. New Edition, corrected throughout, and considerably improved and modernized, by T. G. BUNT, Land-Surveyor, Bristol. To which are added, Tables of Six-figure Logarithms, superintended by Richard Farley, of the Nautical Almanac Establishment. Post 8vo. with Plan of the Manor of North Hill, Somerset, belonging to J. W. Antoni, Esq., numerous Diagrams, a Field-book, Plan of part of the City of Bath, &c. 12s. cl.

**Farley's Six-Figure Logarithms.**

Tables of Six-figure Logarithms; containing the Logarithms of Numbers from 1 to 10,000, and of Sines and Tangents for every Minute of the Quadrant and every Six Seconds of the first Two Degrees: with a Table of Constants, and Formulae for the Solution of Plane and Spherical Triangles. Superintended by RICHARD FARLEY, of the Nautical Almanac Establishment. Post 8vo. 4s. 6d. cloth.

**Illustrations of Practical Mechanics.**

By the Rev. H. MOSLEY, M.A. Professor of Natural Philosophy and Astronomy in King's College, London. Being the First Volume of Illustrations of Science, by the Professors of King's College. 2d Edition, 1 vol. fcp. 8vo. with numerous Woodcuts, 8s. cloth.

**Keith on the Globes, and Key.**

A New Treatise on the Use of the Globes; or, a Philosophical View of the Earth and Heavens: comprehending an Account of the Figure, Magnitude, and Motion of the Earth: with the Natural Changes of its Surface, caused by Floods, Earthquakes, &c. By THOMAS KEITH. New Edition, considerably improved, by J. ROWBOTHAM, F.R.A.S. and W. H. PRIOR. 12mo. with 7 Plates, 6s. 6d. bound.

REV. by PRIOR, revised by J. ROWBOTHAM, 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

**Keith's Trigonometry.**

An Introduction to the Theory and Practice of Plane and Spherical Trigonometry, and the Stereographic Projection of the Sphere, including the Theory of Navigation; comprehending a variety of Rules, Formulae, &c. with their Practical Applications to the Mensuration of Heights and Distances, to determine the Latitude by two Altitudes of the Sun, the Longitude by the Lunar Observations, and to other important Problems on the Sphere; and on Nautical Astronomy. By THOMAS KEITH. 7th Edition, corrected by S. MAYNARD, 8vo. 14s. cloth.

**Taylor's Arithmetic, and Key.**

The Arithmetician's Guide; or, a complete Exercise Book: for Public Schools and Private Teachers. By W. TAYLOR. New Edition, 12mo. 2s. 6d. bound.

KEY to the same. By W. H. WHITE, of the Commercial and Mathematical School, Bedford. 12mo. 4s. bound.

**Molineux's Arithmetic, and Key.**

An Introduction to Practical Arithmetic; in Two Parts: with various Notes, and occasional Directions for the use of Learners. By T. MOLINEUX, many years Teacher of Accounts and the Mathematics in Macclesfield. In Two Parts. Part 1, New Edition, 12mo. 2s. 6d. bound.—Part 2, 6th Edit. 12mo. 2s. 6d. bd. KEY to Part 1, 6d.—KEY to Part 2, 6d.

**Hall's Key to Molineux's Arithmetic.**

A Key to the First Part of Molineux's Practical Arithmetic; containing Solutions of all the Questions at full length, with Answers. By JOSEPH HALL, Teacher of Mathematics. 12mo. 3s. bound.

**Simson's Euclid.**

The Elements of Euclid: viz. the First Six Books, together with the Eleventh and Twelfth; also the Book of Euclid's Data. By ROBERT SIMSON, M.D. Emeritus Professor of Mathematics in the University of Glasgow. To which are added, the Elements of Plane and Spherical Trigonometry; and a Treatise on the Construction of Trigonometrical Canon: also, a concise Account of Logarithms. By the Rev. A. ROBERTSON, D.D. F.R.S. 25th Edition, revised and corrected by S. MAYNARD, 8vo. 9s. bound.—Also.

The Elements of Euclid: viz. the First Six Books, together with the Eleventh and Twelfth. Printed, with a few variations and additional references, from the Text of Dr. SIMSON. New Edition, carefully corrected by S. MAYNARD, 18mo. 5s. bound.—Also.

The same work, edited, in the Symbolical form, by R. BLAKELOCK, M.A. late Fellow and Assistant-Tutor of Catherine Hall, Cambridge. New Edit. 18mo. 6s. cloth.



**Joyce's Arithmetic, and Key.**

A System of Practical Arithmetic, applicable to the present state of Trade and Money Transactions; illustrated by numerous Examples under each Rule. By the Rev. J. JOYCE. New Edition, corrected and improved by S. MAYNARD. 12mo. 3s. bound.

KEY; containing Solutions and Answers to all the Questions in the work. New Edition, corrected and enlarged by S. MAYNARD, 18mo. 3s. bound.

**Morrison's Book-Keeping, and Forms.**

The Elements of Book-keeping, by Single and Double Entry; comprising several Sets of Books, arranged according to Present Practice, and designed for the use of Schools. By JAMES MORRISON, Accountant. New Edition, considerably improved, 8vo. 8s. half-bound.

Sets of Blank Books, ruled to correspond with the Four Sets contained in the above work: Set A, Single Entry, 3s.; Set B, Double Entry, 9s.; Set C, Commission Trade, 12s.; Set D, Partnership Concerns, 4s. 6d.

**Morrison's Commercial Arithmetic, and Key.**

A Concise System of Commercial Arithmetic. By J. MORRISON, Accountant. New Edition, revised and improved, 12mo. 4s. 6d. bound.

KEY. 3d Edition, corrected and improved by S. MAYNARD, Editor of "Keith's Mathematical Works." 12mo. 8s. bound.

**Nesbit's Arithmetic, and Key.**

A Treatise on Practical Arithmetic. By A. NESBIT. 3d Edition, 12mo. 5s. bd.

A KEY to the same. 12mo. 5s. bound.

PART II. of Nesbit's Practical Arithmetic. 12mo. 7s. bd. bound.

KEY to part II. 12mo. 7s. bound.

**Peschel's Elements of Physics.**

The Elements of Physics. By C. F. PESCHEL, Principal of the Royal Military College, Dresden. Translated from the German, with Notes, by E. WEST. 3 vols. fcp. 8vo. with Woodcuts and Diagrams, 21s. cloth.

Separately { Part I. The Physics of Ponderable Bodies. Fcp. 8vo. 7s. 6d. cl.  
Part 2. Imponderable Bodies (Light, Heat, Magnetism, Electricity, and Electro-Dynamics). 2 vols. fcp. 8vo. 13s. 6d. cloth.

**Balmain's Lessons on Chemistry.**

Lessons on Chemistry; for the use of Pupils in Schools, Junior Students in the Universities, and Readers who wish to learn the fundamental Principles and leading Facts. By WILLIAM H. BALMAIN. Fcp. 8vo. 6s. cloth.

**Mrs. Lee's Natural History for Schools.**

Elements of Natural History, for the use of Schools and Young Persons; comprising the Principles of Classification, interspersed with amusing and instructive Original Accounts of the most remarkable Animals. By Mrs. LEE. 12mo. with 55 Woodcuts, 7s. 6d. bound.

**WORKS FOR YOUNG PEOPLE, BY MRS. MARCET.****Mrs. Marcet's New Spelling Book.**

The Mother's First Book; containing the Reading made Easy, and Spelling Book. New Edition, 12mo. 1s. 6d. cloth.

**Mrs. Marcet's New Grammar for Boys.**

Willy's Grammar, interspersed with Stories, and intended for the use of Young Boys. New Edition, 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

**Lessons on Animals, Vegetables, and Minerals.**

New Edition, 18mo. 2s. cloth.

**Conversations on the History of England.**

For the Use of Children. New Edition, with additions, continuing the History to the Reign of George III. 18mo. 5s. cloth.

**Conversations on Language, for Children.**

Fcp. 8vo. 4s. 6d. cloth.

**The Game of Grammar :**

With a Book of Conversations (fcp. 8vo.) shewing the Rules of the Game, and affording Examples of the manner of playing at it. In a varnished box, or done up as a post 8vo. volume in cloth, 8s.

**Mary's Grammar :**

Interpersed with Stories, and intended for the use of Children. 8th Edition, revised and enlarged, 18mo. 3s. 6d. half-bound.

**Willy's Stories for Young Children :**

Containing The House-Building—The Three Pits: The Chalk Pit, The Coal Pit, and the Gravel Pit—and The Land without Laws. New Edition, 18mo. 2s. half-bd.

**Willy's Holidays :**

Or, Conversations on different Kinds of Governments: intended for Young Children. New Edition, 18mo. 2s. half-bound.

**The Seasons :**

Stories for very Young Children. New Editions. 4 vols. 18mo. 2s. each, half-bound.

~~~~~  
GEOGRAPHY AND ATLASES.**Butler's Ancient and Modern Geography.**

A Sketch of Ancient and Modern Geography. By SAMUEL BUTLER, D.D. late Bishop of Lichfield, formerly Head Master of Shrewsbury School. New Edition, revised by his Son, 8vo. 9s. boards; bound in roan, 10s.

Butler's Ancient and Modern Atlases.

An Atlas of Modern Geography; consisting of Twenty-three Coloured Maps, from a new set of plates, corrected, with a complete Index. By the late Dr. BUTLER. 8vo. 12s. half-bound.—By the same Author,

An Atlas of Ancient Geography; consisting of Twenty-two Coloured Maps, with a complete Accentuated Index. New Edition, corrected. 8vo. 12s. half-bound.

A General Atlas of Ancient and Modern Geography; consisting of Forty-five coloured Maps, and Indices. New Edition, corrected. 4to. 24s. half-bound.

. The Latitude and Longitude are given in the Indices.

The Plates of the present new edition have been re-engraved, with corrections from the government surveys and the most recent sources of information.

Edited by the Author's Son.

Abridgment of Butler's Geography.

An Abridgment of Bishop Butler's Modern and Ancient Geography: arranged in the form of Question and Answer, for the use of Beginners. By MARY CUNNINGHAM. 3d Edition, fcp. 8vo. 2s. cloth.

Butler's Geographical Copy-Books.

Outline Geographical Copy-Books, Ancient and Modern: with the Lines of Latitude and Longitude only, for the Pupil to fill up, and designed to accompany the above. 4to. each 4s.; or together, sewed, 7s. 6d.

Goldsmith's Popular Geography.

Geography on a Popular Plan. New Edit. including Extracts from recent Voyages and Travels, with Engravings, Maps, &c. By Rev. J. GOLDSMITH. 12mo. 14s. 6d.

Dowling's Introduction to Goldsmith's Geography.

Introduction to Goldsmith's Grammar of Geography: for the use of Junior Pupils. By J. DOWLING, Master of Woodstock Boarding School. New Edit. 18mo. 9d. 6d.

By the same Author,

Five Hundred Questions on the Maps of Europe, Asia, Africa, North and South America, and the British Isles; principally from the Maps in Goldsmith's Grammar of Geography. New Edition, 18mo. 8d.—Key, 9d.

Goldsmith's Geography Improved.

Grammar of General Geography: for the Use of Schools and Young Persons. By the Rev. J. GOLDSMITH. New Edition, improved. Revised throughout and corrected by Hugh Murray, Esq. Royal 18mo. with New Views, Maps, &c. 3s. 6d. bound.—KEY, 9d. sewed.

Mangnall's Geography, revised.

A Compendium of Geography; for the use of Schools, Private Families, &c. By R. MANGNALL. A new Edition, revised and corrected throughout. 12mo. 7s. 6d. bound.

Hartley's Geography, and Outlines.

Geography for Youth. By the Rev. J. HARTLEY. New Edit. (the 8th), containing the latest Changes. 12mo. 4s. 6d. bound.—By the same Author, Outlines of Geography: the First Course for Children. New Edit. 18mo. 9d. sd.

THE FRENCH LANGUAGE.**Chambaud's Grammar of the French Tongue:**

With a Preface, containing an Essay on the proper Method of Teaching and Learning that Language. Revised and corrected agreeably to the Dictionary of the French Academy, by M. Des Carrières. 8vo. 5s. 6d. bound.

Hamel's French Grammar and Exercises, by Lambert.

Hamel's French Grammar and Exercises. A New Edition, in one volume. Carefully corrected, greatly improved, enlarged, and re-arranged, By N. Lambert. 12mo. 5s. 6d. bound.

Hamel's French Grammar.—(The Original Edition.)

A New Universal French Grammar; being an accurate System of French Accidence and Syntax. By N. HAMEL. New Edit. greatly improved, 12mo. 4s. bd.

Hamel's French Exercises, Key, and Questions.

French Grammatical Exercises. By N. HAMEL. New Edition, carefully revised and greatly improved, 12mo. 4s. bound.
KEY, 12mo. 3s. bound.—QUESTIONS, with Key, 9d. sewed.

Hamel's World in Miniature.

The World in Miniature; containing a faithful Account of the Situation, Extent, Productions, Government, Population, Manners, Curiosities, &c. of the different Countries of the World: for Translation into French. By N. HAMEL. New Edition, corrected and brought down to the present time, 12mo. 4s. 6d. bd.

Tardy's French Dictionary.

An Explanatory Pronouncing Dictionary of the French Language, in French and English; wherein the exact Sound of every Syllable is distinctly marked, according to the method adopted in Walker's Pronouncing Dictionary. To which are prefixed, the Principles of the French Pronunciation, &c. By the Abbé TARDY. New Edit. carefully revised, 12mo. 5s. bound.

ENGLISH GRAMMARS, READING BOOKS, ETC.**Mrs. Felix Summerly's Mother's Primer.**

The Mother's Primer. A Little Child's First Steps in many ways. By Mrs. FELIX SUMMERLY. Fcp. 8vo. printed in Colours, with a Frontispiece drawn on Zinc by William Mulready, R.A. 1s. sewed.

Maunder's Universal Class-Book:

A New Series of Reading Lessons (original and selected) for Every Day in the Year: each Lesson recording some important Event in General History, Biography, &c., or detailing, in familiar language, interesting facts in Science. With Questions for Examination. By SAMUEL MAUNDER, Author of "The Treasury of Knowledge," &c. New Edition, revised. 12mo. 5s. bound.

The Rev. J. Pycroft's Course of English Reading.

A Course of English Reading, adapted to every Taste and Capacity: with Anecdotes of Men of Genius. By the Rev. JAMES PYCROFT, B.A. Trinity College, Oxford, Author of "Latin Grammar Practice," and "Greek Grammar Practice." Fcp. 8vo. 6s. 6d. cloth.

Lindley Murray's Works.

*. THE ONLY GENUINE EDITIONS, WITH THE AUTHOR'S LAST CORRECTIONS.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. First Book for Children, 26th edition, 18mo. 6d. sd. 2. English Spelling-Book, 47th edition, 18mo. 18d. bd. 3. Introduction to the English Reader, 34th edit. 12mo. 2s. 6d. bd. 4. The English Reader, 24th edit. 12mo. 3s. 6d. bd. 5. Sequel to ditto, 7th edit. 12mo. 4s. 6d. bound. 6. English Grammar, 53d edit. 12mo. 3s. 6d. bd. 7. English Grammar abridged, 127th edit. 18mo. 1s. bd. 8. English Exercises, 50th edit. 12mo. 2s. bound. 9. Key to Exercises, 25th ed. 12mo. 2s. bd. 10. Exercises and Key, 50th and 25th editions, in 1 vol. 3s. 8d. bound. | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 11. Introduction au Lecteur François, 6th edition, 12mo. 3s. 6d. bound. 12. Lecteur François, 6th edit. 12mo. 5s. bound. 13. Library Edition of Grammar, Exercises, and Key, 7th edit. 2 vols. 8vo. 21s. bds. <p style="text-align: center;">~~~~~</p> <p>First Lessons in English Grammar, New edit. revised and enlarged, 18mo. 9d. bd.</p> <p>Grammatical Questions, adapted to the Grammar of Lindley Murray: with Notes. By C. BRADLEY, A.M. 8th edit. improved, 12mo. 2s. 6d. bd.</p> <p>Enlarged Edit. of Murray's Abridged English Grammar, by Dr. GILES. 18mo. 1s. 6d. cloth.</p> |
|---|--|

Mavor's Spelling Book.

The English Spelling-Book; accompanied by a Progressive Series of easy and familiar Lessons: intended as an Introduction to the Reading and Spelling of the English Language. By Dr. MAJOR. 455th Edition, with various revisions and improvements of Dr. Mavor, 12mo. with Frontispiece, and 44 Wood Engravings by Harvey. 1s. 6d. bound.

Carpenter's Spelling-Book.

The Scholar's Spelling Assistant; wherein the Words are arranged according to their principles of Accentuation. By T. CARPENTER. New Edition, corrected throughout, 12mo. 1s. 6d. bound.

Walker's Dictionary Remodelled.

Walker's Pronouncing Dictionary of the English Language, adapted to the present state of Literature and Science. By B. H. SMART. Second Edition. To which are now added, an Enlarged Etymological Index, and a Supplement, containing nearly Three Thousand Words not included in the previous edition of the Dictionary. 8vo. 15s. cloth.

*. The Supplement, with the Etymological Index, may be had separately. 8vo. 3s. 6d. sewed.

Walker's Dictionary Epitomised.

Walker's Pronouncing Dictionary of the English Language, Epitomised on a plan which allows of full Definitions to the leading Words, and large additions to the Terms of Modern Science: with a Key to the Pronunciation of Greek, Latin, and Scripture Proper Names. By B. H. SMART. New Edition. 16mo. 7s. 6d. cloth.

Graham's Art of English Composition.

English; or, The Art of Composition explained in a series of Instructions and Examples. By G. F. GRAHAM. 2d Edition, revised and corrected. Fcp. 8vo. 7s. cloth.

Graham's Helps to English Grammar.

Helps to English Grammar; or, Easy Exercises for Young Children Illustrated by Engravings on Wood. By G. F. GRAHAM. 2d Edition, 12mo. 3s. cloth.

English Synonymes classified and explained:

With Practical Exercises, designed for Schools and Private Tuition. By G. F. GRAHAM. Fcp. 8vo. 7s. cloth.

Progressive Exercises in English Composition.

By the Rev. R. G. Parker, A.M. 14th Edition. 12mo, 1s. 6d. cloth.

Aikin's Poetry for Children.

Poetry for Children; consisting of Selections of easy and interesting Pieces from the best Poets, interspersed with Original Pieces. By Miss AIKIN. New Edit. considerably improved, 16mo. with Frontispiece, 2s. cloth.

Lady Fitzroy's Scriptural Conversations.

Scriptural Conversations between Charles and his Mother. By LADY CHARLES FITZROY. Fcp. 8vo. 4s. 6d. cloth.

Maunder's Popular Treasuries.

1. The Treasury of Knowledge, and Library of Reference: a Compendium of Universal Knowledge.
2. The Scientific and Literary Treasury: a copious Popular Encyclopædia of the Belles-Lettres.
3. The Biographical Treasury: a Dictionary of Universal Biography; comprising above 12,000 Memoirs.
4. The Historical Treasury: an Outline of Universal History; separate Histories of every Nation.

*. New Editions, corrected and enlarged, price 10s. each work, fcp. 8vo. cloth; or 12s. bound in embossed roan.

Works by PROF. ROBERT SULLIVAN, A.M. T.C.D. of the Education Board, Dublin.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Geography Generalised. New Edition, 12mo. 2s. 2. Introduction to Geography. New Edition, 18mo. 1s. 3. Dictionary of Derivations. New Edition, 12mo. 3s. 6d. 4. The Spelling-book Super-seded. New Edition, 18mo. 1s. 4d. | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 5. English Grammar Simplified. New Edition, 18mo. 8d. 6. Lectures on Popular Education. 12mo. 2s. 6d. 7. Outline of the Methods of Teaching in the National Model Schools, Ireland. 18mo. 6d. 8. School Dictionary of the English Language. [In the press.] |
|--|--|

WORKS BY RICHARD HILEY.

I. Elementary.

1. Outlines of English Grammar. 18mo. 9d.

II. Adapted to the Junior Classes.

2. Abridgment of English Grammar, with Questions and Exercises, 5th Edition, 16mo. 1s. 6d.
 3. Etymological Exercises, adapted to the Abridgment. [In preparation.]
 4. Progressive English Composition. Part 1. [In preparation.]
 5. Progressive Dictations. Part 1. [In preparation.]
 6. Progressive Geography. 18mo. 1s. 6d.
 7. Latin Grammar, used in Durham Grammar School, and Camberwell College School, London. 2d Edition, 12mo. 2s. 6d.
- *. This is adapted both to Junior and Middle Forms.
8. Progressive Latin Exercises. Part 1. 2d Edit. 12mo. 2s. [In preparation.]

III. Adapted to the Middle Classes.

9. English Grammar, Style, and Poetry. 4th Edition, 12mo. 3s. 6d.
 10. English Exercises to Ditto. 3d Edition, 12mo. 2s.
 11. Progressive English Composition. 3d Edition, 12mo. 1s. 6d.
 12. Key to English Exercises. 12mo. 3s.
 13. Arithmetical Exercises, or Companion to all Tutors. 2d Edit. 16mo. 1s. 6d.
 14. Key to Ditto. 2d Edition, 16mo. 1s. 6d.
- *. The preceding are intended to form a progressively connected series of superior works.



